

MHI  
Copy 1

**MISSION TRAINING PLAN  
FOR THE  
INFANTRY RIFLE PLATOON AND SQUAD**

**OBSOLETE**

**HEADQUARTERS  
DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY**

**CLASSIFICATION RESTRICTION—Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.**

# MISSION TRAINING PLAN FOR THE INFANTRY RIFLE PLATOON AND SQUAD

## CONTENTS

	Page
<b>PREFACE</b> . . . . .	v
<b>CHAPTER 1. UNIT TRAINING</b>	
<b>1-1. General</b> . . . . .	1-1
<b>1-2. Supporting Material</b> . . . . .	1-1
<b>1-3. Definitions</b> . . . . .	1-2
<b>1-4. Contents</b> . . . . .	1-2
<b>1-5. Operations and Tasks</b> . . . . .	1-3
<b>1-6. Training Principles</b> . . . . .	1-3
<b>1-7. Training Strategy</b> . . . . .	1-5
<b>1-8. Conduct of Training</b> . . . . .	1-6
<b>1-9. Battle Focus</b> . . . . .	1-7
<b>1-10. Safety</b> . . . . .	1-7
<b>1-11. Evaluation</b> . . . . .	1-7
<b>1-12. Feedback</b> . . . . .	1-8

DISTRIBUTION RESTRICTION—Approved for public release;  
distribution is unlimited.

\*This publication supersedes ARTEP 7-8-MTP, 30 September 1988.

	Page
<b>CHAPTER 2. TRAINING MATRIXES</b>	
2-1. General . . . . .	2-1
2-2. Battlefield Operating Systems . . . . .	2-1
2-3. Training Matrix Description . . . . .	2-2
2-4. Training Matrix 1: Operation-to-Collective Task Matrix . . . . .	2-2
2-5. Training Matrix 2: Publication Reference-to-Collective Task Matrix . . . . .	2-2
2-6. Training Matrix 3: Battle Drill-to-Collective Task Matrix . . . . .	2-3
 <b>CHAPTER 3. OPERATION OUTLINES</b>	
3-1. General . . . . .	3-1
3-2. Relationship of Operation Outlines to Training Matrixes . . . . .	3-1
3-3. Relationship of Operation Outlines to STX(s) . . . . .	3-2
3-4. Use of Operation Outline . . . . .	3-2
3-5. Condition Statement . . . . .	3-3
 <b>CHAPTER 4. TRAINING EXERCISES</b>	
4-1. General . . . . .	4-1
4-2. Situational Training Exercise . . . . .	4-1
 <b>CHAPTER 5. TRAINING AND EVALUATION OUTLINES</b>	
5-1. General . . . . .	5-1
5-2. Structure . . . . .	5-1
5-3. Format . . . . .	5-1
5-4. Use . . . . .	5-3
Maneuver . . . . .	5-7—5-147
Fire Support . . . . .	5-148—5-152
Intelligence . . . . .	5-153—5-171
Mobility and Survivability . . . . .	5-172—5-208
Air Defense . . . . .	5-209—5-211
Combat Service Support . . . . .	5-212—5-226
Command and Control . . . . .	5-227—5-245

		Page
<b>CHAPTER 6.</b>	<b>EXTERNAL EVALUATION</b>	
<b>Section I.</b>	<b>Introduction</b>	6-1
	6-1. General	6-1
	6-2. Purpose	6-1
<b>Section II.</b>	<b>Management of the Evaluation</b>	6-1
	6-3. General	6-1
	6-4. Plan the Evaluation	6-1
	6-5. Management of Time and Personnel	6-2
<b>Section III.</b>	<b>Preparation of the Evaluation</b>	6-3
	6-6. General	6-3
	6-7. Specific Preparation Requirements	6-3
<b>Section IV.</b>	<b>Evaluator Requirements, Training, and Scoring System</b>	6-5
	6-8. General	6-5
	6-9. Evaluator Requirements	6-6
	6-10. Evaluator Training	6-6
	6-11. Evaluator Scoring System	6-7
<b>Section V.</b>	<b>Opposing Force Selection and Training</b>	6-13
	6-12. General	6-13
	6-13. Selection	6-13
	6-14. Training	6-13
	6-15. Opposing Force Strength	6-13
<b>Section VI.</b>	<b>Conduct of the Evaluation</b>	6-14
	6-16. General	6-14
	6-17. Preevaluation Activities	6-14
	6-18. Evaluation Activities	6-14
	6-19. Postevaluation Activities	6-16
<b>Section VII.</b>	<b>After-Action Review</b>	6-16
	6-20. General	6-16
	6-21. Preparation	6-17
	6-22. Conduct of the After-Action Review	6-18

	Page
<b>Section VII. Evaluation Scenario Development</b> . . . . .	6-19
<b>6-23. General</b> . . . . .	6-19
<b>6-24. Reaction-Type Missions</b> . . . . .	6-19
<b>6-25. Terrain</b> . . . . .	6-19
<b>Section IX. Indirect-Fire Simulation</b> . . . . .	6-25
<b>6-26. General</b> . . . . .	6-25
<b>6-27. Evaluation Control Headquarters Method</b> . . . . .	6-25
<b>6-28. Realism</b> . . . . .	6-26
<b>6-29. Simulation Without OPFOR</b> . . . . .	6-26
<b>APPENDIX A. SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS</b> . . . . .	A-1
<b>GLOSSARY</b> . . . . .	Glossary-1
<b>REFERENCES</b> . . . . .	References-1
<b>QUESTIONNAIRE</b> . . . . .	Questionnaire-1

## **PREFACE**

This mission training plan provides a descriptive, performance-oriented training program to assist leaders in training their units. Performance measures for training may be made more difficult but may not be lowered. This MTP is IAW the U.S. Army training and tactical doctrine. This MTP contains those tasks that support the unit missions outlined in the doctrinal manuals. Unit leaders must use higher headquarters METL and training guidance to identify which tasks in the MTP must be emphasized. Task performance measures in this MTP are the Army's performance measures for executing those tasks.

This MTP applies to all infantry, light infantry, airborne, air assault, and ranger platoons and squads organized under TOEs 07-075L000, 07-017L000, 07-037L000, and 07-057L000, 07-087L000.

The proponent for this publication is the United States Army Infantry School. Send comments and recommendations on DA Form 2028 directly to the Commandant, U.S. Army Infantry School, ATTN: ATSH-OTT-T, Fort Benning, GA 31905-5593.

Unless otherwise stated, whenever the masculine gender is used, both men and women are included.



## CHAPTER 1

## UNIT TRAINING

**1-1. GENERAL**

This MTP provides the infantry platoon and squad leaders with a tactical training and evaluation program for the platoon and squad. It also provides guidance on how to train as well as the key operations on which to train. The specific details of the training program depend on many factors, including—

- The unit's METL.
- Training directives and guidance established by the chain of command.
- Training priorities for the platoon and squad.
- Training resources and areas available.

**1-2. SUPPORTING MATERIAL**

This MTP describes a critical wartime operation-oriented platoon training program, which is part of the company's training program. The company's training program consists of the company-level MTP (ARTEP 7-10-MTP) and also includes drills, soldier tasks, and leader tasks (Figure 1-1).

- a. **Infantry drills** (ARTEP 7-8-DRILL). The platoon and squad leaders use drills to train skills that the unit must sustain.
- b. **Soldier tasks.** Units use the soldier's manuals for the appropriate MOS and skill levels to train individual tasks.
- c. **Leader tasks.** Units use the MQS II manual to train platoon leaders.

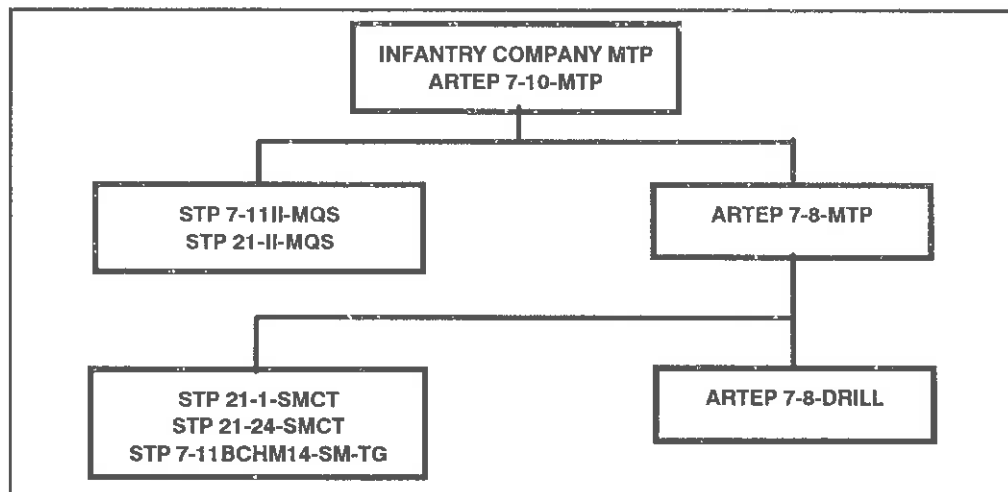


Figure 1-1. MTP echelon relationship.



### 1-3. DEFINITIONS

The terms **mission** and **operation** are frequently used throughout this manual. These terms must be understood.

a. According to FM 101-5-1, a mission and an operation are defined as follows:

(1) A *mission* is "The primary task assigned to an individual, unit, or force. It usually contains the elements of who, what, when, where, and the reason therefore [why], but seldom specifies how."

(2) An *operation* is "A military action or the carrying out of a strategic, tactical service, training, or administrative military mission; the process of carrying on combat, including movement, supply, attack, defense, and maneuvers needed to gain the objectives of any battle or campaign."

b. Examples of operations in infantry doctrine are movement to contact (offensive), attack (offensive), delay (retrograde), and defend (defensive). These operations become a mission when the five elements of who, what when, where, and why are employed. For example, an attack operation becomes a mission when situation specific information is provided, such as A Company attacks to seize Objective RAMBO in the vicinity of LA059699 NLT 231200Dec93 to prevent the enemy from reinforcing Objective JANE.

### 1-4. CONTENTS

This MTP contains six chapters.

a. **Chapter 1**, Unit Training, provides the explanation and organization of this MTP. Chapter 1 explains how to use this MTP in establishing an effective training program.

b. **Chapter 2**, Training Matrixes, shows the relationship between operations and collective tasks.

c. **Chapter 3**, Operation Outlines, presents a graphic portrayal of the relationship between critical wartime operations and subtasks inherent to those operations.

d. **Chapter 4**, Training Exercises, consists of FTXs and STXs that combine with leader training activities to aid in training the platoon's critical operations and tasks. FTXs and STXs provide training information and a scenario to aid in sustaining the training of an operation. It may also serve as part of an internal or external evaluation of the platoon executing the operation in a tactical setting.

e. **Chapter 5**, Training and Evaluation Outlines, provides the training criteria for tasks that the platoon and squads must master to perform their critical wartime operations. These training criteria orient on the levels of collective training executed by the platoon. Each T&EO can be applicable

to one or more operations. In various combinations, the T&EOs make up larger training exercises such as the FTXs and STXs in Chapter 4.

f. **Chapter 6, External Evaluation**, provides instructions for the planning, preparation, and execution of an external evaluation.

### **1-5. OPERATIONS AND TASKS**

The platoon's critical wartime operations are movement to contact, attack, raid, ambush, reconnaissance and security, defend, and retrograde. Each operation includes major activities that the platoon must execute to accomplish a certain mission. It also includes the tasks that each squad and soldier must perform. Each of these tasks requires training.

a. Platoon tasks may be trained individually or jointly. They must be oriented on the training criteria provided in the T&EOs and drills. Drills and collective task T&EOs can be linked through a logical, tactical scenario to form an STX. Although an STX is mission-oriented, it will not, by itself, result in training to mission proficiency. Various combinations of STXs can be used in developing an FTX. Several STXs can be used for an external evaluation (designed by battalion headquarters) of a platoon's ability to perform multiple missions under stress in a realistic environment.

b. Squad tasks are trained the same way as described above. However, the squad leader must also train the drills provided in ARTEP 7-8-DRILL.

c. Leader tasks are individual tasks trained by using—

- Tactical exercises without troops.
- Battle simulations.
- Execution of platoon missions.
- Officer and or NCO professional development training based on MQS/STP tasks respectively.

d. Individual tasks are mastered through training to standards outlined in MQS manuals and STPs. At the end of each collective task T&EO in Chapter 5, the individual tasks are listed that support successful collective performance.

### **1-6. TRAINING PRINCIPLES**

This MTP is based on the training principles in FM 25-series of manuals.

a. **Train as a combined arms and service team.** Today's Army doctrine requires combined arms and services teamwork. When committed to battle, each unit must be prepared to execute combined arms and services operations without additional training or lengthy adjustment periods. Combined arms proficiency develops when teams train together.

Leaders must regularly practice cross attachment of the full wartime spectrum of combat, combat support, and combat service support units.

b. **Train as you fight.** The goal of combat-level training is to achieve combat-level standards. Every effort must be made to attain this difficult goal. Within the confines of safety and common sense, leaders must accept less than perfect results initially and demand realism in training. They must integrate such realistic conditions as smoke, noise, simulated NBC, battlefield debris, loss of key leaders, and inclement weather.

c. **Use appropriate doctrine.** Units must train on peacetime training tasks to the Army standards in mission training plans, drill books, soldier's manuals, regulations, and other training and doctrinal publications. Doctrine should be the training baseline. On occasion, slight changes may be required to adapt to the situation.

d. **Use performance-oriented training.** Units become proficient in the performance of critical tasks and operations by practicing the tasks and missions. Soldiers learn best by doing, using a hands-on approach. Leaders are responsible for developing and executing a training strategy that provides these opportunities. All training assets and resources (to include simulators, simulations, and training devices) must be included in the strategy.

e. **Train to challenge.** Tough, realistic, intellectually, and physically challenging training excites and motivates soldiers and leaders. It builds competence and confidence by developing and honing skills. Challenging training inspires excellence by fostering initiative, enthusiasm, and eagerness to learn.

f. **Train to sustain proficiency.** Once individuals and units have trained to a required level of proficiency, leaders must structure collective and individual training plans to sustain that level. MTPs and ITEPs are tools to help achieve and sustain collective and individual proficiency.

g. **Train using multiechelon techniques.** To use available time and resources most effectively, commanders must simultaneously train individuals, leaders, and units at each echelon in the organization.

h. **Train to maintain.** Maintenance is a vital part of every training program. Maintenance training designed to keep equipment in the fight is as equally important to soldiers as being experts in its use. Soldiers and leaders are responsible for maintaining all assigned equipment in a high state of readiness in support of training or combat employment.

i. **Make commanders the primary trainers.** The leaders in the chain of command are responsible for the training and performance of their soldiers and units. They are the primary training managers and trainers for their organization.

## 1-7. TRAINING STRATEGY

The training program developed and executed by the infantry platoon or squad is based on the infantry component of the Army's combined arms training strategy (CATS). The CATS provides direction and guidance on how the total Army will train and identify the resources required to support that training. The CATS also provides the tools that enable the Army to focus and manage training in an integrated manner. Central to the CATS is a series of proponent-generated unit and institutional strategies that describe the types of training events and the resources required to facilitate training to standard.

a. The unit training strategies central to CATS provide the commander with descriptive lists for training. These strategies reflect an optimal way to train to standard. However, all units in the Army probably do not have the same resources required to execute an optimal training strategy.

b. The infantry platoon and squad training strategy provides a means for training the platoon and squad to standard by listing required training events, critical training gates, training event frequencies, and training resources. The commander selects from this MTP those tasks required to train his METL. Training strategies provide the means whereby those tasks can be trained through a focused and integrated training plan.

c. The infantry platoon and squad training strategy consists of three separate training strategies. When integrated with the training tasks in the MTP, they form a comprehensive and focused training strategy that allows the platoon and squad to train to standard. The elements of the infantry platoon and squad training strategy are maneuver, gunnery, and soldier.

(1) *Maneuver strategy.* The maneuver strategy provides a set of recommended training frequencies for key training events in a unit and depicts those resources that are required to support the training events.

(2) *Gunnery strategy.* The gunnery strategy is based on weapons systems in the unit, and it provides an annual training plan and depicts resources required to support weapons training. Data for the gunnery strategy come from the STRAC manual or appropriate field manual. As a subset of the gunnery strategy, a training strategy is developed for each individual and crew-served weapon in the Army inventory.

(3) *Soldier strategy.* The soldier strategy provides an annual plan for training and maintaining skills at the individual level and lists the resources required to train the soldier.

d. A vital element in the unit training strategy is the identification of critical training gates. Critical training gates are defined as training events that must be conducted to standard before moving on to a more complex or resource intensive training event or task. Training events follow the crawl,

walk, run training methodology. For instance, if the unit training strategy calls for conducting an FTX, and an STX has been identified as a critical training gate for the FTX, the training tasks in the STX must be trained to standard before conducting the FTX. Standards for all tasks must be clearly defined so that the trainer can assess the preparedness of his soldiers, or unit(s), to move on to more complex training events. The provision for critical training gates recognizes that the unit's METL, and the commander's assessment of his unit's training status, will determine the selection and timing of the collective training exercises in a specific unit's training strategy.

e. When developing the platoon's and squad's training plan, the commander identifies the training tasks from the MTP required to support his METL. Then, using training strategies, the commander develops a battle-focused training plan by integrating and linking METL-derived MTP training tasks with CATS training events.

### **1-8. CONDUCT OF TRAINING**

This MTP aids in planning, preparing, and conducting unit training as explained in the FM 25-series.

a. The company commander assigns missions and tasks based on his METL and the battalion commander's training guidance. Trainers must plan and execute platoon training in support of this guidance.

b. The operation outlines in Chapter 3 must support the company commander's guidance. If they do not or need to be modified, a review of the matrix in Chapter 2 will identify all critical collective tasks that the platoon or squad must master to perform a specific mission.

c. The platoon and squad leaders must determine the priority of all tasks. Leaders will never have time to train everything and must orient on the greatest challenges and most difficult sustainment skills. The platoon leader should hold weekly training meetings with his platoon sergeant and squad leaders in order to analyze and prioritize training.

d. Training tasks must be integrated into the training schedule. The following procedures are used to do this:

- List the tasks in the priority and frequency they need to be trained.
- Determine the required training time.
- Determine the best procedure for using multiechelon training for the best effect.
- Determine the training location(s).
- Determine the training responsibilities (who will be responsible for what).

- Determine the time needed for training.
- Determine the best training method.
- Determine the resources needed to train the selected tasks.

e. Platoon leaders provide these training requirements to their company commander. Once the commander has approved the lists, he must add them to the company training schedule.

f. Leaders must keep subordinate leaders informed of training they are conducting. Standards must be rigidly enforced. If they are not, the unit and soldiers will suffer.

### **1-9. BATTLE FOCUS**

Battle focus derives peacetime training requirements from wartime operations. It guides the planning, execution, and assessment of the platoon's and squad's training programs to ensure the unit trains as it is going to fight. Battle focus is critical throughout the entire training process. Commanders use it to allocate resources for training based on wartime operation requirements. Also, commanders can recognize that a unit cannot attain proficiency to standard on every task due to time or resource constraints. A successful training program is achievable, however, by narrowing the focus to a reduced number of vital tasks that are essential to mission accomplishment.

### **1-10. SAFETY**

A well-trained unit is normally accident-free, although accidents can occur through no fault of the soldier or equipment operator. Most accidents result from inadequately trained, unsupervised, or complacent personnel.

a. Leaders must stress situational awareness. Effective training occurs when soldiers are confident in their abilities to perform their task to standard to include the appropriate safety standards. Leaders must ensure that all soldiers comply with unit safety SOPs during training events. Leaders should make on-the-spot corrections when an unsafe act is observed.

b. Using the safety checklists of the US Army Safety Center, Fort Rucker, Alabama, enhance the overall safety practices of soldiers during training.

### **1-11. EVALUATION**

The T&EOs in Chapter 5 list the standards that the platoon and squad must meet for each task.

a. Evaluations can be internal or external. Internal evaluations are conducted at all levels and must be inherent at all levels. External evaluations

are formal, and they are usually conducted by the headquarters two levels above the unit.

b. A critical weakness in training is the failure to evaluate each task every time it is performed. Simultaneous training and evaluation are the basis for the ARTEP concept: Every training exercise provides the potential for evaluation, and every evaluation is a training session. To optimize training, the platoon or squad leader must restate to the trainers and leaders the necessity for continuous training evaluation.

c. Leaders should emphasize direct, on-the-spot evaluations. Correcting poor performance during individual or small group training is easy to do. Outside evaluators usually make this unfeasible for higher-level exercises. Leaders should plan AARs at frequent and logical intervals during exercises. This allows the platoon or squad leader to correct performance shortcomings while they are still fresh in everyone's mind, and this also prevents the reinforcement of bad habits.

NOTE: FM 25-101 provides detailed instructions for conducting an AAR and detailed guidance on coaching and critiquing during training.

#### **1-12. FEEDBACK**

Recommendations for improvement of this ARTEP MTP are requested. Feedback will help ensure that this ARTEP MTP answers the training needs of units in the field. Send comments on DA Form 2028 to the address listed in the Preface.

## CHAPTER 2

## TRAINING MATRIXES

## 2-1. GENERAL

This chapter provides training matrixes that help the platoon training manager in near-term planning and development of long-range training plans, short-range training plans, and training schedules. The matrixes complement battle-focused training. They provide an organized set of relationships that support the platoon trainer's job.

a. As discussed in Chapter 1, unit proficiency requires a foundation of individual tasks (Skill Levels 1 through 4). The most important individual tasks are those that are critical to the collective tasks.

b. Once individual tasks have been trained to standard, they must be integrated and sustained through collective task training. These collective tasks are the T&EOs in Chapter 5.

c. Once collective tasks are trained to standard, they are integrated and sustained through mission-oriented training exercises such as STXs and FTXs.

d. The collective tasks and battle drills, selected by the platoon leader to make up an STX, are linked by leader command and control tasks.

e. The STXs in various combinations can be used in developing an FTX. The FTXs are normally accomplished at company or higher level.

**TRAINING NOTE:** Leaders must instill situational awareness in all subordinate leaders and soldiers. Soldiers must be constantly alert for and avoid situations that may result in death or injury. For example, lock cargo hatches securely; do not grab the hot barrel of a machine gun; always be aware of your buddies' location during live-fire exercises; double-check all mortar firing data.

## 2-2. BATTLEFIELD OPERATING SYSTEMS

The BOSs are functions of the combined arms force, contributing to combat power. (The T&EOs in Chapter 5 are indexed according to BOSs.) These seven operating systems support the application of the BOSs outlined in FM 25-100. The operating systems to platoon/squad task are as follows:

a. **Maneuver.** These tasks allow the platoon to move on the battlefield with fire, or fire potential, to achieve a positional advantage over the enemy and to accomplish the mission.



b. **Fire support.** This entails planning and coordinating fire support assets to support maneuver and to add depth to the battle.

c. **Intelligence.** This category includes the platoon tasks that amass knowledge of the enemy, weather, and terrain features. The commander must have this intelligence information for planning combat operations.

d. **Mobility and survivability.** This includes tasks that allow the platoon freedom of movement with the protection necessary to fulfill their primary mission (includes NBC tasks).

e. **Air defense.** These tasks nullify or reduce the effectiveness of hostile air action.

f. **Combat service support.** This includes tasks performed by the platoon to ensure that the unit can sustain operations.

g. **Command and control.** These tasks include platoon tasks that arrange and employ personnel, equipment, communications, facilities, and procedures to plan, coordinate, and control the platoon's operations to accomplish the mission.

**2-3. TRAINING MATRIX DESCRIPTION**

There are three matrixes in this chapter. Table 2-1 lists the matrixes and their page numbers.

	PAGE
TRAINING MATRIX 1: OPERATION-TO-COLLECTIVE TASK MATRIX . . . . .	2-4
TRAINING MATRIX 2: PUBLICATION REFERENCE-TO-COLLECTIVE TASK MATRIX . . . . .	2-8
TRAINING MATRIX 3: BATTLE DRILL-TO-COLLECTIVE TASK MATRIX . . . . .	2-12

**Table 2-1. Training matrixes.**

**2-4. TRAINING MATRIX 1: OPERATION-TO-COLLECTIVE TASK MATRIX**

Table 2-2 reflects the relationship of collective tasks (T&EOs) to operations performed by a platoon.

a. Table 2-2 illustrates the seven platoon critical wartime operations across the top and supporting T&EOs down the side. An "X" in a column indicates a T&EO that supports the operation at the top of that column. Where more than one X appears in a row, it indicates that the T&EO supports more than one operation. Therefore, in addition to looking down a column to see which T&EOs support a certain operation, the trainer

should look across a row to see which T&EOs support more than one operation and may be high-payoff tasks for unit training.

b. This matrix presents the full range of collective tasks. The trainer, however, need not train every task under a platoon operation to fully support that operation. He should select important tasks according to his commander's guidance, the status of his unit, resources available, METT-T analysis, and other unit requirements.

#### **2-5. TRAINING MATRIX 2: PUBLICATION REFERENCE-TO-COLLECTIVE TASK MATRIX**

Table 2-3 identifies the reference that contains detailed information about the collective task.

#### **2-6. TRAINING MATRIX 3: BATTLE DRILL-TO-COLLECTIVE TASK MATRIX**

Table 2-4 illustrates the battle drills that support the collective tasks in this MTP. The letter "X" in a row indicates a battle drill that would normally be done to accomplish the overall T&EO.

COLLECTIVE TASK	Movement To Contact	Attack	Raid	Ambush	Reconnaissance/Security	Defend	Retrograde
<b>MANEUVER</b>							
Execute Attack 7-3/4-1100		X					
Execute Assault 7-3/4-1103	X	X	X			X	X
Perform Movement to Contact 7-3/4-1101	X						
Perform Overwatch/Support by Fire 7-3/4-1108	X	X	X			X	X
Execute Disengagement 7-3/4-1122	X		X	X		X	X
Knock Out a Bunker 7-3/4-1113	X	X	X				
Clear Trench Line 7-3-1114	X	X	X				
Perform Raid 7-3-1102			X				
Perform Antiarmor Ambush 7-3/4-1143				X		X	X
Perform Hasty Ambush 7-3/4-1144	X	X	X	X		X	X
Perform Point Ambush 7-3/4-1145						X	X
Execute Defense 7-3/4-1115	X					X	X
Occupy Assembly Area 7-3/4-1136	X	X	X	X		X	X
Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134	X	X	X	X		X	X

Table 2-2. Operation-to-collective task matrix.

COLLECTIVE TASK	Movement To Contact	Attack	Raid	Ambush	Reconnaissance/Security	Defend	Retrograde
<b>MANEUVER (continued)</b>							
<b>Perform Actions at Danger Areas</b> 7-3/4-1135	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
<b>Perform Tactical Road March</b> 7-3-1123	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
<b>Perform Passage of Lines</b> 7-3/4-1125	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
<b>Clear Building</b> 7-3/4-1110	X	X	X				
<b>Defend MOU/Building</b> 7-3/4-1118	X					X	X
<b>Perform Stay-Behind Operations</b> 7-3/4-1116			X	X		X	X
<b>Perform Linkup</b> 7-3/4-1128	X	X	X	X	X	X	
<b>Perform Infiltration/Exfiltration</b> 7-3/4-1137	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
<b>Take Action on Contact</b> 7-3/4-1107	X	X	X		X	X	X
<b>Break Contact</b> 7-3/4-1111	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
<b>React to Ambush</b> 7-3/4-1112	X	X	X		X	X	X
<b>Perform Delay</b> 7-3/4-1119				X	X	X	X
<b>Perform Relief Operations</b> 7-3/4-1124						X	X
<b>Perform Airborne Assault</b> 7-3/4-1127	X	X	X	X	X	X	X

Table 2-2. Operation-to-collective task matrix (continued).

COLLECTIVE TASK	Movement To Contact	Attack	Raid	Ambush	Reconnaissance/Security	Defend	Retrograde
<b>MANEUVER (continued)</b>							
Perform Operations With Armored Vehicles 7-3/4-1140	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Perform Air Assault 7-3/4-1126	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Cross Water Obstacles 7-3/4-1131	X		X	X		X	X
<b>FIRE SUPPORT</b>							
Employ Fire Support 7-3-1200	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
<b>INTELLIGENCE</b>							
Reconnoiter Zone 7-3-1004					X		
Reconnoiter Area 7-3/4-1003		X	X	X	X		
Reconnoiter Route 7-3-1005					X		
Perform Surveillance From an Observation Post 7-3/4-1008			X	X	X	X	
Perform a Screen 7-3-1006	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
<b>MOBILITY and SURVIVABILITY</b>							
Breach an Obstacle 7-3/4-1402	X	X	X				
Perform Waterborne Operations 7-3/4-1408	X	X	X	X		X	X

Table 2-2. Operation-to-collective task matrix (continued).

COLLECTIVE TASK	Movement To Contact	Attack	Raid	Ambush	Reconnaissance/Security			Defend	Retrograde
					Reconnaissance/Security	Defend	Retrograde		
<b>MOBILITY and SURVIVABILITY (continued)</b>									
Perform NBC Operations 7-3/4-1406	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Construct Obstacle 7-3-1404							X	X	
Maintain Operations Security 7-3/4-1409	X	X	X	X			X	X	
Establish a Roadblock/Checkpoint 7-3/4-1401					X	X			
Conduct Initial Breach of a Mined Wire Obstacle 7-3/4-1403	X	X	X						
<b>AIR DEFENSE</b>									
Defend Against Air Attack 7-3/4-1301	X	X	X	X			X	X	
<b>COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT</b>									
Perform Combat Service Support Operations 7-3/4-1501	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Process Enemy Prisoners of War/Captured Materiel 7-3/4-1503	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Treat and Evacuate Casualties 7-3/4-1504	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
<b>COMMAND AND CONTROL</b>									
Develop and Communicate a Plan 7-3/4-1605	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Prepare for Combat 7-3/4-1606	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Perform Consolidation and Reorganization 7-3/4-1607	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X

Table 2-2. Operation-to-collective task matrix (continued).

COLLECTIVE TASK	FM 3-4	FM 3-100	FM 7-7J	FM 7-8	FM 7-10	FM 7-98	FM 90-4	FM 90-8	FM 90-10-1
<b>MANEUVER</b>									
Execute Attack 7-3/4-1100			X	X	X				
Execute Assault 7-3/4-1103			X	X	X				
Perform Movement to Contact 7-3/4-1101			X	X	X				
Perform Overwatch/Support by Fire 7-3/4-1108				X	X				
Execute Disengagement 7-3/4-1122			X	X					
Knock Out a Bunker 7-3/4-1113			X	X					
Clear Trench Line 7-3-1114			X	X					
Perform Raid 7-3-1102			X	X	X				
Perform Antiarmor Ambush 7-3/4-1143			X	X					
Perform Hasty Ambush 7-3/4-1144			X	X		X		X	
Perform Point Ambush 7-3/4-1145			X	X		X		X	
Execute Defense 7-3/4-1115			X	X	X				
Occupy Assembly Area 7-3/4-1136			X	X	X				
Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134			X	X	X				
Perform Actions at Danger Areas 7-3/4-1135				X	X				
Perform Tactical Road March 7-3-1123			X	X	X				

Table 2-3. Publication reference-to-collective task matrix.

COLLECTIVE TASK	FM 3-4	FM 3-100	FM 7-7J	FM 7-8	FM 7-10	FM 7-98	FM 90-4	FM 90-8	FM 90-10-1
<b>MANEUVER (continued)</b>									
Perform Passage of Lines 7-3/4-1125			X	X	X				
Clear Building 7-3/4-1110				X					X
Defend MOUT/Building 7-3/4-1118				X					X
Perform Stay-Behind Operations 7-3/4-1116				X	X				
Perform Linkup 7-3/4-1128				X	X				
Perform Infiltration/Exfiltration 7-3/4-1137				X	X	X		X	
Take Action on Contact 7-3/4-1107			X	X	X				
Break Contact 7-3/4-1111			X	X	X				
React to Ambush 7-3/4-1112			X	X	X				
Perform Delay 7-3/4-1119			X	X	X				
Perform Relief Operations 7-3/4-1124			X	X	X				
Perform Airborne Assault 7-3/4-1127			X	X	X				
Perform Operations With Armored Vehicles 7-3/4-1140			X	X	X				
Perform Air Assault 7-3/4-1126				X	X		X		
Cross Water Obstacles 7-3/4-1131				X	X				

Table 2-3. Publication reference-to-collective task matrix (continued).



COLLECTIVE TASK	FM 7-92	FM 3-4	FM 3-100	FM 7-7J	FM 7-8	FM 7-10	FM 7-98	FM 90-4	FM 90-8	FM 90-10-1
<b>FIRE SUPPORT</b>										
Employ Fire Support 7-3-1200				X	X	X				
<b>INTELLIGENCE</b>										
Reconnoiter Zone 7-3-1004	X			X	X	X				
Reconnoiter Area 7-3/4-1003	X			X	X	X				
Reconnoiter Route 7-3-1005	X			X	X	X				
Perform Surveillance From an Observation Post 7-3/4-1008	X			X	X	X	X			
Perform a Screen 7-3-1006	X				X	X				
<b>MOBILITY and SURVIVABILITY</b>										
Breach an Obstacle 7-3/4-1402				X	X	X				
Perform Waterborne Operations 7-3/4-1408					X	X				
Perform NBC Operations 7-3/4-1406		X	X							
Construct Obstacle 7-3-1404				X	X	X	X			
Maintain Operations Security 7-3/4-1409				X	X	X				
Establish a Roadblock/Checkpoint 7-3/4-1401					X	X	X			
Conduct Initial Breach of a Mined Wire Obstacle 7-3/4-1403				X	X					

Table 2-3. Publication reference-to-collective task matrix (continued).

COLLECTIVE TASK	FM 3-4	FM 3-100	FM 7-7J	FM 7-8	FM 7-10	FM 7-98	FM 90-4	FM 90-8	FM 90-10-1
<b>AIR DEFENSE</b>									
Defend Against Air Attack 7-3/4-1301			X	X	X				
<b>COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT</b>									
Perform Combat Service Support Operations 7-3/4-1501			X	X	X				X
Process Enemy Prisoners of War/Captured Materiel 7-3/4-1503			X	X	X	X			
Treat and Evacuate Casualties 7-3/4-1504			X	X	X	X			
<b>COMMAND AND CONTROL</b>									
Develop and Communicate a Plan 7-3/4-1605				X	X				
Prepare for Combat 7-3/4-1606			X	X	X				
Perform Consolidation and Reorganization 7-3/4-1607			X	X	X				

Table 2-3. Publication reference-to-collective task matrix (continued).

COLLECTIVE TASK	Conduct Platoon Attack	Conduct Squad Attack	React to Contact	Break Contact	React to Ambush	Knock Out Bunker	Enter Building/Clear Room	Enter/Clear Trench	Breach a Mined Wire Obstacle
<b>MANEUVER</b>									
Execute Attack 7-3/4-1100	X	X							
Execute Assault 7-3/4-1103				X		X		X	
Perform Movement to Contact 7-3/4-1101			X		X				X
Perform Overwatch/Support by Fire 7-3/4-1108									
Execute Disengagement 7-3/4-1122				X					
Knock Out a Bunker 7-3/4-1113						X			
Clear Trench Line 7-3-1114								X	
Perform Raid 7-3-1102			X	X	X				
Perform Antlarmor Ambush 7-3/4-1143				X					
Perform Hasty Ambush 7-3/4-1144				X					
Perform Point Ambush 7-3/4-1145				X					
Execute Defense 7-3/4-1115			X						
Occupy Assembly Area 7-3/4-1136			X						

Table 2-4. Battle drill-to-collective task matrix.

COLLECTIVE TASK			Conduct Platoon Attack	Conduct Squad Attack	React to Contact	Break Contact	React to Ambush	Knock Out Bunker	Enter Building/Clear Room	Enter/Clear Trench	Breach a Mined Wire Obstacle
<b>MANEUVER (continued)</b>											
Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134					X	X	X				X
Perform Actions at Danger Areas 7-3/4-1135					X						
Perform Tactical Road March 7-3-1123					X		X				
Perform Passage of Lines 7-3/4-1125					X						
Clear Building 7-3/4-1110									X		
Defend MOU/Building 7-3/4-1118					X				X		
Perform Stay-Behind Operations 7-3/4-1116					X	X	X				
Perform Linkup 7-3/4-1128											
Perform Infiltration/Exfiltration 7-3/4-1107						X					
Take Action on Contact 7-3/4-1137					X	X	X				
Break Contact 7-3/4-1111						X					
React to Ambush 7-3/4-1112							X				
Perform Delay 7-3/4-1119						X					

Table 2-4. Battle drill-to-collective task matrix continued).

COLLECTIVE TASK	Conduct Platoon Attack	Conduct Squad Attack	React to Contact	Break Contact	React to Ambush	Knock Out Bunker	Enter Building/Clear Room	Enter/Clear Trench	Breach a Mined Wire Obstacle
<b>MANUEVER (continued)</b>									
Perform Relief Operations 7-3/4-1124			X						
Perform Airborne Assault 7-3/4-1127			X		X				
Perform Operations With Armored Vehicles 7-3/4-1140									
Perform Air Assault 7-3/4-1126			X		X				
Cross Water Obstacles 7-3/4-1131			X	X	X				
<b>FIRE SUPPORT</b>									
Employ Fire Support 7-3-1200									
<b>INTELLIGENCE</b>									
Reconnoiter Zone 7-3-1004			X	X	X				
Reconnoiter Area 7-3/4-1003			X	X	X				
Reconnoiter Route 7-3-1005			X	X	X				
Perform Surveillance From an Observation Post 7-3/4-1008									
Perform a Screen 7-3-1006				X					

Table 2-4. Battle drill-to-collective task matrix (continued).

COLLECTIVE TASK	Conduct Platoon Attack	Conduct Squad Attack	React to Contact	Break Contact	React to Ambush	Knock Out Bunker	Enter Building/Clear Room	Enter/Clear Trench	Breach a Mined Wire Obstacle
<b>MOBILITY and SURVIVABILITY</b>									
Breach an Obstacle 7-3/4-1402			X						X
Perform Waterborne Operations 7-3/4-1408			X						
Perform NBC Operations 7-3/4-1406									
Construct Obstacle 7-3-1404									
Maintain Operations Security 7-3/4-1409									
Establish a Roadblock/Checkpoint 7-3/4-1401			X		X				
Conduct Initial Breach of a Mined Wire Obstacle 7-3/4-1403									X
<b>AIR DEFENSE</b>									
Defend Against Air Attack 7-3/4-1301									
<b>COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT</b>									
Perform Combat Service Support Operations 7-3/4-1501									
Process Enemy Prisoners of War/Captured Materiel 7-3/4-1503									
Treat and Evacuate Casualties 7-3/4-1504									

Table 2-4. Battle drill-to-collective task matrix (continued).

COLLECTIVE TASK	Conduct Platoon Attack	Conduct Squad Attack	React to Contact	Break Contact	React to Ambush	Knock Out Bunker	Enter Building/Clear Room	Enter/Clear Trench	Breach a Mined Wire Obstacle
<b>COMMAND AND CONTROL</b>									
Develop and Communicate a Plan 7-3/4-1605									
Prepare for Combat 7-3/4-1606									
Perform Consolidation and Reorganization 7-3/4-1607									

Table 2-4. Battle drill-to-collective task matrix (continued).

## CHAPTER 3

## OPERATION OUTLINES

**3-1. GENERAL**

An operation outline is a diagram of the relationship between each operation and the subordinate collective tasks. Each example STX provides the trainer a diagram of the platoon operation, example STXs, and the collective tasks that comprise them. The STXs are an integral part of the overall training plan.

a. The infantry platoon has seven critical wartime operations—movement to contact, attack, raid, ambush, reconnaissance and security, defend, and retrograde. While the operations will not change, the supporting collective tasks will vary in combat with the mission, depending on the type of infantry platoon and METT-T.

b. Figures 3-1 through 3-14 contain example operation outlines and example STXs for the seven critical operations of an infantry platoon. Table 3-1 is a list of the operation outlines.

FIGURE	OPERATION OUTLINE	PAGE
3-2	.Movement to Contact	3-5
3-4	.Attack	3-8
3-6	.Raid	3-11
3-8	.Ambush	3-14
3-10	.Reconnaissance and Security	3-17
3-12	.Defend	3-20
3-14	.Retrograde	3-23

**Table 3-1. Listing of operation outlines.**

**3-2. RELATIONSHIP OF OPERATION OUTLINES TO TRAINING MATRIXES**

The matrixes (Chapter 2) provide the critical collective tasks for each of the seven platoon operations. These tasks can be combined into STXs based on



different conditions. Combinations of these tasks can be put into many different STXs and training plans.

a. The example operation outlines can be used to help build training plans. The example STXs are developed from the operation outline (paragraph 3-4) or the operation-to-collective task matrix (Chapter 2, Table 2-2).

b. The trainer can either select an STX from the example STXs listed or develop a different STX based on the unit's training needs. Different conditions require changing the selection of collective tasks to accomplish the same mission. Therefore, the STXs must be tailored based on a unit's unique circumstances.

c. Complete platoon training plans must include individual (including leader) and collective tasks (T&EOs and battle drills) required to support the STXs. Individual tasks are listed in each T&EO (Chapter 5). A collective task-to-battle drill matrix is in Chapter 2.

### **3-3. RELATIONSHIP OF OPERATION OUTLINES TO STX(S)**

Operation outlines have been developed into STX(s) for the infantry platoon. Each example is based on a given set of conditions to illustrate there is more than one set of tasks to train in support of a certain operation. The tasks and sequencing of the tasks varies as the conditions of METT-T change.

### **3-4. USE OF OPERATION OUTLINE**

Corresponding to each example STX is a one-page operation outline that is used for training, planning, and selecting collective and individual tasks for training to proficiency. The operation outline is used to select the appropriate tasks when planning STXs, FTXs, or to complete training programs. The overall operation standard is on the upper right of each page.

a. The first row under the operation lists the collective tasks and or T&EOs, which are performed each time the operation is executed. The additional collective tasks supporting that operation, below the first row and marked with an asterisk, are selected based on METT-T and the unit training status. These tasks may be executed once, several times, or continuously in support of the operation.

b. Critical drills and leader and individual tasks, associated with the operation, complete the outline.

### 3-5. CONDITION STATEMENT

The condition statement before each operation provides the tactical situation for the STXs. The general conditions assist the training manager in selecting tasks to support the platoon operation to be trained.

#### OPERATION 1: MOVEMENT TO CONTACT

**CONDITIONS:** Contact with the enemy has been broken. The latest INTSUMs indicate that the enemy is withdrawing to establish defensive positions and is at 65 to 70 percent strength. He has the capability for indirect fire and CAS. The enemy has already used chemicals and probably will do so again. The enemy has not had time to establish a defense in depth. The platoon conducts the operation as part of a larger force. A movement to contact is initiated to regain contact, exploit enemy weaknesses, and to prevent reinforcement and establishment of defense in depth. The platoon's task is to protect the company from a surprise attack by providing early warning of enemy positions and obstacles. The platoon has indirect fire support capability.

**EXAMPLE MISSION STATEMENT:** 1st Platoon conducts a movement to contact along Axis BRAVO NLT 221300MayXX to regain contact with the enemy.

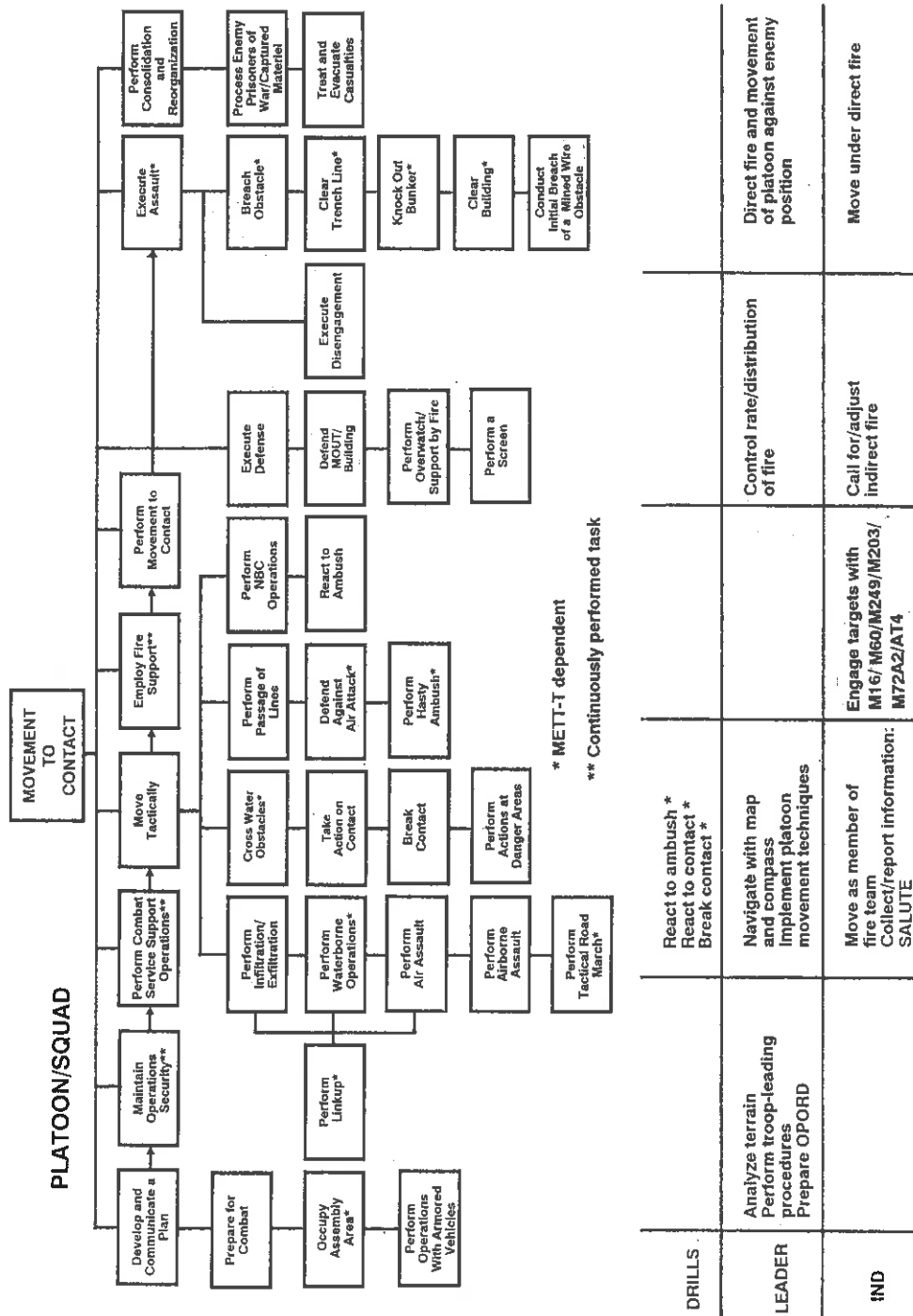
<b>MOVEMENT TO CONTACT</b>	
<b>STX 37</b>	<b>STX 38</b>
Develop and Communicate a Plan 7-3/4-1605	Perform Tactical Road March 7-3/4-1123
Prepare for Combat 7-3/4-1606	Occupy Assembly Area 7-3/4-1136
Perform Air Assault 7-3/4-1126	Develop and Communicate a Plan 7-3/4-1605
Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134	Prepare for Combat 7-3/4-1606
*React to Contact Battle Drill 2	Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134
Perform Consolidation and Reorganization 7-3/4-1607	*React to Ambush Battle Drill 4
	Perform Consolidation and Reorganization 7-3/4-1607
*Battle Drills (ARTEP 7-8-DRILL)	

**Figure 3-1. Example of movement to contact STXs.**

<b>MOVEMENT TO CONTACT</b>	
<p style="text-align: center;"><b>STX 39</b></p> <p>Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134</p> <p>Perform Actions at Danger Areas 7-3/4-1135</p> <p>*React to Contact Battle Drill 2</p> <p>Execute Disengagement 7-3/4-1122</p> <p>Perform Consolidation and Reorganization 7-3/4-1607</p>	<p style="text-align: center;"><b>STX 40</b></p> <p>Occupy Assembly Area 7-3/4-1136</p> <p>Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134</p> <p>Employ Fire Support 7-3/4-1200</p> <p>Execute Assault 7-3/4-1103</p> <p>Perform Consolidation and Reorganization 7-3/4-1607</p>
<p style="text-align: center;"><b>STX 41</b></p> <p>Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134</p> <p>Perform Actions at Danger Areas 7-3/4-1135</p> <p>Perform Hasty Ambush 7-3/4-1144</p> <p>Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134</p> <p>Knock Out a Bunker 7-3/4-1113</p>	<p style="text-align: center;"><b>**STX 42</b></p>
<p>*Battle Drills (ARTEP 7-8-DRILL)</p> <p>**NOTE: Trainers may develop their own STX based on the above conditions statement or develop their own conditions statement.</p>	

**Figure 3-1. Example of movement to contact STXs (continued).**

NOTE: T&EOs may be selected from the operation outline in Figure 3-2.



\* METT-T dependent  
 \*\* Continuously performed task

DRILLS	React to ambush * React to contact * Break contact *			Direct fire and movement of platoon against enemy position
LEADER	Analyze terrain Perform troop-leading procedures Prepare OPORD	Navigate with map and compass Implement platoon movement techniques	Engage targets with M16/M60/M249/M203/M72A2/AT4	Control rate/distribution of fire
IND		Move as member of fire team Collect/report information: SALUTE	Call for/adjust indirect fire	Move under direct fire

Figure 3-2. Example of a movement to contact operation outline.

**OPERATION 2: ATTACK**

**CONDITIONS:** Contact with the enemy has been reestablished. Initial reports indicate that he is at 65 to 70 percent strength and has not been reinforced. Enemy defensive positions are not well established. He has indirect fire and CAS capability. The enemy has used chemicals and will probably do so again. An attack is ordered to prevent reinforcement and establishment of heavily fortified defense in depth. The platoon is acting as part of a larger force and has indirect fire capability.

**EXAMPLE MISSION STATEMENT:** 1st Platoon attacks to destroy the enemy defensive site in the vicinity of GL333016 NLT 220200JunXX to prevent reinforcement.

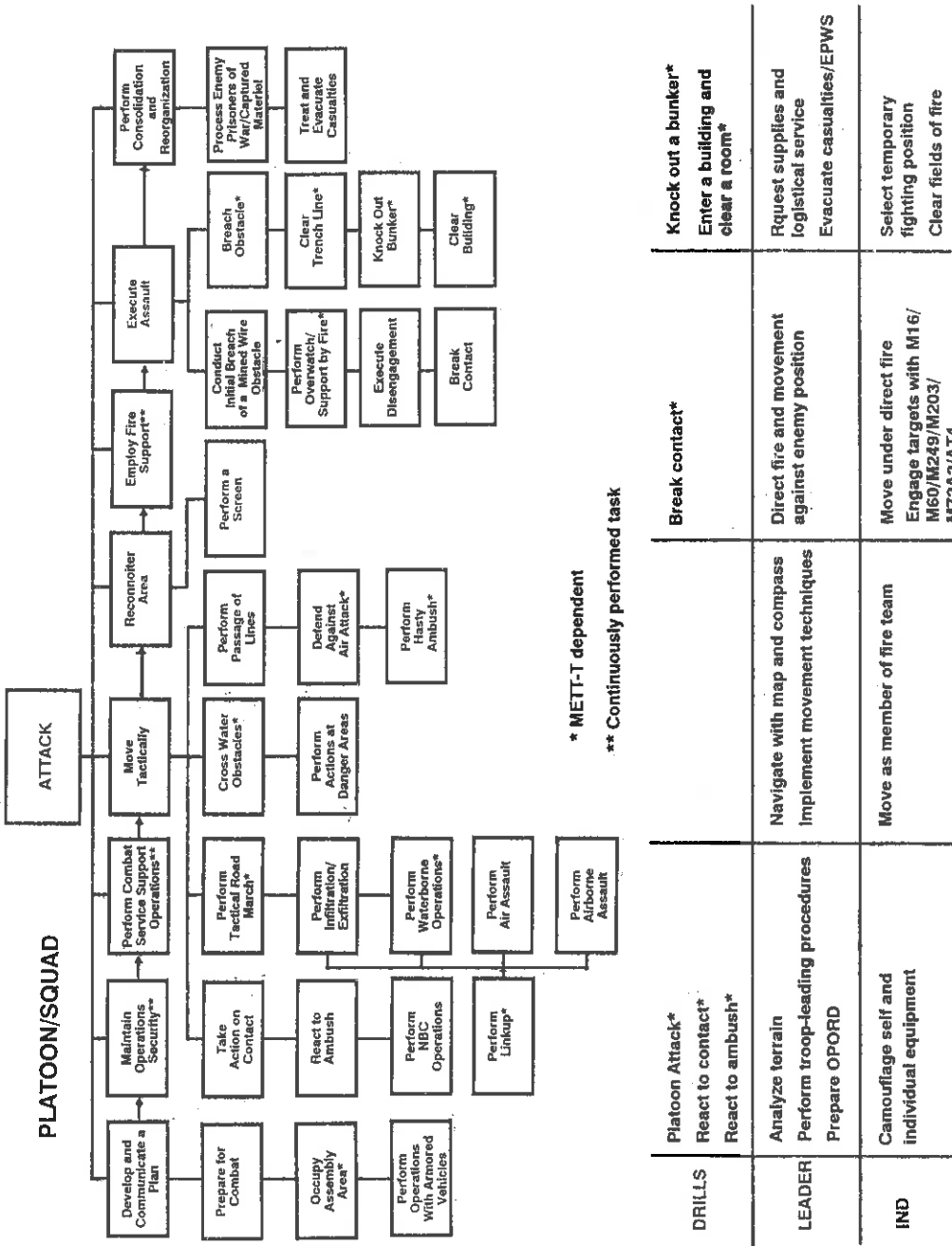
<b>ATTACK</b>	
<b>STX 1</b>	<b>STX 2</b>
Occupy Assembly Area 7-3/4-1136  Develop and Communicate a Plan 7-3/4-1605  Prepare for Combat 7-3/4-1606  Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134  *React to Contact Battle Drill 2  Perform Consolidation and Reorganization 7-3/4-1607  *Battle Drills (ARTEP 7-8-DRILL)	Develop and Communicate a Plan 7-3/4-1605  Prepare for Combat 7-3/4-1606  Perform Passage of Lines 7-3/4-1125  Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134  *React to Ambush Battle Drill 4  *Break Contact Battle Drill 3

**Figure 3-3. Example of attack STXs.**

<b>ATTACK</b>	
<p style="text-align: center;"><b>STX 3</b></p> <p>Perform Actions at Danger Areas 7-3/4-1135</p> <p>*React to Contact Battle Drill 2</p> <p>Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134</p> <p>Perform Consolidation and Reorganization 7-3/4-1607</p> <p>Defend Against Air Attack 7-3/4-1301</p> <p>Perform Consolidation and Reorganization 7-3/4-1607</p>	<p style="text-align: center;"><b>**STX 4</b></p> <p>Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134</p> <p>Reconnoiter Area 7-3/4-1003</p> <p>Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134</p> <p>Perform a Screen 7-3/4-1006</p> <p>Perform Consolidation and Reorganization 7-3/4-1607</p>
<p style="text-align: center;"><b>STX 5</b></p> <p>Occupy Assembly Area 7-3/4-1136</p> <p>Perform Passage of Lines 7-3/4-1125</p> <p>Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134</p> <p>*Conduct Initial Breach of a Mined Wire Obstacle Battle Drill 8</p> <p>Perform Overwatch/Support by Fire 7-3/4-1108</p> <p>Execute Assault 7-3/4-1103</p> <p>Perform Consolidation and Reorganization 7-3/4-1607</p>	<p style="text-align: center;"><b>**STX 6</b></p>
<p>*Battle Drills (ARTEP 7-8-DRILL)</p> <p>**NOTE: Trainers may develop their own STX based on the above conditions statement or develop their own conditions statement.</p>	

**Figure 3-3. Example of attack STXs (continued).**

NOTE: T&EOs may be selected from the operation outline in Figure 3-4, page 3-8.



DRILLS	Platoon Attack* React to contact* React to ambush*	Break contact*	Knock out a bunker* Enter a building and clear a room*
LEADER	Analyze terrain Perform troop-leading procedures Prepare OPORD	Direct fire and movement against enemy position	Request supplies and logistical service Evacuate casualties/EPWS
IND	Camouflage self and individual equipment	Move as member of fire team Engage targets with M16/M60/M249/M203/M72A2/AT4	Select temporary fighting position Clear fields of fire

Figure 3-4. Example of an attack operation outline.

**OPERATION 3: RAID**

**CONDITIONS:** The latest INTSUMs indicate that an enemy communications base station with a squad-size security force is within the brigade area of operations. The enemy has the capabilities for indirect fire, CAS, and chemical munition employment. The battalion has received instructions from S3 brigade to conduct a raid to destroy the base station. A raid by a platoon is indicated to have the least chance of detection and the best possible chance of success. As part of a larger force, your platoon has been ordered to conduct a raid to destroy the base station. Your platoon has indirect fire capability.

**EXAMPLE MISSION STATEMENT:** 1st Platoon conducts a raid in the vicinity of GL2212959 NLT 131300JulXX to destroy the communications base station.

<b>RAID</b>	
<b>STX 7</b>	<b>**STX 8</b>
Perform Actions at Danger Areas 7-3/4-1135  *React to Contact Battle Drill 2  Perform Consolidation and Reorganization 7-3/4-1607  Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134  Perform Raid 7-3/4-1102  Perform Consolidation and Reorganization 7-3/4-1607	Occupy Assembly Area 7-3/4-1136  Develop and Communicate a Plan 7-3/4-1605  Prepare for Combat 7-3/4-1606  Perform Passage of Lines 7-3/4-1125  Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134  Perform Overwatch/Support by Fire 7-3/4-1108  Knock Out a Bunker 7-3/4-1113  Breach Obstacle 7-3/4-1402
*Battle Drills (ARTEP 7-8-DRILL)	

**Figure 3-5. Example of raid STXs.**



RAID	
<p style="text-align: center;"><b>STX 9</b></p> <p>Occupy Assembly Area 7-3/4-1136</p> <p>Prepare for Combat 7-3/4-1606</p> <p>Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134</p> <p>Employ Fire Support 7-3/4-1200</p>	<p style="text-align: center;"><b>**STX 10</b></p> <p>Occupy Assembly Area 7-3/4-1136</p> <p>Perform Tactical Road March 7-3/4-1123</p> <p>*React to Contact Battle Drill 2</p> <p>Perform Consolidation and Reorganization 7-3/4-1607</p> <p>Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134</p> <p>Perform Antiarmor Ambush 7-3/4-1143</p>
<p style="text-align: center;"><b>STX 11</b></p> <p>Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134</p> <p>Reconnoiter Area 7-3/4-1003</p> <p>Perform Raid 7-3/4-1102</p> <p>Perform Consolidation and Reorganization 7-3/4-1607</p>	<p style="text-align: center;"><b>**STX 12</b></p>
<p>*Battle Drills (ARTEP 7-8-DRILL)</p> <p>**NOTE: Trainers may develop their own STX based on the above conditions statement or develop their own conditions statement.</p>	

**Figure 3-5. Example of raid STXs (continued).**

NOTE: T&EOs may be selected from the operation outline in Figure 3-6.



**OPERATION 4: AMBUSH**

**CONDITIONS:** A squad-size enemy element has been patrolling routinely through the battalion area of operations along the same routes for several days. Your platoon has been directed to execute an ambush to disrupt the enemy's patrolling. Other than providing indirect fire capabilities, your unit is operating separately from the company. Both friendly and enemy units have indirect fire capabilities.

**EXAMPLE MISSION STATEMENT:** 1st Platoon conducts an ambush in the vicinity of TG696331 NLT 031900JanXX to disrupt enemy patrolling operations.

<b>AMBUSH</b>	
<b>STX 13</b>	<b>STX 14</b>
Perform Passage of Lines 7-3/4-1125  Perform Actions at Danger Areas 7-3/4-1135  *React to Contact Battle Drill 2  Perform Consolidation and Reorganization 7-3/4-1607  Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134  Perform NBC Operations 7-3/4-1406  Occupy Assembly Area 7-3/4-1136	Occupy Assembly Area 7-3/4-1136  Reconnoiter Area 7-3/4-1003  Perform Ambush 7-3/4-1106  Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134  *React to Ambush Battle Drill 4  Defend Against Air Attack 7-3/4-1301  Perform Consolidation and Reorganization 7-3/4-1607
*Battle Drills (ARTEP 7-8-DRILL)	

**Figure 3-7. Example of ambush STXs.**

<b>AMBUSH</b>	
<p style="text-align: center;"><b>STX 15</b></p> <p>Occupy Assembly Area 7-3/4-1136</p> <p>Develop and Communicate a Plan 7-3/4-1605</p> <p>Prepare for Combat 7-3/4-1606</p> <p>Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134</p>	<p style="text-align: center;"><b>STX 16</b></p> <p>Perform Air Assault 7-3/4-1126</p> <p>Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134</p> <p>Perform Point Ambush 7-3/4-1145</p> <p>Execute Disengagement 7-3/4-1122</p>
<p style="text-align: center;"><b>STX 17</b></p> <p>Perform Tactical Road March 7-3/4-1123</p> <p>Occupy Assembly Area 7-3/4-1136</p> <p>Develop and Communicate a Plan 7-3/4-1605</p> <p>Prepare for Combat 7-3/4-1606</p> <p>Perform Passage of Lines 7-3/4-1125</p> <p>Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134</p> <p>*React to Ambush Battle Drill 4</p> <p>Perform Consolidation and Reorganization 7-3/4-1607</p>	<p style="text-align: center;"><b>**STX 18</b></p>
<p>*Battle Drills (ARTEP 7-8-DRILL)</p> <p>**NOTE: Trainers may develop their own STX based on the above conditions statement or develop their own conditions statement.</p>	

**Figure 3-7. Example of ambush STXs (continued).**

NOTE: T&EOs may be selected from the operation outline in Figure 3-8, page 3-14.

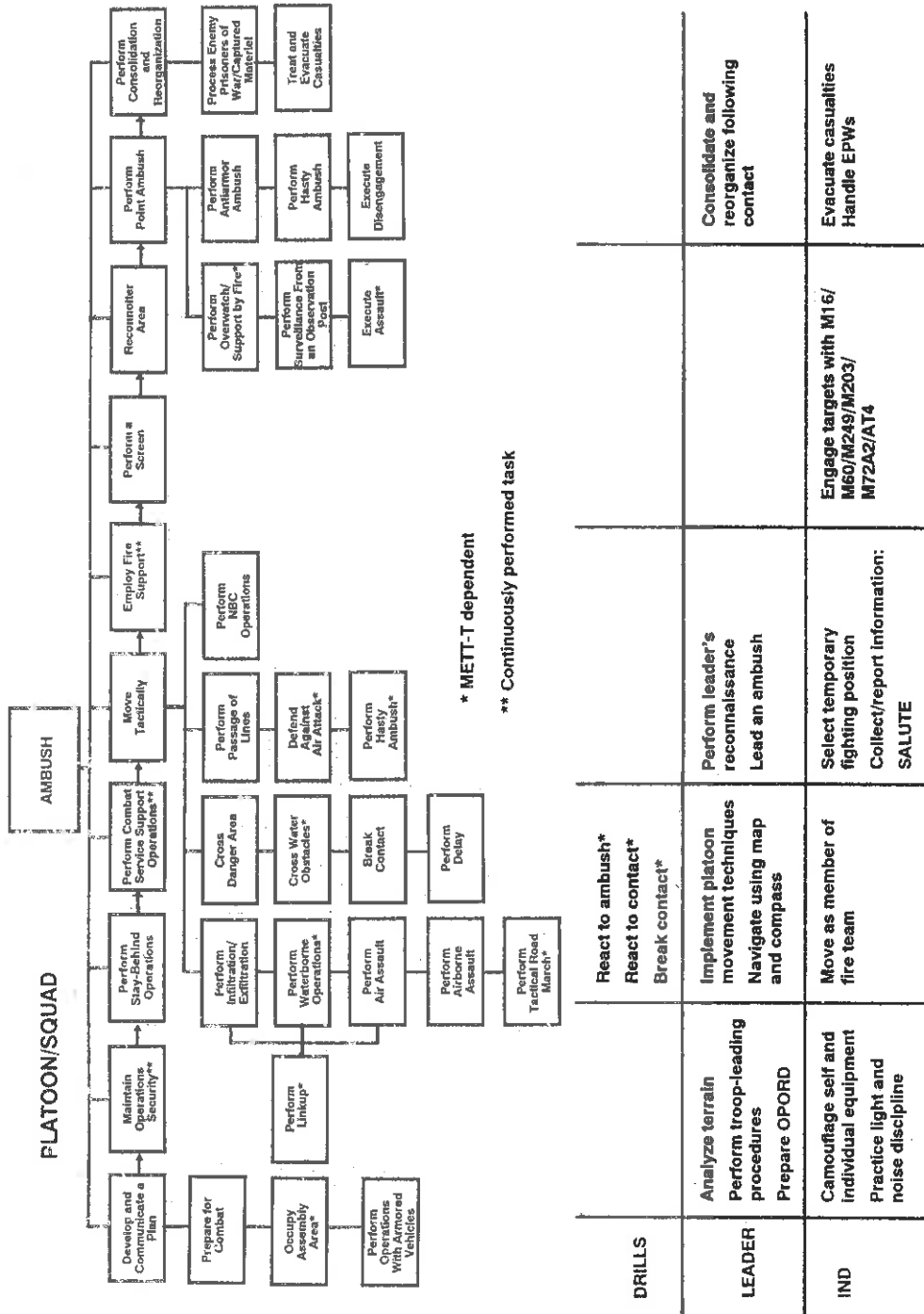


Figure 3-8. Example of an ambush operation outline.

**OPERATION 5: RECONNAISSANCE AND SECURITY**

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion S2 briefed that the enemy has begun to establish defense positions in and around a nearby, small village. He has the capability for indirect fire, CAS, and chemicals. As part of a larger force, your platoon has been ordered to reconnoiter the village to determine enemy positions and strength.

**EXAMPLE MISSION STATEMENT:** 1st Platoon conducts an area reconnaissance in the vicinity of Objective Rock (GT3311) NLT 130800DecXX to locate enemy positions and determine their strength.

<b>RECONNAISSANCE AND SECURITY</b>	
<b>STX 25</b>	<b>STX 26</b>
Develop and Communicate a Plan 7-3/4-1605	Occupy Assembly Area 7-3/4-1136
Prepare for Combat 7-3/4-1606	Perform Passage of Lines 7-3/4-1125
Perform Passage of Lines 7-3/4-1125	Reconnoiter Route 7-3/4-1003
Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134	Perform Hasty Ambush 7-3/4-1144
Reconnoiter Area 7-3/4-1003	Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134
Perform Surveillance From an Observation Post 7-3/4-1008	*React to Contact Battle Drill 2
	Perform Consolidation and Reorganization 7-3/4-1607
*Battle Drills (ARTEP 7-8-DRILL)	

**Figure 3-9. Example of reconnaissance and security STXs.**

<b>RECONNAISSANCE AND SECURITY</b>	
<p style="text-align: center;"><b>STX 27</b></p> <p>Develop and Communicate a Plan 7-3/4-1605</p> <p>Prepare for Combat 7-3/4-1606</p> <p>Perform Air Assault 7-3/4-1126</p> <p>Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134</p> <p>*React to Contact Battle Drill 2</p> <p>Perform Consolidation and Reorganization 7-3/4-1607</p>	<p style="text-align: center;"><b>STX 28</b></p> <p>Occupy Assembly Area 7-3/4-1136</p> <p>Perform Operations With Armored Vehicles 7-3/4-1140</p> <p>Perform Passage of Lines 7-3/4-1125</p> <p>Perform a Screen 7-3/4-1006</p>
<p style="text-align: center;"><b>STX 29</b></p> <p>Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134</p> <p>Reconnoiter Zone 7-3/4-1004</p> <p>Perform Linkup 7-3/4-1128</p> <p>Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134</p> <p>Perform NBC Operations 7-3/4-1406</p>	<p style="text-align: center;"><b>**STX 30</b></p>
<p>*Battle Drills (ARTEP 7-8-DRILL)</p> <p>**NOTE: Trainers may develop their own STX based on the above conditions statement or develop their own conditions statement.</p>	

**Figure 3-9. Example of reconnaissance and security STXs (continued).**

NOTE: T&EOs may be selected from the operation outline in Figure 3-10.

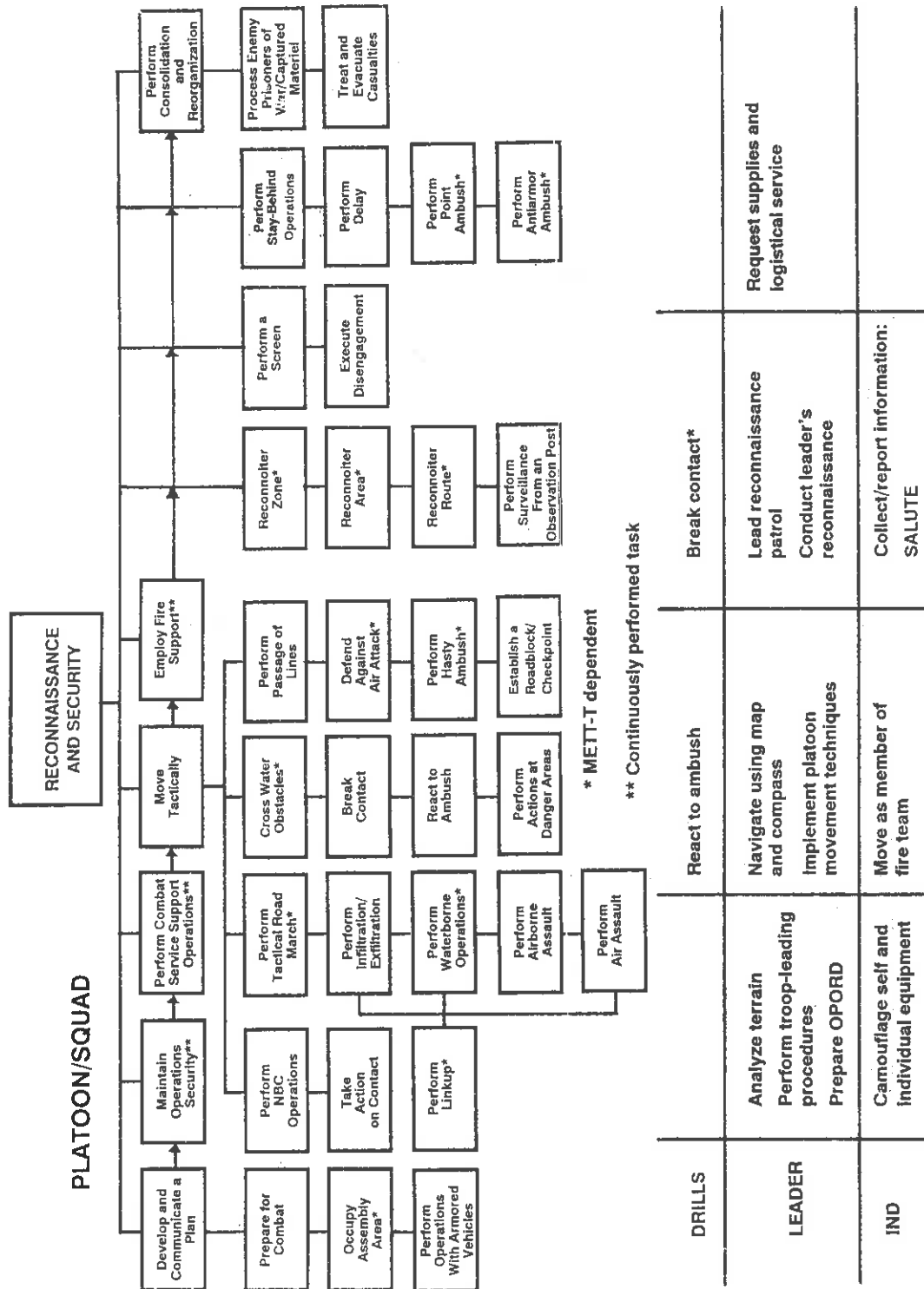


Figure 3-10. Example of a reconnaissance and security operation outline.



**OPERATION 6: DEFEND**

**CONDITIONS:** The latest INTSUMs indicate that enemy forces are expected to use a high-speed avenue of approach that is dominated by a small, built-up area containing strongly constructed buildings. The enemy has the capability for indirect fire, CAS, and chemicals. A defense in and around the town is necessary to deny the enemy the use of the avenue of approach. Your platoon, as part of a larger force, is ordered to occupy and prepare defensive positions that overlook the avenue of approach. The platoon has indirect fire capability.

**EXAMPLE MISSION STATEMENT:** 1st Platoon defends in the vicinity of TT131002 (HAP HANSEN) NLT 250600JunXX to deny enemy the use of the avenue of approach.

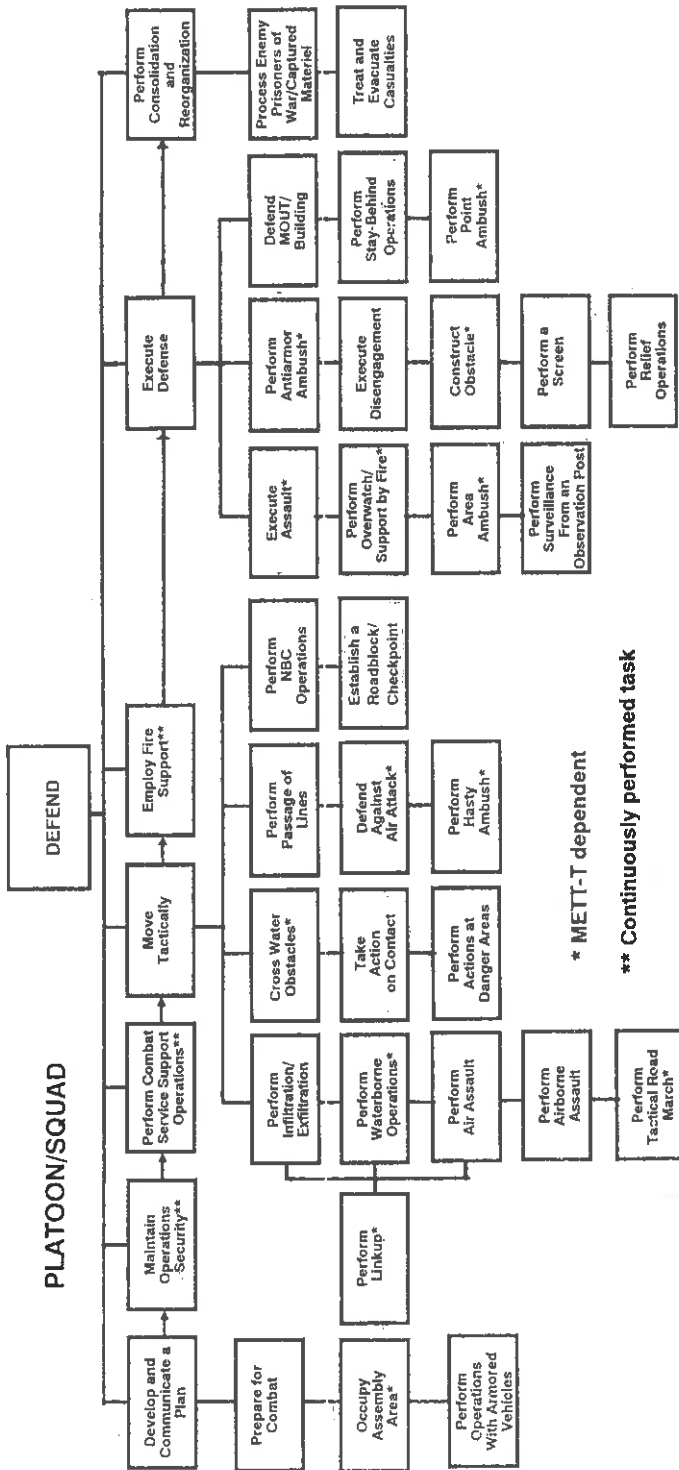
<b>DEFEND</b>	
<b>STX 31</b>	<b>STX 32</b>
Perform Tactical Road March 7-3/4-1123	Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134
Occupy Assembly Area 7-3/4-1136	*React to Contact Battle Drill 2
Develop and Communicate a Plan 7-3/4-1605	Perform Consolidation and Reorganization 7-3/4-1607
Prepare for Combat 7-3/4-1606	Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134
Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134	Execute Defense 7-3/4-1115
React to Ambush Battle Drill 4	Perform Consolidation and Reorganization 7-3/4-1607
Perform Consolidation and Reorganization 7-3/4-1607	Execute Disengagement 7-3/4-1122
	Perform Overwatch/ Support by Fire 7-3/4-1108
*Battle Drills (ARTEP 7-8-DRILL)	

**Figure 3-11. Example of defend STXs.**

<b>DEFEND</b>	
<p style="text-align: center;"><b>STX 33</b></p> <p>Defend MOUT/Building 7-3/4-1118</p> <p>Construct Obstacle 7-3/4-1401</p> <p>Employ Fire Support 7-3/4-1200</p>	<p style="text-align: center;"><b>STX 34</b></p> <p>Occupy Assembly Area 7-3/4-1136</p> <p>Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134</p> <p>Defend MOUT/Building 7-3/4-1118</p> <p>Execute Disengagement 7-3/4-1122</p> <p>Perform Passage of Lines 7-3/4-1125</p>
<p style="text-align: center;"><b>STX 35</b></p> <p>Execute Defense 7-3/4-1115</p> <p>Perform Consolidation and Reorganization 7-3/4-1607</p> <p>Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134</p> <p>Perform Combat Service Support Operations 7-3/4-1501</p> <p>Perform Stay-Behind Operations 7-3/4-1116</p>	<p style="text-align: center;"><b>**STX 36</b></p>
<p>*Battle Drills (ARTEP 7-8-DRILL)</p> <p>**NOTE: Trainers may develop their own STX based on the above conditions statement or develop their own conditions statement.</p>	

**Figure 3-11. Example of defend STXs (continued).**

NOTE: T&EOs may be selected from the operation outline in Figure 3-12, page 3-20.



DRILLS	React to ambush React to contact* Break contact*	Consolidate and reorganize following contact
LEADER	Prepare a unit operation plan Employ PEWS	Designate primary, alternate, supplementary positions Prepare sector sketch Conduct local security patrols
IND	Use challenge/password Camouflage self and individual equipment	Evacuate casualties Handle EPWs

Figure 3-12. Example of a defend operation outline.

**OPERATION 7: RETROGRADE**

**CONDITIONS:** Enemy contact has been heavy for three days and nights. Your battalion is at 70 percent strength and is ordered to begin moving to a more defensible terrain. The enemy has already used chemicals and will probably do so again. He has indirect fire and CAS capability. Your company has been ordered to delay the enemy as the battalion withdraws. Your platoon will operate as part of the company delay.

**EXAMPLE MISSION STATEMENT:** 1st Platoon delays in the vicinity of GL336204 NLT 1200600JulXX to facilitate the withdrawal of the battalion.

<b>RETROGRADE</b>	
<b>STX 19</b>	<b>STX 20</b>
Develop and Communicate a Plan 7-3/4-1605	Occupy Assembly Area 7-3/4-1136
Prepare for Combat 7-3/4-1606	Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134
Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134	*React to Contact Battle Drill 2
Defend Against Air Attack 7-3/4-1301	Perform NBC Operations 7-3/4-1406
Perform Consolidation and Reorganization 7-3/4-1607	Perform Linkup 7-3/4-1128
Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134	Perform Consolidation and Reorganization 7-3/4-1607
Perform Overwatch/Support by Fire 7-3/4-1197	Perform Infiltration/ Exfiltration 7-3/4-1137
Execute Disengagement 7-3/4-1122	
*Battle Drills (ARTEP 7-8-DRILL)	

**Figure 3-13. Example of retrograde STXs.**

<b>RETROGRADE</b>	
<p style="text-align: center;"><b>STX 21</b></p> <p>Execute Disengagement 7-3/4-1122</p> <p>Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134</p> <p>*React to Contact Battle Drill 2</p>	<p style="text-align: center;"><b>STX 22</b></p> <p>Develop and Communicate a Plan 7-3/4-1605</p> <p>Prepare for Combat 7-3/4-1606</p> <p>Construct Obstacle 7-3/4-1404</p> <p>Employ Fire Support 7-3/4-1200</p> <p>Execute Disengagement 7-3/4-1122</p> <p>Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134</p>
<p style="text-align: center;"><b>STX 23</b></p> <p>Perform Air Assault 7-3/4-1036</p> <p>Move Tactically 7-3/4-1025</p> <p>Perform Actions at Danger Areas 7-3/4-1028</p> <p>*React to Contact Battle Drill 2</p> <p>Perform Consolidation and Reorganization 7-3/4-1047</p>	<p style="text-align: center;"><b>**STX 24</b></p>
<p>*Battle Drills (ARTEP 7-8-DRILL)</p> <p>**NOTE: Trainers may develop their own STX based on the above conditions statement or develop their own conditions statement.</p>	

**Figure 3-13. Example of retrograde STXs (continued).**

NOTE: T&EOs may be selected from the operation outline in Figure 3-14.

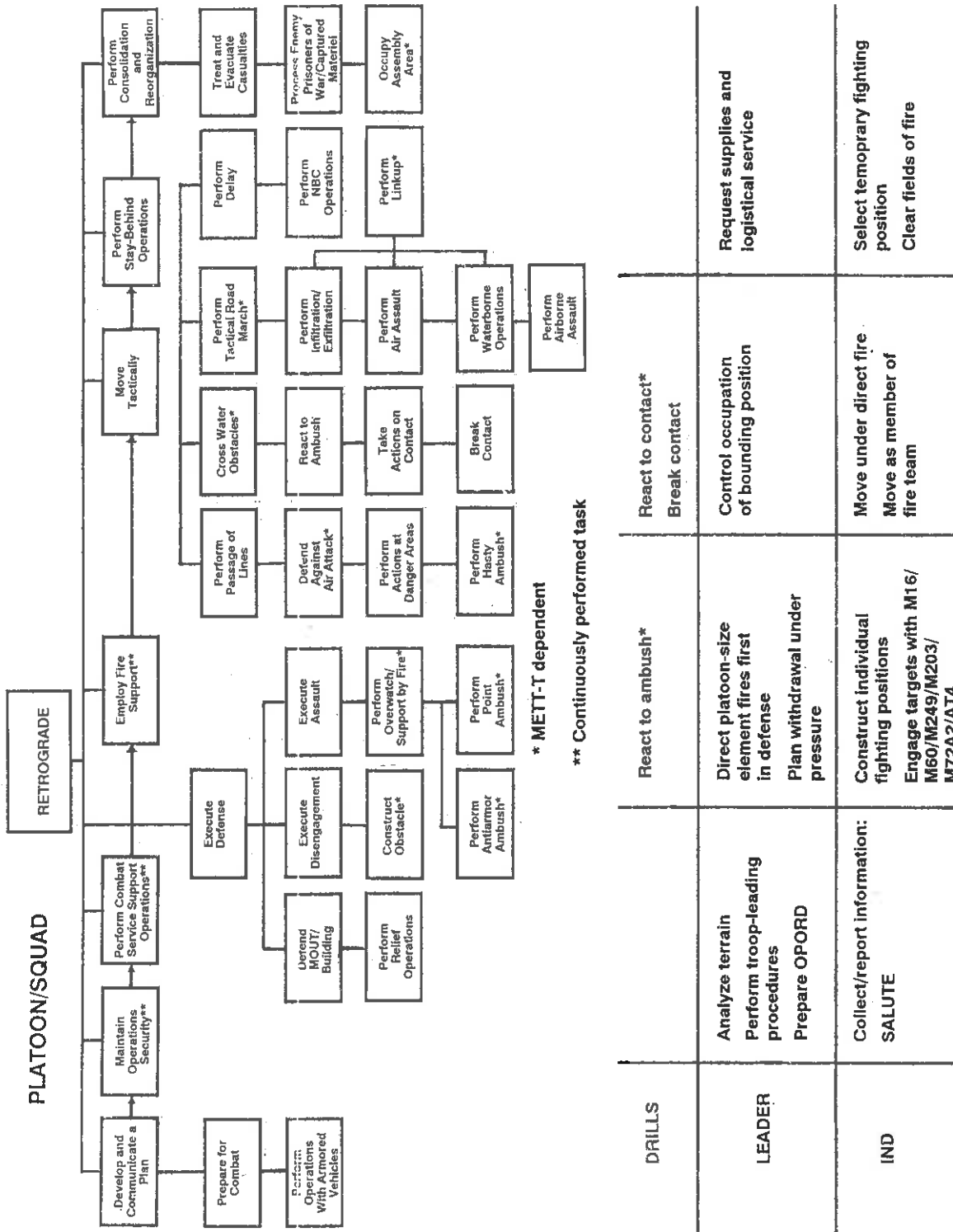


Figure 3-14. Example of a retrograde operation outline.



## CHAPTER 4

**TRAINING EXERCISES****4-1. GENERAL**

Training exercises are used to practice, evaluate, and sustain proficiency in individual and collective tasks.

**TRAINING NOTE:** Leaders must instill situational awareness in all subordinate leaders and soldiers. Soldiers must be constantly alert for and avoid situations that may result in death or injury. For example, lock cargo hatches; do not grab the hot barrel of a machine gun; always be aware of your buddies' location during live-fire exercises; double-check all mortar firing data.

**4-2. SITUATIONAL TRAINING EXERCISE**

The STXs are short, scenario-driven, mission-oriented tactical exercises that train a single collective task (T&EO) or a group of related battle drills and collective tasks (T&EOs). The STXs provide the leader a method to train using doctrinally approved tactics and techniques, but unlike a battle drill, it does not establish the method of execution. The STXs may be modified based on METT-T. This method provides for standardization without stereotyping training. The STXs may be performed without ammunition, with blank ammunition, live fire, or with or without MILES, and under all environmental conditions. Although mission-oriented (based on higher's OPOD), an STX does not train all tasks required for an operation. An STX is a series of collective tasks arranged in a logical sequence to train a portion of an operation. The STXs also require leader tasks, such as planning, controlling, and reporting, to tie the supporting collective tasks together. Each STX focuses on a specific mission (IAW higher's OPOD), but does not stand alone (under all conditions) as the only STX required for operation proficiency. To accomplish proficiency, several STXs with the same operation will have to be trained. This is a continuous process that must be repeated for each operation.

**a. STX development.**

(1) At platoon level, STXs are conducted extensively. The trainer can select from the example STXs shown in Chapter 3, Operation Outlines, or make his own (using the matrixes in Chapter 2 or the operation outlines in Chapter 3) based on METT-T, training needs, and commander's guidelines.

(2) Each STX plan should consist of the following (see Figure 4-1):

(a) Heading. The heading includes the echelon (platoon, squad) for which the STX was prepared and the title (attack, defend) of the STX.



(b) Objective. The objective identifies who the STX is designed to train and what operation it supports.

(c) Interface. The interface paragraph indicates those battle drills (squad and platoon for platoon MTP) and company or habitually attached and supporting units' STXs, if available, that can be trained along with the STX.

(d) Training. The training section includes the following:

- Guidance on related subordinate unit leader, individual, and collective training that the leader may wish to consider for training before the performance of the STX.
- Tips that will aid the leader in preparing and conducting the STX.
- General and special situations (scenario) and FRAGO.

(e) T&EO sequence. This lists T&EO task title and page number (from Chapter 5) in the chronological sequence in which they are executed in the STX.

(f) Support requirements. This section provides a listing of items required to conduct the exercise. Examples of specific requirements are number and types of equipment, number of evaluators, number and types of OPFOR, type and size of training area, ammunition, training aids and or devices, and rations.

<b>HEADING</b>	
<b>1. Objective.</b>	
<b>2. Interface.</b>	
<b>3. Training.</b>	
a. Guidance.	
b. Tips.	
c. Enhancers.	
d. General and special situations. Graphic portrayal of STX.	
<b>4. Support Requirements.</b>	
<b>5. T&amp;EO Sequence.</b>	

**Figure 4-1. Example STX format.**

**b. STX training.**

(1) The STX training should be tailored to train high-payoff tasks identified in the training plan. High-payoff tasks are those individual and leader tasks, battle drills, and other collective tasks that support several platoon operations and will significantly improve proficiency. An STX may involve only key participants in a tactical exercise without troops, or may involve the entire platoon with all equipment.

(2) Before beginning platoon STX training, make sure that the platoon can perform all the subtasks for the T&EOs. Some of these subtasks are individual and or leader tasks. If in doubt about the platoon's ability to perform the subtasks, conduct individual and or battle drill training to bring the platoon up to standard. Multiechelon training should be used whenever possible to make the best use of available time.

(3) Conduct an AAR after each STX. (See Chapter 6.)

## INFANTRY PLATOON SITUATIONAL TRAINING EXERCISE ATTACK

### 1. Objective.

This example STX trains collective, leader, and individual tasks in the platoon's operation, Attack.

### 2. Interface.

This STX is supported by the following battle drill: React to Contact.

### 3. Training.

a. *Guidance.* The trainer should review the individual, leader, and collective tasks that are performed during the STX. Determine which tasks require initial or refresher training.

(1) Individual training. Individual training should be on the critical soldier's manual tasks required to support this STX. The individual tasks listed in each T&EO should be used. Individual training is based on the tasks, conditions, and standards in the 11B and the common tasks soldier's manuals. Training should be hands-on and performance-oriented. During training, leaders assess soldier proficiency by evaluating task performance against the soldier's manual standards, and provide feedback to the soldiers. The individual training and evaluation program includes SDT, common tasks test, and commander's evaluation.

(2) Collective training. Collective training should be on the critical collective tasks required for the STX. Battle drills and STXs are key tools for squad and platoon collective training. As with individual tasks, drills should be trained to standard with feedback provided, as required. Collective tasks that could support this STX and operation as well as other operations are in the operation-to-collective task matrix in Chapter 2 and the attack operation outline in Chapter 3.

(3) Leader training. Leader training should be on the leader tasks required for the exercise as well as the critical individual tasks. Leader tasks are trained in the same manner as stated in paragraph 3a or by one or all of

the following methods. When materials and facilities are not available, innovation is the answer. Training is not limited to the methods listed.

(a) Classroom discussion on how to plan the exercise and how to implement platoon SOPs. (See FM 25-4, Chapter 2.)

(b) Map reconnaissance that assists in terrain analysis and war-gaming. (Use a map of the area where the STX is to be conducted.)

(c) Terrain board or sand table exercises that permit simulations or miniatures to be used to gain three-dimensional perspectives in war-gaming and or rehearsing the exercise. (Model the terrain board or sand table to match the terrain where the exercise will be conducted.)

(d) Tactical exercises without troops allow leaders to train on the ground, practicing land navigation movement, reporting, and other leader actions. (FM 25-101, pages C-3 and C-5.)

(e) Simulations and games teach leaders as part of a continuing officer and noncommissioned officer development program.

(f) Training extension courses present information and demonstrate how tasks are performed to standard using audiovisual equipment. (DA Pamphlet 350-100.)

b. *Training Tips.* Tips for training and general instructions on how to prepare for and accomplish the STX.

(1) Know the requirements for infiltration (FM 7-8, page 1-7) tactical movement (FM 7-8, Section III), and consolidation and reorganization (FM 7-8, pages 2-26, 2-58, 2-59, 2-60, and 2-63).

(2) Conduct a leader's reconnaissance of the training area with squad leaders to ensure that time-consuming mistakes are not made.

(3) Review the standards for the T&EOs that support this exercise.

(4) This STX may be conducted using several options.

(a) The exercise may be conducted with ammunition, without ammunition, or live fire. The use of ammunition is encouraged to add more realism to the exercise.

(b) The exercise may be conducted with or without MILES. MILES provides better feedback and should be used, if available.

(c) The exercise can be conducted under all environmental conditions, both day and night, with or without NBC. This scenario involves an active NBC environment.

(5) Instructions for this STX are as follows:

(a) This STX should be initially trained and rehearsed slowly, on open terrain, during good visibility, and with frequent explanations and critiques by leaders. This simple execution, combined with a thorough prebrief and "chalk talks" constitutes the "crawl" stage of STX training. The "walk" phase of this STX entails conducting the training at closer to normal rates, on more

difficult terrain, and with stops for explanation and critique only when problems occur (except for planned AARs). The STX is executed under conditions as close to those expected in combat as possible for the "run" phase. Full operational security and camouflage, realistic time frames and distances, challenging terrain, and aggressive OPFOR, NBC environment, and movement distances are all needed for the "run" phase. This exercise is conducted at full speed after conducting building-block training (individual training, drills) to reach the run level of execution.

(b) The T&EO standards for this exercise are in Chapter 5. These standards must be met to obtain the greatest benefits from the training.

(c) This exercise should be conducted on a recurring basis to sustain proficiency; however, since many of the T&EOs in this STX will be trained in other STXs, practice through integration rather than retraining the STX.

(d) Ideally, the OPFOR replicates enemy forces in size and strength to realistically portray threat activities. (See Chapter 6.)

(e) At least one evaluator should be assigned to control OPFOR activities. The evaluator evaluates OPFOR actions, ensures realism, stresses safety, and assesses loss and damage. If the OPFOR is in groups for several simultaneous actions, additional OPFOR evaluators or controllers are necessary. (See Chapter 6.)

(f) The OPFOR units should look and fight like potential enemy. This assists soldiers in understanding threat tactics, doctrine, and weapon systems. (See Chapter 6.)

c. *Training Enhancers.* This STX requires the platoon to perform passage of lines, move tactically, overwatch/support by fire, knock out a bunker, and consolidate and reorganize.

(1) When basic proficiency is attained for the tasks in this STX, the STX may be conducted under limited visibility conditions, both with and without NVDs.

(2) This STX can be conducted under increasing MOPP levels as proficiency increases.

d. *General Situation.* The exercise scenario is as follows:

(1) Contact with the enemy has been reestablished. Initial reports indicate that he is at 65 to 70 percent strength and has not been reinforced. His defensive positions are not well established. He has the capability for indirect fire and CAS. The enemy has used chemicals and will probably do so again. An attack is ordered to prevent reinforcement and establishment of heavily fortified defense in depth. The platoon is acting as part of the company and has indirect fire available. (Figure 4-2, page 4-6, illustrates the graphic scenario of task performance in this exercise.)

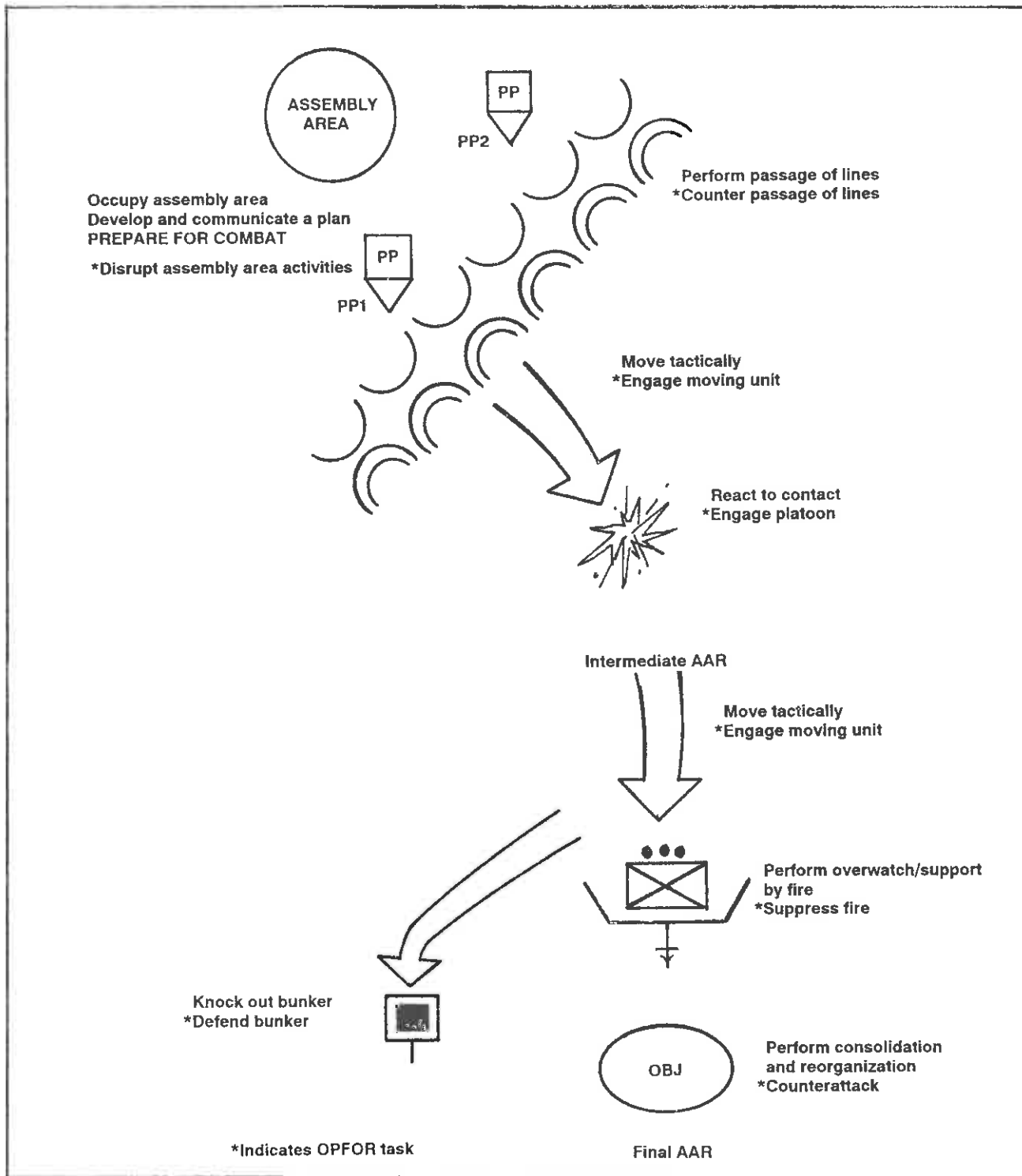


Figure 4-2. Graphic scenario of task performance.

(2) This exercise begins with the receipt of a company FRAGO by the platoon and ends after consolidation and reorganization. An AAR should be held after completing the support by fire task and after consolidation and reorganization. A final AAR should be conducted once all evaluation notes are compiled. If necessary, portions of the exercise should be performed until the platoon's performance is satisfactory. Table 4-1 provides a recommended sequence of T&EOs and time for each portion of the STX.

EVENT	ACTION	ESTIMATED TIME
1	Occupy Assembly Area	1.0 hr
2	Develop and Communicate a Plan	2.0 hrs
***	Prepare for Combat	
3	Perform Passage of Lines	30 min
4	Move Tactically	1.0 hr
5	React to Contact	5 min
6	Intermediate AAR	20 min
7	Move Tactically	1.0 hr
8	Perform Overwatch/Support by Fire	2.0 hrs
9	Knock Out a Bunker	2.0 hrs
10	Perform Consolidation and Reorganization	1.0 hr
11	Final AAR	45 min
*	Maintain Operations Security	

\*\* Total Time 11 hours, 40 min

\* These tasks are integrated and evaluated throughout the exercise.

\*\* Additional time is required if great portions of the exercise are conducted at night or during other limited visibility.

\*\*\* Conduct Precombat Checks is conducted simultaneously with Develop and Communicate a Plan.

**Table 4-1. Sequence of events and time for STX.**

*e. Special Situation.*

(1) Your platoon is part of a company in a secure assembly area where the platoon receives the FRAGO to attack (Figure 4-3, page 4-8).

(2) The company commander has ordered your platoon to lift your supporting fires. A sister platoon is consolidating on the objective when it receives fire from a bunker. The company commander orders your platoon to knock out the bunker.

## FRAGMENTARY ORDER

1. **SITUATION.**
  - a. *Enemy Forces.* The enemy is at 60 to 70 percent strength. He is preparing to counterattack. The enemy is expected to use air-delivered or artillery-delivered nonpersistent nerve agent.
  - b. *Friendly Forces. (Battalion designation)* The infantry attacks (date/time group) to destroy enemy forces at Objective (\_\_\_) to disrupt the enemy counterattack.
2. **MISSION.** (\_\_\_) Company destroys the enemy force at Objective DELTA (grid) NLT (date/time) to prevent the enemy from establishing a heavily fortified defense.
3. **EXECUTION. (Intent)** (Destroy enemy supply and transport that will support his planned counterattack.)
  - a. *Concept of the Operation.* (See Overlay.)
    - (1) **Maneuver.** Main attack to seize Objective (\_\_\_)(grid) and destroy enemy supply trains. Overwatch/support by fire (another) Platoon's attack on Objective (\_\_\_) Defeat enemy units in your zone of action to prevent reinforcement of or escape from Objective DELTA.
    - (2) **Fires.** Priority of fire to (another) Platoon.
  - b. *Tasks to Maneuver Units.*
    - (1) **(Another)** Platoon. Perform passage of lines using Passage Point 2.
    - (2) **(Evaluated)** Platoon. Perform passage of lines using Passage Point 1. Be prepared to assume the main attack, on order.
    - (3) **(Another)** Platoon. Perform passage of lines using Passage Point 2.
  - c. *Coordinating Instructions.*
    - (1) Company RP is (grid).
    - (2) Company linkup point is (grid).
    - (3) Alternate company linkup point is (grid).

**Figure 4-3. Example of a fragmentary order for STX.**

#### 4. Support Requirements.

a. *Minimum trainers/evaluators:* This exercise can be conducted by the company commander or platoon leader who will be the trainer and primary evaluator. At least one other controller or evaluator is required with the OPFOR. Another platoon being trained or evaluated should be used as the platoon making the main attack on the supply site. This platoon will need an additional trainer or evaluator.

b. *Vehicles/communications:* Those organic to the platoon. Two or three vehicles or trailers should be in the OPFOR supply site.

c. *Opposing force.* The OPFOR ground force should at least be a reinforced squad.

d. *Maneuver area.* A training area with at least 15 by 4 kilometers for infiltration, cross-country movement, and several locations for supply sites with a bunker is desired. The terrain should offer multiple, covered and concealed approaches to the objective area. Using terrain that limits the leader to a “geographical” or “school solution” does not allow evaluation of the platoon’s ability to conduct a terrain analysis and select covered and concealed positions.

e. *Consolidated support requirements:* This exercise requires the items listed in Table 4-2.

AMMUNITION	DODAC	BASIC LOAD	
5.56-mm	1305A080	60 rounds each rifle	
5.56-mm	1305A075	200 rounds each M249	
ATWESS cartridge	1370L367	4 (Viper) (for LAW) 3 each Dragon	
Hand grenade, body, M69	1330G811	2 each rifleman	
Hand grenade fuze (practice)	1330G878	2 each rifleman	
Simulator, projectile, ground burst M115A2	1370L594	20 each exercise	
Simulator, hand grenade M116-series	1370L601	20 each exercise	
<b>OTHER ITEMS</b>			
Batteries BA 3090 (9-volt)		140 each	
<b>MILES EQUIPMENT</b>	<b>PLATOON</b>	<b>EVALUATORS</b>	<b>OPFOR</b>
M16 system	32	2	15
Dragon/Javelin	2		2
M249 SAW MILES transmitter	6		
Controller guns		2	
Small-arms alignment fixture		1	

Table 4-2. Consolidated support requirements for STX.



### 5. T&EO Sequence.

Table 4-3 lists the T&EOs, in Chapter 5, used for evaluating this STX.

TASK/FUNCTION	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
Occupy Assembly Area	7-3/4-1136	5-67
Develop and Communicate a Plan	7-3/4-1605	5-227
Prepare for Combat	7-3/4-1606	5-237
Perform Passage of Lines	7-3/4-1125	5-86
Move Tactically	7-3/4-1134	5-71
Perform Overwatch/Support by Fire	7-3/4-1108	5-18
Knock Out a Bunker	7-3/4-1113	5-27
Perform Consolidation and Reorganization	7-3/4-1607	5-242
Maintain Operations Security	7-3/4-1409	5-193

**Table 4-3. T&EOs used in evaluating STX.**

## INFANTRY PLATOON SITUATIONAL TRAINING EXERCISE DEFEND

### 1. Objective.

This example STX trains collective, leader, and individual tasks. It provides additional training and evaluation of the platoon's operation, Defend.

2 **Interface.** This STX is supported by the following battle drill: React to Contact.

### 3. Training.

a. **Guidance.** The trainer should review the individual, leader, and collective tasks that are performed during the STX. Determine which tasks require initial or refresher trainer.

(1) Individual training. Individual training should be on the critical soldier's manual tasks required to support this STX. The individual tasks listed in each T&EO should be used. Individual training is based on the tasks, conditions, and standards in the 11B and the common tasks soldier's manual. Training should be hands-on and performance-oriented. During training, leaders assess the soldier's proficiency by evaluating task performance against the soldier's manual standards, and provide feedback to the soldiers. The individual training and evaluation program includes SDT, common tasks tests, and commander's evaluation.

(2) Collective training. Collective training should be on the critical collective tasks required for the STX. Battle drills and STXs are key tools for squad and platoon collective training. As with individual tasks, drills should be trained to standard with feedback provided, as required. Collective tasks that could support this STX and operation as well as other operations are in the operation-to-collective task matrix in Chapter 2 and defend operation outline in Chapter 3.

(3) Leader training. Leader training should be on the leader tasks required for the exercise as well as the critical individual tasks. Leader tasks are trained in the same manner as stated in paragraph 3a or by one or all of the following methods. When materials and facilities are not available, innovation is the answer. Training is not limited to the methods listed.

(a) Classroom discussions on how to plan the exercise and how to implement platoon SOPs. (See FM 25-4, Chapter 2.)

(b) Map reconnaissance that assists in terrain analysis and war-gaming. (Use a map of the area where the STX is to be conducted.)

(c) Terrain board or sand table exercises that permit simulations or miniatures to be used to gain three-dimensional perspectives in war-gaming and or rehearsing the exercise. (Model the terrain board or sand table to match the terrain where the exercise will be conducted.)

(d) Tactical exercise without troops or command field exercise allows the leader to train on the ground, practicing land navigation movement, reporting, and other leader actions. (See FM 25-101, pages C-3 and C-5.)

(e) Simulations and games to teach leaders as part of a continuing officer and noncommissioned officer development program.

(f) Training extension courses present information and demonstrate how tasks are performed to standard using audiovisual equipment. (See DA Pamphlet 350-100.)

b. *Training tips.* Tips for training and general instructions on how to prepare for and accomplish the STX.

(1) First, know the requirements for performing a passage of lines (FM 7-8, page 3-5), performing tactical movement (FM 7-8, Section III), and performing a defense (FM 7-8, Section V).

(2) Conduct a leader's reconnaissance of the training area with squad leaders to ensure that time-consuming mistakes are not made.

(3) Review the standards for the T&EOs that support this exercise.

(4) This STX may be conducted using several options.

(a) Indirect fire for this exercise may be provided by using artillery simulators. If artillery simulators are not used, the evaluator can announce "Incoming" to indicate engagement by indirect fire.

(b) The exercise may be conducted with ammunition, without ammunition, or live fire, but the use of ammunition is encouraged to add more realism to the exercise.

(c) The exercise may be conducted with or without MILES. MILES provides better feedback and should be used, if available.

(d) The exercise may be conducted under all environment conditions, both day and night, with or without NBC. This scenario involves an active NBC environment.

(5) Instructions for this STX are as follows:

(a) This exercise is conducted at full speed after conducting building-block training (individual training, drills) to reach the run level of execution.

(b) The T&EO standards for this exercise are in Chapter 5. These standards must be met to obtain the maximum benefits from the training.

(c) This exercise should be conducted on a recurring basis to sustain proficiency; however, since many of the T&EOs in this STX will be trained in other STXs, practice may occur through integration rather than retraining the STX.

(d) Ideally, the OPFOR replicates enemy forces in size and strength to realistically portray threat activities.

(e) At least one evaluator should be assigned to control OPFOR activities. The evaluator evaluates OPFOR actions, ensures realism, stresses safety, and assesses loss and damage. If the OPFOR is in groups for several simultaneous actions, additional OPFOR evaluators or controllers are necessary.

(f) The OPFOR units should look and fight like potential enemy. This aids soldiers in understanding threat tactics, doctrine, and weapon systems.

c. *Training enhancers.* This STX requires the platoon to perform a passage of lines, move tactically, and perform a defense. A passage of lines requires extensive reconnaissance and coordination by the leaders.

(1) When basic proficiency is attained for the tasks in this STX, the STX may be conducted under limited visibility conditions, both with and without NVDs.

(2) This STX can be conducted under increasing MOPP levels as proficiency increases.

d. *General situation.* The exercise scenario is as follows:

(1) The latest INTSUMs indicated that enemy forces are expected to use a high-speed avenue to counterattack the approach that is dominated by a small, built-up area containing strongly constructed buildings. The enemy has the capability for indirect fire, CAS, and chemicals. A defense in and around the town is necessary to deny the enemy the use of the avenue

of approach. Your platoon, as part of a larger force, is ordered to occupy and prepare defensive positions that overlook the avenue of approach. You have indirect fire available.

(2) This exercise begins with the receipt of an OPORD to perform a passage of lines and movement to contact and ends with the establishment of a hasty fighting position. An AAR should be conducted after the passage of lines and a final AAR conducted once all evaluation notes are compiled. If necessary, portions of the exercise should be performed until the platoon's performance is satisfactory.

e. *Special Situation.*

(1) Your platoon is part of a company in an assembly area when you receive a warning order to prepare for a movement to contact. (Figure 4-4, page 4-14, illustrates the graphic scenario of task performance in this exercise.)

(2) Thirty minutes after receiving the warning order, you receive the operation order (Figure 4-5, page 4-15).

(3) Table 4-4, page 4-16, provides a recommended sequence of T&EOs and time for each portion of the STX. The sequence of events is not established as tactical doctrine; it is only a guide. The commander builds his own STXs based on local training guidance, assessment of unit strengths and weaknesses, location, readiness posture, and factors of METT-T. (Times vary according to terrain, training time, and other factors associated with the training unit.)

(4) Your platoon has reacted to fire when you are ordered to occupy a hasty fighting position and await further orders.

**4. Support Requirements.**

a. *Minimum trainers/evaluators:* This exercise can be conducted by the company commander or platoon leader who will be the trainer and primary evaluator.

b. *Vehicles/communications:* Those organic to the platoon.

c. *Opposing force:* The OPFOR should be platoon strength for the defense portion of the STX. (See paragraph 3b(5) for further OPFOR guidance.)

d. *Maneuver area:* Depending on the local training area, a training area with at least 10 by 2 kilometers for cross-country movement and the establishment of a hasty fighting position are desired. The terrain should offer multiple, covered and concealed routes. Using terrain that limits the leader to a "geographical" or "school solution" does not allow evaluation of the unit's ability to conduct a terrain analysis and select covered and concealed routes.

e. *Consolidated support requirements:* This exercise requires the items listed in Table 4-5, page 4-15.

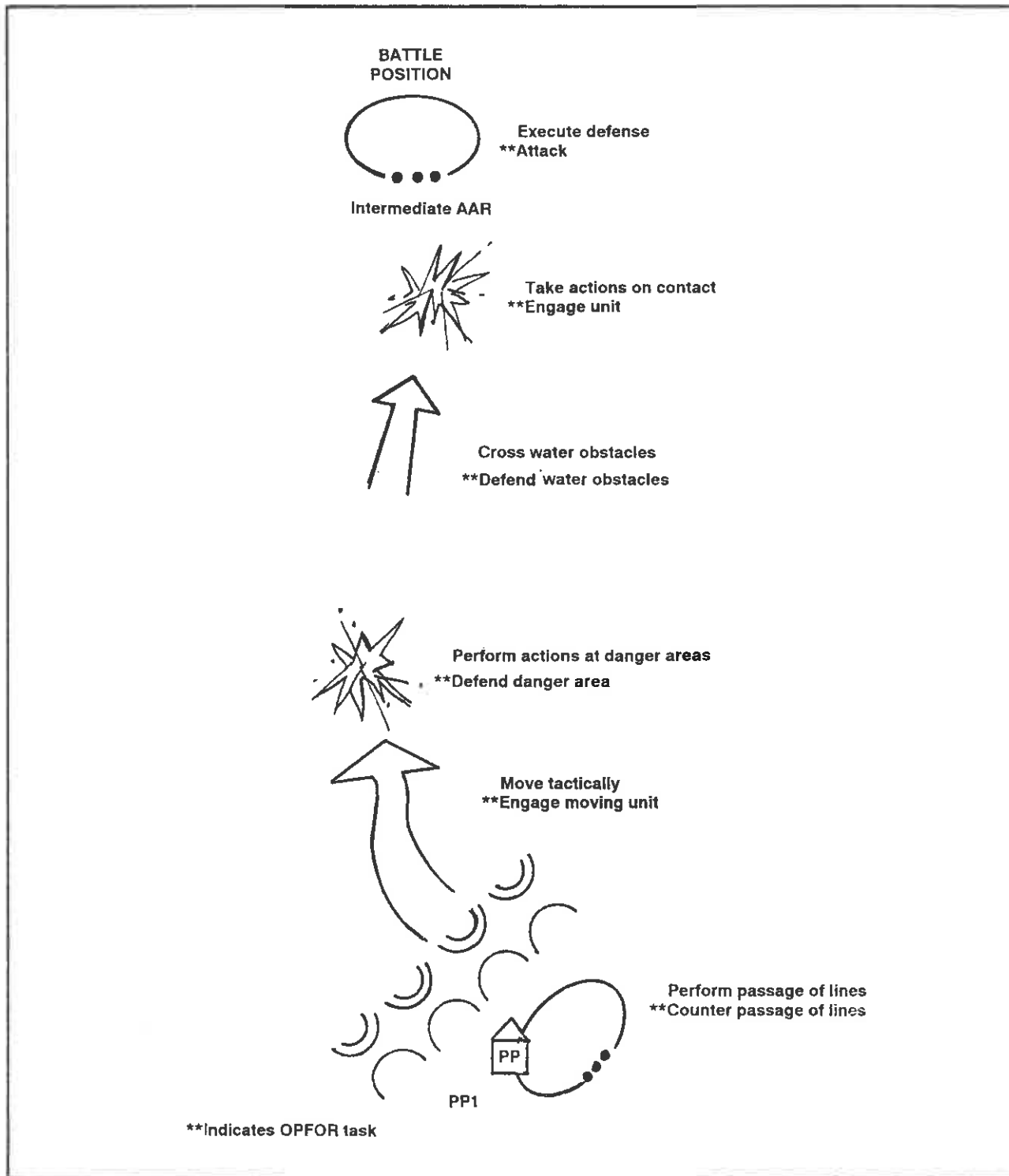


Figure 4-4. Graphic scenario of STX.

## OPERATION ORDER

### 1. SITUATION

- a. *Enemy Forces.* Contact with the enemy has been broken. He has withdrawn deep (\_\_\_\_), is being reinforced (\_\_\_\_), and is preparing to counterattack within 24 hours. The enemy is expected to use nonpersistent nerve agents. Enemy air is expected to be active in the area. Latest INTSUMs indicated that the enemy may have several platoon-size combat outposts in the battalion sector. Enemy units occupying the combat outposts are at 60 to 70 percent strength. Counterattacking forces are expected to be at full strength.
- b. *Friendly Forces.* (\_\_\_\_) Battalion conducts a passage of lines and defends along Phase Line Oak; be prepared to continue movement forward of Phase Line Oak, on order.
- (1) Missions of units on left and right (as required).
  - (2) (\_\_\_\_) Battalion is deployed in a defensive position along the forward edge of the battle area, coordinates (\_\_\_\_) to coordinates (\_\_\_\_).
  - (3) Supporting fires (\_\_\_\_) Battery, (\_\_\_\_) Battalion is in direct support.
- c. *Attachments and Detachments.* None.

2. **MISSION** (\_\_\_\_) Company occupies BP 3-1 in the vicinity of Phase Line Oak NLT (date/time) to block enemy forces on Route GREEN in order to prevent the enemy from counterattacking into the battalion sector.

### 3. EXECUTION

- a. *Concept of the Operation.* (See overlay.) (Developed by the trainer.)
- (1) **Maneuver.** (\_\_\_\_) Platoon destroys the lead element to cause the enemy to deploy. (\_\_\_\_) Platoon, main effort, destroys the enemy in EA (\_\_\_\_) to prevent the enemy from counterattacking into the battalion sector. (\_\_\_\_). Platoon blocks enemy forces attacking to envelop the main effort.
  - (2) **Fire support.** Priority of fire (your) Platoon. Your platoon has one 81-mm mortar priority target.
- b. *Tasks to Maneuver Units.*
- (1) (\_\_\_\_) Platoon, occupy BP (\_\_\_\_) NLT (\_\_\_\_). Establish an OP in the vicinity of (\_\_\_\_).
  - (2) (\_\_\_\_) Platoon, main effort, occupy BP (\_\_\_\_) NLT (\_\_\_\_). Establish an OP in the vicinity of (\_\_\_\_). Orient fires in EA (\_\_\_\_).
  - (3) (\_\_\_\_) Platoon, occupy BP (\_\_\_\_) NLT (\_\_\_\_). Construct a wire obstacle in the vicinity of (\_\_\_\_). Establish an OP in the vicinity of (\_\_\_\_).
- c. *Coordinating Instructions.*
- (1) Report all enemy contact.
  - (2) Report crossing all phase lines.
  - (3) MOPP status \_\_\_\_; enemy chemical attack is expected.

**Figure 4-5. Example of an extract from an OPORD for the STX.**

**OPERATION ORDER**

(4) Air defense status is YELLOW, WEAPONS HOLD.

(5) Additional information, as required.

4. **SERVICE AND SUPPORT**  
IAW the battalion SOP.

5. **COMMAND AND SIGNAL**

a. *Command.* Initially, company CP will be traveling center of company wedge.

b. *Signal.* Current SOI in effect.

**Figure 4-5. Example of an extract from an OPOD for the STX (continued).**

EVENT	ACTION	ESTIMATED TIME
1	Perform Passage of Lines	1.0 hr
2	Move Tactically	30 min
3	Perform Actions at Danger Areas	10 min
4	Cross Water Obstacle	30 min
5	React to Contact	15 min
6	Intermediate AAR	25 min
7	Execute Defense	6.0 hr
8	Conduct Final AAR	1.0 hr
*	Maintain Operations Security	

\*\* Total Time 9 hours 50 minutes

\* These tasks are integrated and evaluated throughout the exercise.

\*\* Additional time is required if great portions of the exercise are conducted . . . at night or during other limited visibility.

**Table 4-4. Sequence of events and time for STX.**

AMMUNITION	DODAC	BASIC LOAD	
5.56-mm 5.56-mm ATWESS cartridge Hand grenade, body, M69 Hand grenade fuze (practice) Simulator, projectile, ground burst M115A2 Simulator, hand grenade M116-series	130A080 1305A075 1370L367 1330G811 1330G878 1370L594 1370L601	150 rounds each rifle 200 rounds each M249 4 (Viper) (for LAW) 3 each Dragon 2 each rifleman 2 each rifleman 20 each exercise 20 each exercise	
<b>OTHER ITEMS</b> Batteries BA 3090 (9-volt)		288 each	
<b>MILES EQUIPMENT</b> M16 system Dragon/Javelin M249 SAW MILES transmitter Controller guns Small-arms alignment fixture	<b>PLATOON</b> 32 2 6	<b>EVALUATORS</b>   2 1	<b>OPFOR</b> 5 2

Table 4-5. Consolidated support requirements for STX.



5. **T&EO Sequence.** Table 4-6 lists the T&EOs, in chapter 5, used for evaluating this STX.

<b>TASK/FUNCTION</b>	<b>TASK NUMBER</b>	<b>PAGE</b>
Develop and Communicate a Plan	7-3/4-1605	5-227
Prepare for Combat	7-3/4-1606	5-237
Perform Passage of Lines	7-3/4-1125	5-88
Move Tactically	7-3/4-1134	5-71
Perform Actions at Danger Areas	7-3/4-1135	5-78
Cross Water Obstacles	7-3/4-1131	5-144
Execute Defense	7-3/4-1115	5-60
Maintain Operations Security	7-3/4-1409	5-193

**Table 4-6. T&EOs used in evaluating STX.**

## CHAPTER 5

## TRAINING AND EVALUATION OUTLINES

**5-1. GENERAL**

This chapter contains the training and evaluation outlines for infantry platoons and squads. T&EOs are the foundation of the MTP and the collective training of the platoon. T&EOs are training objectives (task, conditions, and standards) for the collective tasks that support platoon critical wartime operations. The platoon must master designated collective tasks to perform its critical wartime operations. T&EOs may be trained separately, in an STX, in an FTX, or in live-fire exercises. For collective live-fire standards, the trainer needs to refer to the applicable infantry gunnery manual for the appropriate course of fire. Those standards and courses of fire need to be integrated into the training exercise.

**TRAINING NOTE:** Leaders must instill situational awareness safety in all subordinate leaders and personnel. Personnel must be constantly alert for and avoid situations that may result in death or injury. For example, do not grab the hot barrel of a machine gun; always be aware of your buddies' location during live-fire exercises; double-check all mortar firing data.

**5-2. STRUCTURE**

Table 5-1 lists the T&EOs. They are grouped by BOSs to make it easier to locate a specific T&EO. The Operation-to-Collective Task Matrix in Chapter 2 lists the T&EOs required to train the critical wartime operations. Table 5-2 lists the friendly tasks and the opposing force counter tasks.

**5-3. FORMAT**

The T&EOs are prepared for every collective task that supports critical wartime operation accomplishment. Each T&EO contains the following items:

a. **Element.** The element identifies the unit that performs the task. The collective tasks apply to an infantry platoon and or squad as indicated in the T&EO heading. When conducting squad training, change the references from platoon to squad. The task steps and performance measures are the same, only the echelon at which they are executed (if a leader task) and or the number of personnel and equipment involved change.

b. **Task.** The task is a description of the work or action to be performed by the platoon or squad.

c. **Iteration.** The iteration is used for evaluation purposes. It is used to identify how many times the task is performed and evaluated during an exercise. This indicates if the platoon or squad improved during multiple performances during an exercise. The letter "M" indicates that the task can be performed in MOPP4. When the task is performed in MOPP4, the letter "M" is circled to represent the iteration.

d. **Training status.** The training status identifies the platoon's or squad's status according to the following ratings:

(1) *T - Trained.* The platoon or squad is trained. It has met the task standards and performance measures.

(2) *P - Needs practice.* The platoon or squad needs to practice the task. The overall task and critical performance measures were successfully performed, but one or more noncritical performance measures were unsuccessfully performed.

(3) *U - Untrained.* The platoon or squad failed to meet the overall task standards. The platoon or squad incorrectly performed, or failed to perform, one or more critical performance measures.

e. **Condition.** The condition is a statement of the situation or environment in which the platoon or squad is to do the collective task.

f. **Task standards.**

(1) The task standards state the performance criteria that a platoon or squad **must** achieve to successfully execute the task. This overall standard should be the focus of training. It should be understood by every soldier.

(2) The trainer or evaluator determines the platoon's or squad's training status using performance observation measurements (where applicable) and his judgment. The platoon or squad must be evaluated in the context of the METT-T conditions. These conditions should be as similar as possible for all evaluated elements. This establishes a common baseline for platoon performance.

g. **Task steps and performance measures.** This is a listing of actions that are required to complete the task. These actions are stated in terms of observable performance for evaluating training proficiency. The task steps are arranged sequentially. Leader tasks within each T&EO are indicated by an asterisk(\*); critical tasks are indicated by a plus (+).

h. **GO, NO-GO (column).** This column is provided for annotating the platoon's performance of the subtasks.

i. **Task performance summary block.** This block provides the trainer a means of recording the total number of task steps and performance measures evaluated and those evaluated as GO. It also provides the leader with a historical record for five training iterations.

j. **OPFOR standards.** These standards specify overall OPFOR performance for each collective task. These standards ensure that OPFOR personnel accomplish meaningful training and force the training platoon or squad to perform its task to standard or “lose” to the OPFOR. The OPFOR standards specify **what** must be accomplished—not **how** it must be accomplished. The OPFOR must always attain its task standards, using tactics consistent with the type of enemy they are portraying.

k. **OPFOR conditions.** These conditions are a statement of the situation or environment in which the unit is to do the collective task.

#### 5-4. USE

The T&EO is used individually to train a single task, or it is used in sequence with other T&EOs to train a combination of tasks or missions (FTX/STX), or a series of operations (higher echelon exercises or external evaluations).

a. **Flexibility.** Operations are not shown in the T&EOs. The mix of T&EOs needed to be trained varies by each platoon’s specific mission, conditions, commander’s training guidance, level of training proficiency, and the factors of METT-T. As a result, flexibility exists to select T&EOs, using the Operation-to-Collective Task Matrix in Chapter 2 and the operation outlines in Chapter 3 as guides.

b. **Standardization.** Once the T&EOs are selected, they must be executed to the standards prescribed. All infantry platoons should train and evaluate the same tasks the same way, so that standardization will result throughout the Army. Changes in conditions, such as the enemy situation, NBC conditions, and limited visibility, will change the mix of tasks used in training, but the T&EO standards remain the same for the task performed.

c. **Safety.** Leaders must identify and enforce all safety requirements.

BATTLEFIELD OPERATING SYSTEMS AND TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE NUMBER
<b>Maneuver</b>		
Execute Attack	7-3/4-1100	5-7
Execute Assault	7-3/4-1103	5-10
Perform Movement to Contact	7-3/4-1101	5-14
Perform Overwatch/Support by Fire	7-3/4-1108	5-18
Execute Disengagement	7-3/4-1122	5-23
Knock Out a Bunker	7-3/4-1113	5-27
Clear Trench Line	7-3/4-1114	5-32
Perform Raid	7-3-1102	5-38

**Table 5-1. Task list.**

<b>BATTLEFIELD OPERATING SYSTEMS AND TASK TITLE</b>	<b>TASK NUMBER</b>	<b>PAGE NUMBER</b>
<b>Maneuver</b>		
Perform Antiarmor Ambush	7-3/4-1143	5-44
Perform Hasty Ambush	7-3/4-1144	5-50
Perform Point Ambush	7-3/4-1145	5-54
Execute Defense	7-3/4-1115	5-60
Occupy Assembly Area	7-3/4-1136	5-67
Move Tactically	7-3/4-1134	5-71
Perform Actions at Danger Areas	7-3/4-1135	5-78
Perform Tactical Road March	7-3-1123	5-82
Perform Passage of Lines	7-3/4-1125	5-86
Clear a Building	7-3/4-1110	5-92
Defend MOUT/Building	7-3/4-1118	5-96
Perform Stay-Behind Operations	7-3/4-1116	5-102
Perform Linkup	7-3/4-1128	5-106
Perform Infiltration/Exfiltration	7-3/4-1137	5-110
Take Action on Contact	7-3/4-1107	5-114
Break Contact	7-3/4-1111	5-118
React to Ambush	7-3/4-1112	5-121
Perform Delay	7-3/4-1119	5-124
Perform Relief Operations	7-3/4-1124	5-128
Perform Airborne Assault	7-3/4-1127	5-133
Perform Operations With Armored Vehicles	7-3/4-1140	5-137
Perform Air Assault	7-3/4-1126	5-140
Cross Water Obstacles	7-3/4-1131	5-144
<b>Fire Support</b>		
Employ Fire Support	7-3-1200	5-148
<b>Intelligence</b>		
Reconnoiter Zone	7-3-1004	5-153
Reconnoiter Area	7-3/4-1003	5-157
Reconnoiter Route	7-3-1005	5-161
Perform Surveillance From an Observation Post	7-3/4-1008	5-165
Perform a Screen	7-3-1006	5-169
<b>Mobility And Survivability</b>		
Breach an Obstacle	7-3/4-1402	5-172
Perform Waterborne Operations	7-3/4-1408	5-175
Perform NBC Operations	7-3/4-1406	5-179

**Table 5-1. Task list (continued).**

BATTLEFIELD OPERATING SYSTEMS AND TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE NUMBER
<b>Mobility And Survivability</b>		
Construct an Obstacle	7-3-1404	5-189
Maintain Operations Security	7-3/4-1409	5-193
Establish a Roadblock/Checkpoint	7-3/4-1401	5-198
Conduct Initial Breach of a Mined Wire Obstacle	7-3/4-1403	5-203
<b>Air Defense</b>		
Defend Against Air Attack	7-3/4-1301	5-209
<b>Combat Service Support</b>		
Perform Combat Service Support Operations	7-3/4-1501	5-212
Process Enemy Prisoners of War/Captured Materiel	7-3/4-1503	5-220
Treat and Evacuate Casualties	7-3/4-1504	5-223
<b>Command And Control</b>		
Develop and Communicate a Plan	7-3/4-1605	5-227
Prepare for Combat	7-3/4-1606	5-237
Perform Consolidation and Reorganization	7-3/4-1607	5-242

Table 5-1. Task list (continued).

FRIENDLY TASKS	OPFOR TASKS
Execute Attack	Defend
Execute Assault	Defend
Perform Movement to Contact	Engage on Contact
Perform Overwatch/Support by Fire	Suppress Fire
Execute Disengagement	Engage
Knock Out a Bunker	Defend Bunker
Clear Trench Line	Defend Trench Line
Perform Raid	Counter Raid
Perform Antiarmor Ambush	Counter Antiarmor Ambush
Perform Hasty Ambush	Counter Hasty Ambush
Perform Point Ambush	Counter Point Ambush
Execute Defense	Attack
Occupy Assembly Area	Disrupt Assembly Area Activities
Move Tactically	Engage Moving Unit
Perform Actions at Danger Areas	Defend Danger Area
Perform Tactical Road March	Engage Moving Unit

Table 5-2. Friendly-to-OPFOR task.

FRIENDLY TASKS	OPFOR TASKS
Perform Passage of Lines	Counter Passage of Lines
Clear a Building	Defend Building
Defend MOUT/Building	Attack (MOUT)
Perform Stay-Behind Operation	Perform Rear Area Operations
Perform Linkup	Counter Linkup
Perform Infiltration/Exfiltration	Counter Infiltration/Exfiltration
Take Action on Contact	Engage Platoon
Break Contact	Maintain Contact
React to Ambush	Conduct Ambush
Perform Delay	Attack
Perform Relief Operations	Disrupt Relief
Perform Airborne Assault	Counter Airborne Assault
Perform Operations With Armored Vehicles	Disrupt Armored Movement
Perform Air Assault	Counter Air Assault
Cross Water Obstacles	Defend Water Obstacle
Employ Fire Support	Employ Deception Measures
Reconnoiter Zone	Counter Zone Reconnaissance
Reconnoiter Area	Counter Area Reconnaissance
Reconnoiter Route	Counter Route Reconnaissance
Perform Surveillance From an Observation Post	Maintain Operations Security
Perform a Screen	Counter Screen
Breach an Obstacle	Defend Obstacle
Perform Waterborne Operations	Disrupt Waterborne Operations
Perform NBC Operations	Employ NBC Weapons
Construct an Obstacle	Defeat Obstacle
Maintain Operations Security	Gather Intelligence
Establish a Roadblock/Checkpoint	Defeat a Roadblock/Checkpoint
Conduct Initial Breach of a Mined Wire Obstacle	Defend Obstacle
Defend Against Air Attack	Perform Air Attack
Perform Combat Service Support Operations	Disrupt Combat Service Support Operations
Process Enemy Prisoners of War/Captured Materiel	Resist Capture
Treat and Evacuate Casualties	Counterattack
Develop and Communicate a Plan	Counter Combat Preparations
Prepare for Combat	Counter Combat Preparations
Perform Consolidation and Reorganization	Counterattack

**Table 5-2. Friendly-to-OPFOR task (continued).**

**ELEMENT: PLATOON/SQUAD**

**TASK: EXECUTE ATTACK (7-3/4-1100) (FM 7-8, FM 7-7J)**

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

TRAINING STATUS T P U (circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is operating separately and has been ordered to attack to seize an objective. The enemy has been in position for 24 hours and has prepared positions with mines and wire. Both friendly and enemy forces have indirect fire capabilities. The platoon is given sufficient time to plan. Some iterations should be performed in MOPP4. Civilians, government organizations, nongovernmental organizations (NGOs), private voluntary organizations (PVOs), and the international press are present on the battlefield. The US forces are operating under a restrictive ROE.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon main body is not surprised or fixed by the enemy. The platoon accomplishes its assigned task within the commander's intent. The platoon kills, captures, or forces the withdrawal of the enemy. The platoon accomplishes the mission NLT the time specified in the OPORD. The platoon maintains a sufficient fighting force capable of defeating an enemy counterattack and continuing further combat operations. The US forces comply with the ROE. Collateral damage is limited.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

- \*1. The platoon leader receives, plans, and issues the OPORD IAW T&EO 7-3/4-1605, Develop and Communicate a Plan.
- \*2. The platoon leader organizes the platoon to conduct the attack.
  - a. Designates a base-of-fire element (IAW T&EO 7-3/4-1108, Perform Overwatch/Support by Fire).
  - b. Designates an assault element based on the enemy situation, consisting of one, two, or all squads (dependent on the platoon acting alone or as a part of a company attack).
  - c. Designates a breach force if necessary.
  - d. Designates movement and fire control measures.
- 3. The platoon prepares for the attack.
  - a. Conducts precombat checks IAW T&EO 7-3/4-1606, Prepare for Combat.
  - b. Conducts rehearsals.

GO	NO-GO



**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

- 4. The platoon moves from the assembly area to the LD.
    - a. Moves without stopping in the attack position, if possible.
    - b. Fixes bayonets, if directed.
    - c. Deploys into attack formation.
    - d. Crosses at the right place and on time.
  - 5. The platoon moves from the LD to the assault or support position.
    - a. Moves using the appropriate techniques (IAW T&EO 7-3/4-1134, Move Tactically).
    - b. Uses a covered and concealed route.
    - c. Moves the assault and base-of-fire elements to their respective positions without being compromised.
  - 6. The platoon moves through the assault position and assaults.
    - a. Deploys into the assault formation.
    - b. Breaches IAW T&EO 7-3/4-1403, Conduct Initial Breach of a Mined Wire Obstacle.
    - c. Assaults IAW T&EO 7-3/4-1103, Execute Assault.
  - 7. The platoon performs consolidation and reorganization IAW T&EO 7-3/4-1607, Perform Consolidation and Reorganization.
  - 8. The platoon reports to the company commander when the objective has been secured.
  - 9. The platoon repels the enemy counterattack.
- \*A leader task step.

--	--

**TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK**

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							

---

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

See Appendix A for task numbers and titles that correlate to the numbers listed below by type task and skill level.

**Common Tasks**

## Skill Level 1

20, 21, 22, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 31, 33, 36, 37, 38, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 47, 48, 49, 50, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 64, 65, 66, 67, 68, 71, 72, 73, 93, 95, 97

## Skill Level 2

6, 7, 8, 9, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25

## Skill Level 3

12

## Skill Level 4

NONE

**MOS 11B Tasks**

## Skill Level 1

6, 9, 14, 17, 21, 25, 26, 36, 37, 38, 39, 41, 42, 43, 44, 48

## Skill Level 2

1, 2, 7, 8, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19

## Skill Level 3

2, 3, 4, 5

## Skill Level 4

4, 8, 9, 10

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS****TASK: DEFEND**

**CONDITIONS:** The OPFOR squad is operating separately or as part of a platoon. The squad has prepared and occupied fighting positions IAW threat doctrine. The squad is supported by indirect fire and CAS.

**STANDARDS:**

1. The OPFOR completes all defensive preparations directed by the leader NLT the time specified in the order (leader evaluated).
2. The OPFOR main body is not surprised by the platoon.
3. The OPFOR is not fixed by the platoon.
4. The OPFOR repels the attack and forces the platoon to withdraw.

**ELEMENT:** PLATOON/SQUAD

**TASK:** EXECUTE ASSAULT (7-3/4-1103) (FM 7-8, FM 7-7, FM 7-7J)

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

TRAINING STATUS T P U (circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is operating separately or as part of the company. The platoon is directed to attack an enemy that has occupied defensive positions or is moving. Both friendly and enemy forces have indirect fire and CAS capabilities. Plans, preparation, and movement to the objective have been accomplished. The assault element is in the assault position. A base-of-fire element is positioned to support the assault. Some iterations should be performed in MOPP4. Civilians, government organizations, NGOs, PVOs, and the international press are present on the battlefield. The US forces are operating under a restrictive ROE.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon main body is not surprised or fixed by the enemy. The platoon accomplishes its assigned task within the commander's intent. The platoon kills, captures, or forces the withdrawal of the enemy. The platoon maintains a sufficient fighting force to defeat an enemy counterattack and continues further combat operations. The US forces comply with the ROE. Collateral damage is limited.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES** GO NO-GO

<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The platoon prepares for the assault.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Makes final checks of weapons and equipment.</li> <li>b. Establishes sectors of fire and attempts to locate all enemy positions.</li> <li>c. (Squad leader) Reports to the platoon leader when the platoon is ready for the assault to begin.</li> <li>d. (Platoon leader) Reports to the company commander when ready for the assault to begin.</li> </ol> </li> <li>*2. The platoon leader updates his estimate of the situation, issues a FRAGO if required, and collects and reports tactical information on the enemy situation to the company commander.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determines how the objective will be defended by his platoon after the assault.</li> <li>b. Selects the best route to assault into enemy flanks, if possible.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Confirms the support element's location and direction of fire.</p> <p>d. Reports the tactical situation to the company commander.</p> <p>e. Orders the assault on receipt of order from the company commander.</p> <p>3. The support element initiates fires on the objective.</p> <p>a. Delivers continuous, well-aimed fire with enough volume to suppress the enemy and to prevent the assault element from being fixed.</p> <p>b. Calls for and adjusts indirect fires as required.</p> <p>c. Shifts or lifts fires on order or at the predetermined signal.</p> <p>4. The assault element under the platoon leader's control conducts the assault.</p> <p>a. Uses smoke (if available) to cover its movement.</p> <p>b. Moves without masking the support element's suppressive fires.</p> <p>c. Calls for preparatory smoke or indirect fire (if available) on the objective before assault.</p> <p>d. Signals lift or shift of suppressive fires (the signal to lift or shift fires in accordance with the SOP or as specified in the order).</p> <p>e. Delivers sustained, accurate fire while assaulting the objective.</p> <p>f. Takes advantage of cover and concealment, using three-second to five-second rushes, as they move across the objective.</p> <p>g. Fights through the objective, but halts on the predesignated LOA.</p> <p>h. Penetrates enemy defenses least protected by the enemy in a narrow sector if a flank is not open. Then, overcomes the remaining defenses or resistance from the flanks or rear.</p> <p>i. Clears and secures the objective.</p> <p>5. The support element moves to the objective on order of the platoon leader.</p>		

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

**GO NO-GO**

- a. Occupies defensive positions according to OPORD or SOP and prepares for enemy counterattack.
  - b. Reports to the platoon leader when in position.
6. The platoon consolidates and reorganizes.  
(See T&EO 7-3/4-1607, Perform Consolidation and Reorganization.)
- \*A leader task step.

--	--

**TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK**

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

See Appendix A for task numbers and titles that correlate to the numbers listed below by STP and skill level.

**Common Tasks**

Skill Level 1

20, 21, 22, 24, 25, 36, 37, 38, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 47, 48, 49, 50, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 64, 65, 66, 67, 68, 71, 72, 73, 93, 94, 95, 96, 97

Skill Level 2

6, 8, 9, 25, 26

Skill Level 3

12

Skill Level 4

4

**MOS 11B Tasks**

Skill Level 1

6, 9, 14, 21, 26, 38, 41, 42, 43, 44, 48

Skill Level 2

7, 8, 14, 15, 16, 19

Skill Level 3

4

Skill Level 4

4, 9, 10

### **OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

#### **TASK: DEFEND**

**CONDITIONS:** The OPFOR squad is operating separately or as part of a platoon. The squad has prepared and occupied fighting positions IAW threat doctrine. The squad is supported by indirect fire and CAS.

#### **STANDARDS:**

1. The OPFOR is prepared to defend NLT the time specified in the order.
2. The OPFOR main body is not surprised by the platoon.
3. The OPFOR decisively engages and fixes the platoon.
4. The OPFOR accomplishes its assigned task.
5. The OPFOR sustains no more than 30 percent casualties.

**ELEMENT:** PLATOON/SQUAD

**TASK:** PERFORM MOVEMENT TO CONTACT (7-3/4-1101)(FM 7-8)

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

TRAINING STATUS T P U (circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is operating separately or as a part of the company and is ordered to conduct a movement to contact. Contact with the enemy has been broken. The enemy has withdrawn, is being reinforced, and is preparing to counterattack. (This can be an insurgency or counter insurgency environment.) The enemy has indirect fire capabilities. Some iterations should be performed in MOPP4. Civilians, government organizations, NGOs, PVOs, and the international press are present on the battlefield. The US forces are operating under a restrictive ROE.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon moves NLT the time specified in the order. The platoon makes contact with only one element and the main body is not surprised by the enemy. Once the platoon makes contact, it maintains contact. The platoon destroys squad and smaller sized elements and fixes units larger than a squad. The platoon maintains a sufficient fighting force capable of conducting further combat operations. The US forces comply with the ROE. Collateral damage is limited.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

**GO NO-GO**

- \*1. The platoon leader plans the movement to contact.
  - a. Plans IAW T&EO 7-3/4-1605, Develop and Communicate a Plan.
  - b. (If not directed by the company) Determines which technique to use for conducting the movement to contact.
    - Search-and-attack technique.
    - Approach-march technique.
  - c. Considers METT-T when determining the method.
  - d. Addresses PIR requirements.
- \*2. The platoon leader supervises preparations for the mission.
  - a. Prepares IAW T&EO 7-3/4-1606, Prepare for Combat.
  - b. Coordinates the plan with adjacent units.
  - c. Maintains security IAW T&EO 7-3/4-1409, Maintain Operations Security.

GO	NO-GO

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Reconnoiters and posts guides along the route to the LD, if authorized in the OPORD.</p> <p>3. The platoon crosses the LD on time and begins the movement to contact.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Initiates movement on the platoon leader's order.</li> <li>b. Moves in the formation designated in the order.</li> <li>c. Moves IAW T&amp;EO 7-3/4-1134, Move Tactically.</li> </ol> <p>*4. The platoon leader directs the platoon to use the search-and-attack technique.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Uses multiple, coordinated, small-unit (squad/team) to find, fix, or finish the enemy.</li> <li>b. Determines the number and size of the areas that units will be operating in. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Assigns small areas of operation that keep the squads more concentrated and help maintain control.</li> <li>• Divides the platoon area into zones and focuses on one zone at a time while conducting economy-of-force missions in other zones.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Locates the enemy without being detected.</li> <li>d. Once engaged, fixes the enemy in position and maneuvers against the enemy.</li> <li>e. Maintains security throughout actions.</li> </ol> <p>*5. The platoon leader directs the platoon to use the approach-march technique.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selects the movement technique and formation based on the likelihood of enemy contact.</li> <li>b. Maintains contact, once contact is made, until ordered to do otherwise.</li> </ol> <p>6. The platoon reacts to contact.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reacts IAW T&amp;EO 7-3/4-1107, Take Action on Contact.</li> <li>b. Follows the directions of higher headquarters.</li> </ol> <p>*7. The platoon leader reorganizes the platoon as necessary.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reorganizes IAW T&amp;EO 7-3/4-1607, Perform Consolidation and Reorganization.</li> </ol>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Reports the situation to the company.		
c. Continues the mission.		
*A leader task step.		

**TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK**

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

See Appendix A for task numbers and titles that correlate to the numbers listed below by STP and skill level.

**Common Tasks**

Skill Level 1

20, 21, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 31, 33, 36, 37, 38, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 47, 48, 49, 50, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 64, 65, 66, 67, 68, 71, 72, 73, 93, 94, 95, 96, 97

Skill Level 2

6, 7, 8, 9, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 25

Skill Level 3

12

Skill Level 4

4

**STP 7-11BCHM14**

Skill Level 1

14, 17, 21, 26, 38, 41, 42, 43, 44, 46, 48

Skill Level 2

1, 2, 7, 8, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19

Skill Level 3

2, 3, 4, 5

Skill Level 4  
4, 8, 9, 10

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK: ENGAGE ON CONTACT**

**CONDITIONS:** The squad is operating separately or as part of a platoon. The squad moves IAW threat doctrine and is supported by indirect fire.

**STANDARDS:**

1. The OPFOR detects the platoon first.
2. The OPFOR disengages from the platoon on order.
3. The OPFOR forces the withdrawal of the platoon.

**ELEMENT: PLATOON/SQUAD**

**TASK: PERFORM OVERWATCH/SUPPORT BY FIRE**  
 (7-3/4-1108) (FM 7-8)

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

TRAINING STATUS T P U (circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is overwatching or supporting by fire the movement of another platoon or element during movement or an assault on an enemy unit. The platoon has indirect fire available. The primary direction of fire and tentative support position have been designated to the overwatch/support by fire platoon. Some iterations should be performed in MOPP4. Civilians, government organizations, NGOs, PVOs, and the international press are present on the battlefield. The US forces are operating under a restrictive ROE.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon prevents the enemy from surprising the overwatched element. The platoon delivers suppressive fires to prevent enemy direct fires from fixing the movement element. The platoon occupies the support position within the time set in the OPORD. The US forces comply with the ROE. Collateral damage is limited.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

- |   |  |  |  |
|---|--|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>*1. The platoon leader, platoon sergeant, or designated squad leader reconnoiters the tentative support position and the routes to it.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Establishes local security.</li> <li>b. Ensures the position provides observation of the objective and overwatch of the assault element.</li> <li>c. Ensures the support position enables the support element to place suppressive fire on the objective.</li> <li>d. Addresses the contingency plan if the position is controlled by the enemy.</li> </ul> </li> <li>2. The platoon moves by a covered and concealed route to the support position. (See T&amp;EO 7-3/4-1134, Move Tactically.)</li> <li>*3. The platoon leader supervises the occupation and preparation of the support position.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assigns covered and concealed positions, sectors of fire, and other fire control measures (TRP, FPL, PDF)—</li> </ul> </li> </ul> | <table border="1"> <tr> <td style="width: 50px; height: 100px;"></td> <td style="width: 50px; height: 100px;"></td> </tr> </table> |  |  |
|   |  |  |  |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To squad leaders so that each element leader can designate individual positions and designate sectors of fire.</li> <li>• To all crew-served weapons.</li> </ul> <p>b. Identifies enemy positions.</p> <p>c. Orients weapons on enemy positions.</p> <p>d. Marks targets with illumination when appropriate.</p> <p>e. Determines engagement criteria for all weapons.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• M60s/M249s engage the dismounted enemy.</li> <li>• M203s engage lightly armored vehicles and dismounted enemy.</li> <li>• Dragons (Javelins), AT4s, and LAWs engage armored vehicles and tanks.</li> </ul> <p>+4. The support element overwatches the assault element's movement.</p> <p>a. Maintains continuous communications with and observation of the assault element, its route, and any terrain that can influence the route.</p> <p>b. Does not block the movement element's route by fire.</p> <p>c. Alerts the assault element and commander of any detected enemy.</p> <p>+5. The platoon or squad suppresses the objective with direct or indirect fire.</p> <p>a. Engages or reports targets IAW the SOP or OPORD. The SOP should specify priority of weapons employment (M203, M16, M249, M60) for different conditions (day or night). Some weapons may be strictly controlled by command (M60s/M249s).</p> <p>b. Fires only in assigned sectors of fire unless ordered by the leader to do otherwise.</p> <p>c. Uses M60s/M249s and grenades to engage automatic weapons anywhere within the platoon's sector (controlled by the leader).</p> <p>*6. The squad/team leaders control fires onto the objective using tracer, voice commands, whistle, and visual cards.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Ensure M60s/M249s work together; reloading and firing is staggered so that there are no lulls in firing.</p> <p>b. Direct individuals within buddy teams to not reload at the same time.</p> <p>c. Direct concentrated fires against identified weapon positions.</p> <p>d. Shift fire within the objective area, as needed, to engage additional targets that appear.</p> <p>e. Move individuals and weapons where they can be most effective as the situation changes.</p> <p>f. Report the situation throughout the engagement to a higher CP.</p> <p>g. Hold fires when no individual positions have been identified to conserve ammunition until a target is observed.</p> <p>h. Reduce the volume of fire when enemy fires become ineffective.</p> <p>+7. The platoon lifts or shifts fire on signal or when the assault begins (based on the SOP).</p> <p>a. Lifts fires but continues to observe the assigned sector and is prepared to engage any threat to the movement element.</p> <p>b. Shifts fires to another target.</p> <p>c. Walks its fires across the objective in front of the movement element.</p> <p>*8. The platoon leader orders the platoon to cease fire. Orders the cease fire after the movement element is on the objective or when all enemy are destroyed or withdrawn from the engagement area.</p> <p>9. The platoon moves to the objective, on order.</p> <p>10. The platoon occupies positions IAW the OPORD.</p> <p>11. Continues the mission.</p> <p>*A leader task step. +A critical task step.</p>		

**TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK**

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

See Appendix A for task numbers and titles that correlate to the numbers listed below by STP and skill level.

**Common Tasks**

## Skill Level 1

20, 21, 24, 25, 36, 37, 38, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 47, 48, 49, 50, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 64, 65, 66, 67, 68, 71, 72, 73, 93, 94, 95, 97

## Skill Level 2

7, 8, 9, 14, 15, 25, 26

## Skill Level 3

10, 12

## Skill Level 4

4

**MOS 11B Tasks**

## Skill Level 1

14, 17, 21, 26, 28, 29, 30, 31, 32, 38, 41, 42, 43, 44, 48

## Skill Level 2

1, 2, 8, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19

## Skill Level 3

1, 2, 3, 4, 5

## Skill Level 4

4, 8, 9, 10

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS****TASK: SUPPRESS FIRE**

**CONDITIONS:** The squad is operating separately or as part of a platoon. The squad is moving and receives enemy fires; or, the squad is occupying a defensive position and receives enemy fires and becomes untenable. The squad is operating IAW threat doctrine. Indirect fire is available.

**STANDARDS:**

1. The OPFOR fixes the movement element.
2. The OPFOR maintains freedom of maneuver.
3. The OPFOR suppresses the support element.

**ELEMENT: PLATOON/SQUAD**

**TASK: EXECUTE DISENGAGEMENT (7-3/4-1122) (FM 7-8)**

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

TRAINING STATUS T P U (circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is operating separately or as part of a company. The platoon is moving and receives enemy fires; or, the platoon is occupying defensive positions that have become untenable. The platoon is ordered to disengage. Both friendly and enemy elements have indirect fire capabilities. Some iterations should be performed in MOPP4. Civilians, government organizations, NGOs, PVOs, and the international press are present on the battlefield. The US forces are operating under a restrictive ROE.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon breaks contact and is not bypassed by the enemy. The platoon moves to where the enemy can neither observe nor place direct fire on it. The platoon continues follow-on operations. The US forces comply with the ROE. Collateral damage is limited.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. The platoon leader directs the platoon to disengage while moving.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Breaks contact IAW ARTEP 7-8-DRILL, Battle Drill 3, Break Contact.</li> <li>b. Orders a direction and a distance to move (“nine o’clock, three hundred meters”).</li> </ul> <p>2. The platoon follows the instructions of their leaders.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selects routes that provide cover and concealment.</li> <li>b. Moves for the distance and in the direction ordered.</li> <li>c. Evacuates casualties.</li> </ul> <p>3. The platoon moves to a rally point.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moves to the last designated en route rally point, unless directed otherwise.</li> <li>b. (Designated leader) Accounts for personnel and reorganizes, as required at the rally point.</li> <li>c. (Leader) Prepares the elements to continue the mission.</li> </ul> <p>*4. The platoon leader receives the order to disengage while in a defensive position.</p>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Makes an estimate of the situation and prepares a contingency plan to break contact or withdraw.</p> <p>b. Issues a WO and or FRAGO.</p> <p>c. Ensures leaders brief the platoon members on the withdrawal signals.</p> <p>d. Designates covered and concealed routes to the rally point.</p> <p>e. Directs the squads to walk the routes during daylight and during limited visibility, as the time and the situation permits.</p> <p>f. Indicates the method of withdrawal based on enemy pressure.</p> <p>g. Gives the signal to withdraw.</p> <p>h. Uses fire to disengage (smoke, indirect fire).</p> <p>5. The platoon disengages gradually by thinning of lines (used when enemy pressure is close and heavy).</p> <p>a. (Selected personnel) Disengage and move to the rear and assume overwatch positions.</p> <p>b. (Remaining personnel in position) Increase the rate of fire to keep the enemy from overrunning the position.</p> <p>c. (Remaining personnel) Withdraw to overwatch positions when the first group is in an overwatch position.</p> <p>d. (M249s) Move either first, last, or by rearward displacement by bounds (whichever provides best fire support for the movement), given the amount of enemy pressure and terrain.</p> <p>e. (Dragons) Move first because of the 65-meter minimum arming distance. (The final decision is based on the armor threat.)</p> <p>f. (Squad leaders) Move with the last element to withdraw.</p> <p>g. Employ smoke to provide concealment when personnel are moving in the open.</p> <p>h. Repeat this method of fire and movement to the rear, as necessary, until the entire platoon is disengaged.</p> <p>6. The platoon disengages by fire teams (when enemy pressure is so light thinning the lines is not necessary).</p> <p>a. Engages the enemy with a high volume of fire using the designated fire teams.</p>		

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

- b. Moves to the rear and assumes an overwatch position using the remaining fire teams.
  - c. Uses covered and concealed routes, if available.
  - d. Repeats this method of fire and movement to the rear, as necessary, until the platoon has broken contact.
7. The platoon disengages by squads (when enemy pressure is so light that disengaging by fire teams is not required).
- a. Engages the enemy with a high volume of fire using the designated squad.
  - b. Moves to the rear and assumes an overwatch position using the remaining squads IAW T&EO 7-3/4-1108, Perform Overwatch/Support by Fire.
  - c. Repeats this method of fire and movement to the rear, as necessary, until the entire platoon is disengaged.
8. The platoon continues the withdrawal until enemy contact is broken.
9. Upon completing disengagement, the platoon occupies a rally point or assembly area. The platoon leader—
- a. Consolidates and reorganizes, as needed, IAW T&EO 7-3/4-1607, Perform Consolidation and Reorganization.
  - b. Reports the status to the company commander.
  - c. Prepares to continue the mission.
- \*A leader task step.

--	--

**TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK**

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							

### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

See Appendix A for task numbers and titles that correlate to the numbers listed below by STP and skill level.

#### Common Tasks

##### Skill Level 1

20, 21, 24, 25, 36, 37, 38, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 47, 48, 49, 50, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 64, 65, 66, 67, 68, 71, 72, 73, 93, 95, 96, 97

##### Skill Level 2

7, 8, 9, 14, 14, 25, 26

##### Skill Level 3

12

##### Skill Level 4

4

#### MOS 11B Tasks

##### Skill Level 1

14, 21, 26, 28, 29, 30, 31, 32, 38, 41, 42, 43, 44, 48

##### Skill Level 2

1, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19

##### Skill Level 3

1, 2, 3, 4, 5

##### Skill Level 4

4, 8, 9, 10

### OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

#### TASK: ENGAGE

**CONDITIONS:** The squad is attacking as part of a larger force and identifies the enemy position. The squad engages the enemy with fire and maneuver. The squad has indirect fire available.

#### STANDARDS:

1. The OPFOR maintains contact.
2. The OPFOR decisively engages the platoon.
3. The OPFOR renders the friendly element combat ineffective.

**ELEMENT: PLATOON/SQUAD**

**TASK: KNOCK OUT A BUNKER (7-3/4-1113) (FM 7-8)**

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

TRAINING STATUS T P U (circle)

**CONDITIONS:** While moving as a part of a larger force, the platoon identifies the enemy in the bunkers. The platoon is ordered to secure and clear a portion of the bunker complex. The platoon and enemy elements have indirect fire available. Some iterations should be performed in MOPP4. Civilians, government organizations, NGOs, PVOs, and the international press are present on the battlefield. The US forces are operating under a restrictive ROE.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon destroys the designated bunker by killing, capturing, or forcing the withdrawal of the enemy in the bunker. The platoon continues follow-on operations. The US forces comply with the ROE. Collateral damage is limited.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES** GO NO-GO

<p>1. If engaged, the platoon reacts IAW T&amp;EO 7-3/4-1107, Take Action on Contact.</p> <p>a. Establishes a base of fire with the squad in contact.</p> <p>b. (The platoon leader, RATELO, platoon FO, and one machine gun team) Move forward to link up with the squad leader of the lead squad in contact.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use a covered and concealed route.</li> <li>• Direct the platoon sergeant to move forward with the second machine gun team and assume control of the base-of-fire element.</li> <li>• Direct the FO to call for and adjust indirect fires on the enemy position.</li> </ul> <p>*2. If not engaged, the platoon leader makes an estimate of the situation to determine where he can maneuver.</p> <p>a. Identifies enemy bunkers, other supporting positions, and any obstacles.</p> <p>b. Determines the size of the enemy force (the number of enemy automatic weapons, the presence of any vehicles, and the employment of indirect fires are indicators of enemy strength).</p> <p>c. Identifies a vulnerable flank of at least one bunker.</p>		
--	--	--

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Identifies a covered and concealed route to the flank of that bunker.</p> <p>*3. The platoon leader determines which bunker is to be assaulted first.</p> <p>a. Directs one squad not in contact to knock out the bunker using LAWs or AT4s.</p> <p>b. Instructs the platoon sergeant to reposition the base-of-fire element to isolate the bunker and continue suppressive fires.</p> <p>c. Accompanies the assault squad.</p> <p>4. The base-of-fire element under the platoon sergeant's control begins to suppress the enemy.</p> <p>a. Destroys or suppresses enemy crew-served weapons first.</p> <p>b. Obscures the enemy position with smoke (M203).</p> <p>c. Sustains suppressive fires.</p> <p>d. Shifts indirect fire as the platoon continues.</p> <p>*+5. The assault squad leader leads the assault squad against the bunker.</p> <p>a. Moves along the covered and concealed route.</p> <p>b. Approaches the bunker from its blind side and does not mask the fires of the base-of-fire element.</p> <p>c. Constantly watches for other bunkers or enemy positions in support of it.</p> <p>d. Conducts the assault upon reaching the last covered and concealed position.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Directs the fire team leader and the automatic rifleman to remain in place and add their fires to suppress the bunker (includes the use of AT4s/LAWs).</li> <li>• The squad leader positions himself where he can best control his teams. On the squad leader's signal, the base-of-fire element lifts fire or shifts fires to the opposite side of the bunker from the assaulting fire team's approach.</li> <li>• The grenadier and the rifleman continue forward to the blind side of the bunker. One soldier takes up a covered position near the exit, while the other</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>soldier cooks off (two seconds) a grenade and throws it through an aperture.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• After the grenade detonates, the soldier covering the exit enters the bunker, firing short bursts, to destroy the enemy. (The soldier who throws the grenade should not be the first one to clear the bunker.)</li> <li>• The squad leader inspects the bunker to ensure that it has been destroyed and marked. He reports, reorganizes as needed, and continues the mission.</li> </ul> <p>6. The platoon follows the success of the attack against the bunker.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Continues the attack of other bunkers as directed by the platoon leader (repeat steps 5 through 6).</li> <li>b. Shifts indirect fires as the platoon continues.</li> </ol> <p>*7. The platoon leader directs the platoon sergeant to reposition the base-of-fire element.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Continues to isolate and suppress the remaining bunkers.</li> <li>b. Maintains suppressive fires.</li> </ol> <p>*8. The platoon leader reorganizes the platoon to maintain the momentum of the attack.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Redesignates one of the base-of-fire squads to move up and knock out the next bunker.</li> </ol> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>OR</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Directs the assaulting squad to continue and knock out the next bunker.</li> </ol> <p>NOTE: The platoon leader must consider the condition of the assaulting squad (ammunition and exhaustion) and rotate squads as necessary.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c. Ensures the assaulting squad follows the same procedures listed above when knocking out the next bunker.</li> </ol> <p>*9. The platoon leader directs the actions of the platoon once it has cleared its assigned portion of the bunker complex.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reports to the company commander.</li> </ol>		

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
b. Reorganizes as necessary IAW T&EO, 7-3/4-1607, Perform Consolidation and Reorganization. c. Passes another platoon from the company through to continue the attack as required. d. Prepares to continue the mission.  *A leader task step. +A critical task step.		

**TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK**

<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
<b>TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED</b>							
<b>TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"</b>							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

See Appendix A for task numbers and titles that correlate to the numbers listed below by STP and skill level.

**Common Tasks**

Skill Level 1

20, 21, 24, 25, 36, 37, 38, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 47, 48, 49, 50, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 64, 65, 66, 67, 68, 71, 72, 73, 93, 95, 97

Skill Level 2

6, 7, 8, 9, 25

Skill Level 3

12

Skill Level 4

4

**MOS 11B Tasks**

Skill Level 1

14, 17, 21, 26, 38, 41, 42, 43, 44, 48

Skill Level 2

1, 2, 8, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19

Skill Level 3

2, 3, 4, 5

Skill Level 4

4, 9, 10

### **OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

#### **TASK: DEFEND BUNKER**

**CONDITIONS:** The squad is ordered to occupy, prepare, and defend a bunker as part of a larger force or as a separate unit. The squad has indirect fire support available.

#### **STANDARDS:**

1. The OPFOR prevents the platoon from detecting the bunker.
2. The OPFOR inflicts more than 20 percent casualties.
3. The OPFOR prevents the platoon from destroying the bunker(s).



**ELEMENT: PLATOON/SQUAD**

**TASK: CLEAR TRENCH LINE (7-3/4-1114) (FM 7-8)**

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

TRAINING STATUS T P U (circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is attacking as part of a larger force and identifies enemy in a trench line. The platoon leader determines that he has sufficient combat power to maneuver and assault the trench line. Some iterations should be performed in MOPP4. Civilians, government organizations, NGOs, PVOs, and the international press are present on the battlefield. The US forces are operating under a restrictive ROE.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon kills, captures, or forces the withdrawal of the enemy in its assigned section of the trench. The platoon main body is not surprised by an enemy counterattack. The platoon maintains a sufficient force capable of defeating an enemy counterattack and conducting further combat operations. The US forces comply with the ROE. Collateral damage is limited.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

<p>*1. The platoon leader organizes the platoon to clear the trench line.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Designates an assault element and a support element.</li> <li>b. Designates the assault squad to enter the trench and secure a foothold.</li> <li>c. Designates the entry point of the trench line and the direction of movement once the platoon begins clearing.</li> <li>d. Informs the platoon sergeant to position the support element (personnel and machine guns) to suppress the trench and isolate the entry point.</li> <li>e. Calls for artillery and smoke.</li> </ul> <p>*2. The assault element leader organizes the assault element into a series of two-man or three-man clearing teams (firer, grenade thrower, security).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Directs one fire team to assault and one fire team to support by fire initially, then follow and support the assaulting fire team.</li> <li>b. Designates the entry point of the trench line.</li> </ul>		
--	--	--

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*3. The assault squad leader orders the assault squad to conduct the assault.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moves the assault team to the last covered and concealed position short of the entry point.</li> <li>b. Marks the entry point.</li> <li>c. Directs the base-of-fire element to shift fires away from the entry point and continue to suppress adjacent enemy positions or isolate the trench as required.</li> <li>d. Positions himself where he can best control his teams.</li> <li>e. Signals the assault team to enter the trench. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The assault team leader and the automatic rifleman remain in a position short of the trench to add suppressive fires for the initial entry.</li> <li>• The two remaining personnel of the assault fire team (rifleman and grenadier) continue toward the entry point. They move in rushes or by crawling.</li> <li>• Upon reaching the edge of the trench, position themselves parallel to the trench (boot to boot), and, on the squad leader's signal, cook-off grenades (two seconds at the most) and throw the grenades into the trench.</li> <li>• After ensuring that both grenades detonate, the personnel roll into the trench, landing on their feet, and back to back. They fire their weapons down the trench in opposite directions.</li> <li>• Immediately, both personnel move in opposite directions down the trench, continuing to fire three-round bursts. Each soldier continues until he reaches the first corner or intersection. Then, each soldier halts and takes up a position to block any enemy movement toward the entry point.</li> <li>• The squad leader directs the remaining assault team to one of the secured corners or intersections to relieve the rifleman or grenadier who then rejoins his buddy at the opposite end of the foothold.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The squad leader remains at the entry point and reports to the platoon leader that he has entered the trench and secured a foothold.</li> <li>*+4. The platoon leader follows the success of the seizure of the foothold with the remainder of the platoon.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reorganizes the squads, as necessary.</li> <li>b. Redistributes the ammunition.</li> </ul> </li> <li>*+5. The platoon leader directs one of the base-of-fire element squads to move into the trench and begin clearing it in the direction of movement from the foothold.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Repositions the base-of-fire element as necessary to continue suppressive fires.</li> <li>b. Moves into the trench with the assaulting squad.</li> </ul> </li> <li>*6. The squad leader of the assaulting squad controls the actions of his squad as it passes the squad securing the foothold.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Designates a lead fire team and a trail fire team.</li> <li>b. Moves with the lead fire team to the forward most secure corner or intersection and tells the securing team that his squad is ready to pass through and continue clearing.</li> <li>c. Ensures the trail fire team follows and maintains visual contact with the last soldier of the lead team.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>NOTE: Throughout this technique, the team leader positions himself at the rear of the fire team to have direct control (physically, if necessary) of his personnel. Other personnel in the fire team rotate the lead. Personnel rotate the lead to change magazines and prepare grenades. Rotating the lead provides constant suppressive fires down the trench and maintains the momentum of the attack as the squad clears the trench.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>d. Passes the lead team through the element securing the foothold.</li> <li>7. The lead fire team starts clearing in the direction of movement.</li> </ul>		

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

a. Moves to the next corner, the second man cooks-off (two seconds at the most), and throws a grenade around the corner.

b. Moves around the corner as a team, after the grenade explodes, following the lead soldier to the next corner or intersection.

\*8. The squad leader follows behind the lead fire team.

a. Ensures that the trailing fire team moves up and is ready to pass the lead at his direction.

b. Rotates the fire teams as necessary to keep the soldiers alert and to maintain the momentum of the attack.

c. Requests indirect fires, if necessary, through the platoon leader.

d. Ensures the trailing fire team secures intersections and marks the route within the trench as the squad moves forward.

e. Reports the progress of the clearing to the platoon leader.

\*9. The platoon leader controls and supports the progress of the clearing action.

a. Rotates squads to keep personnel alert and to maintain the momentum of the assault.

b. Calls the platoon sergeant to forward ammunition resupply and to organize teams to move it into the trench.

c. Ensures the platoon sergeant moves friendly forces into the trench only through the designated entry point.

d. Reports to the company commander that the trench line is secured, or that his platoon is no longer able to continue clearing.

\*A leader task step.

+A critical task step.

**TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK**

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

See Appendix A for task numbers and titles that correlate to the numbers listed below by STP and skill level.

**Common Tasks**

Skill Level 1

20, 21, 24, 25, 36, 37, 38, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 47, 48, 49, 50, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 64, 65, 66, 67, 68, 71, 72, 73, 93, 95, 97

Skill Level 2

6, 8, 9, 25

Skill Level 3

12

Skill Level 4

4

**MOS 11B Tasks**

Skill Level 1

14, 17, 21, 26, 38, 41, 42, 43, 44, 48

Skill Level 2

1, 2, 8, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19

Skill Level 3

1, 2, 3, 4, 5

Skill Level 4

4, 7, 9, 10

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK: DEFEND TRENCH LINE**

**CONDITIONS:** The squad is ordered to occupy, prepare, and defend a trench line IAW threat doctrine. The squad has indirect fire support available.

**STANDARDS:**

1. The OPFOR repels the attack and forces the platoon to withdraw.
2. The OPFOR retains control of at least 50 percent of the trench line.

**ELEMENT: PLATOON**

**TASK: PERFORM RAID (7-3-1102) (FM 7-8)**

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

TRAINING STATUS T P U (circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is tasked to conduct a raid. The platoon has been reinforced with the necessary equipment to perform the specific purpose of the raid and sustain itself during the mission. The objective is defended by a reinforced enemy squad. Both friendly and enemy units have indirect fire support. Some iterations should be performed in MOPP4. Civilians, government organizations, NGOs, PVOs, and the international press are present on the battlefield. The US forces are operating under a restrictive ROE.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon initiates the raid NLT the time specified in the order, surprises the enemy, assaults the objective, and accomplishes its assigned task within the commander's intent. The platoon does not become decisively engaged. Obtains all PIR from the raid objective. The platoon continues follow-on operations. The US forces comply with the ROE. Collateral damage is limited.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

- |   |  |  |
|---|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>*1. The platoon leader plans for the mission IAW T&amp;EO 7-3/4-1605, Develop and Communicate a Plan.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintains unit integrity.</li> <li>b. Designates a security element, support element (including company mortars and antiarmor weapons section if attached), and assault element(s).</li> <li>c. Conducts coordination through the company headquarters, adjacent, or supporting units.</li> </ul> </li> <li>2. The platoon prepares for the mission. (See T&amp;EO 7-3/4-1606, Prepare for Combat.)                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identifies special teams.                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Demolition.</li> <li>• Prisoner of war.</li> <li>• Search.</li> <li>• Other (as required).</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul> |  |  |
|---|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Conducts rehearsals as directed by the platoon leader.</p> <p>3. The platoon moves to the ORP (see T&amp;EO 7-3/4-1134, Move Tactically).</p> <p>a. Secures the ORP.</p> <p>b. Prepares for the leader's reconnaissance.</p> <p>*4. The platoon leader, squad leaders, and selected personnel conduct a leader's reconnaissance.</p> <p>a. (Platoon leader) Leaves a contingency plan with the platoon sergeant.</p> <p>b. Verify routes to security, support, and assault positions.</p> <p>c. Observe the target, and verify and update intelligence information.</p> <p>d. Conduct the reconnaissance without compromising the raid.</p> <p>e. Leave a surveillance team to observe the objective.</p> <p>*5. The platoon leader decides to conduct or to abort the raid based on information gained during the reconnaissance of the target and battalion guidance.</p> <p>a. Recommends to abort if the number of enemy personnel significantly alters the engagement ratio.</p> <p>b. Recommends to abort if enemy activity in the target area is significantly increased, movement of outside elements into the area is detected, or increased air coverage is present.</p> <p>c. Returns to the ORP, informs the company, and waits for further directions, if he decides to abort the raid.</p> <p>6. The reconnaissance element returns to the ORP, and the commander adjusts the raid plan to complement the current intelligence.</p> <p>a. Assigns positions for all elements.</p> <p>b. Designates the withdrawal routes back to the ORP.</p> <p>c. Designates control measures on the objective—element objectives, lanes, limits of advance, and assault line.</p>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Informs the company that the raid will be conducted.</p> <p>7. Elements and teams prepare to move into position.</p> <p>a. Prepare ammunition, pyrotechnics, and Claymores.</p> <p>b. Disseminate all updated intelligence information on the objective.</p> <p>c. Check weapons and special equipment.</p> <p>8. Security elements occupy designated positions.</p> <p>a. Move into position undetected by the enemy.</p> <p>b. Provide early warning of enemy approach.</p> <p>c. Seal off the objective from outside support or reinforcement, to include air threat.</p> <p>*9. The support element leader moves the support element to positions designated by the commander.</p> <p>a. Moves into position undetected.</p> <p>b. Uses covered and concealed route to support positions.</p> <p>c. Ensures well-aimed fire may be placed on the objective from the positions.</p> <p>*10. The platoon leader moves with the assault element to the assault position.</p> <p>a. Ensures the assault position is close enough to the objective for immediate assault, if detected before the planned assault.</p> <p>b. Moves into position undetected by the enemy.</p> <p>c. Establishes local security.</p> <p>d. Establishes fire control measures.</p> <p>*11. Leaders inform the platoon leader when their elements are ready to conduct the raid.</p> <p>a. Report when in position and any changes to the original locations.</p> <p>b. Report any changes to the enemy situation.</p> <p>*12. The platoon leader directs the support element to fire.</p> <p>a. Initiates planned indirect, suppressive, or obscuration fires on known and suspected enemy position(s) that can support the objective are requested by the FO.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Ensures squads support IAW T&amp;EO 7-3/4-1108, Perform Overwatch/Support by Fire.</p> <p>13. The assault element advances toward the objective.</p> <p>a. Holds fire until it is ready to penetrate the objective, or it is engaged by direct enemy fire.</p> <p>b. Reports to platoon leader when in position and ready to assault.</p> <p>*14. The platoon leader orders the assault.</p> <p>a. Directs the security element to prevent enemy entry into or escape from the objective area security element.</p> <p>b. Signals the support element to shift fires.</p> <p>15. The support element shifts or lifts direct fires as directed.</p> <p>a. Shifts or lifts indirect fires under the control of the FSO.</p> <p>b. Shifts fires to the flanks of targets or areas (roads, bridges, or outlying support bases) designated in the raid plan.</p> <p>16. The assault element attacks and secures the objective IAW T&amp;EO 7-3/4-1103, Execute Assault.</p> <p>a. Accomplishes all assigned tasks (demolition teams set charges; search teams search the objective and secure any enemy survivors as prisoners).</p> <p>b. Reports to the platoon leader when assigned tasks are completed.</p> <p>17. On order or signal of the platoon leader, the assault element withdraws from the objective.</p> <p>a. Activates the detonation devices.</p> <p>b. (Designated special teams or personnel closest to the withdrawal exit points) Provides security until all teams or personnel have withdrawn from the objective.</p> <p>c. Ensures leaders account for all personnel and report casualty status to the platoon leader.</p> <p>18. The FO shifts indirect fires on the target.</p> <p>a. Requests the integration of smoke rounds to mask the withdrawal.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Shifts indirect fires to delay enemy reinforcements.  19. The squads withdraw from the objective in the sequence designated in the FRAGO to a covered and concealed position away from the objective area. a. Account for personnel and equipment. b. Disseminate PIR and IR. c. Redistribute ammunition and equipment. d. Arrange for further evacuation of wounded.  20. The platoon forwards raid reports and continues the mission. a. Reports raid assessment to the company headquarters. b. Informs the commander of PIR or IR obtained during the raid.  *A leader task step.		

**TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK**

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

See Appendix A for task numbers and titles that correlate to the numbers listed below by STP and skill level.

**Common Tasks**

Skill Level 1

20, 21, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 31, 33, 36, 37, 38, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 47, 48, 49, 50, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 64, 65, 66, 67, 68, 71, 72, 73, 92, 93, 94, 95, 97

Skill Level 2

6, 7, 8, 9, 11, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25

Skill Level 3

10, 12

Skill Level 4

4

**STP 7-11BCHM-SM-TG**

Skill Level 1

6, 14, 17, 21, 26, 28, 29, 30, 31, 32, 38, 41, 42, 43, 44, 48

Skill Level 2

1, 2, 8, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19

Skill Level 3

1, 2, 3, 4, 5

Skill Level 4

4, 7, 9, 10

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK: COUNTER RAID**

**CONDITIONS:** The squad is directed to defend a critical site (for example, road intersection, bridge, or communications site). The squad operates as a separate unit but has a platoon response force available within 15 minutes of contact.

**STANDARDS:**

1. The OPFOR detects the platoon before it initiates the raid.
2. The OPFOR repels the platoon assault force.
3. The OPFOR forces the platoon to withdraw before it can accomplish its task.
  - a. Prevents capture of key personnel.
  - b. Prevents destruction of key equipment on the raid objective.
  - c. Retains control of the raid objective.
4. The OPFOR fixes the platoon raid force and prevents its withdrawal with all its personnel and equipment.
5. The OPFOR prevents the platoon from obtaining PIR and IR.

**ELEMENT: PLATOON/SQUAD**

**TASK: PERFORM ANTIARMOR AMBUSH (7-3/4-1143)**  
 (FM 7-8, FM 7-7J)

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

TRAINING STATUS T P U (circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon occupies an ORP and must to execute an antiarmor ambush. The platoon operates separately or as part of a larger force. The platoon must provide its own security. Both friendly and enemy units have indirect fire and CAS available. The platoon is given PIR and other intelligence requirements. Some iterations should be performed in MOPP4. Civilians, government organizations, NGOs, PVOs, and the international press are present on the battlefield. The US forces are operating under a restrictive ROE.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon emplaces the ambush NLT the time specified in the order. The platoon surprises the enemy. The platoon engages the specified enemy element (type or portion of the unit: security, main body, reaction force). The platoon destroys all of the specified vehicles in the kill zone (armor, C<sup>2</sup> vehicles, bridging equipment, ADA). The platoon withdraws all personnel and equipment from the objective, on order. All specified PIR and other intelligence requirements are obtained from the ambush site. The platoon continues follow-on operations. The US forces comply with the ROE. Collateral damage is limited.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES** GO NO-GO

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>*1. The platoon leader prepares to conduct a leader's reconnaissance.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Designates key leaders to accompany him (includes FO, element leader, communications).</li> <li>b. Forms a security element for the party.</li> <li>c. Designates the ORP chain of command.</li> <li>d. Issues a contingency plan to the ORP leadership.</li> </ul> </li> <li>*2. The platoon leader conducts a leader's reconnaissance of the objective area.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures the reconnaissance party moves undetected.</li> <li>b. Confirms the objective location and suitability for the ambush.</li> <li>c. Selects a kill zone.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		
--	--	--

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Posts a security element at the site and issues a five-point contingency before returning to the ORP.</p> <p>e. Confirms suitability of the assault and support element positions and routes from them back to the ORP.</p> <p>*3. The platoon leader adjusts the plan based on the information from the reconnaissance.</p> <p>a. Assigns positions.</p> <p>b. Designates withdrawal routes back to the ORP.</p> <p>c. Designates control measures on the ambush site.</p> <p>d. Adjusts the fire support plan as needed.</p> <p>*4. The security element leader positions his element for the antiarmor ambush.</p> <p>a. Moves the security teams from the ORP and occupies designated positions on both flanks of the kill zone.</p> <p>b. Ensures the security teams move undetected to positions where they can secure all elements and cover the withdrawal of the assault and support elements.</p> <p>c. Ensures coverage of dismounted avenues of approach into the ambush site.</p> <p>*5. The support element leader moves his element from ORP to the designated positions.</p> <p>a. Moves undetected.</p> <p>b. Moves to positions that provide supporting fires for the armor-killer team(s) and covers their withdrawal.</p> <p>NOTE: The support element can be positioned with the assault element.</p> <p>*6. The assault element leader organizes the squad into armor-killer teams.</p> <p>a. Moves them into position as directed by the platoon leader.</p> <p>b. Ensures positions have—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A good field of fire into the kill zone.</li> <li>• Cover and concealment.</li> <li>• An obstacle between the team and the kill zone.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Covered and concealed withdrawal routes.</li> <li>▪ Fire control measures established including assigned primary and alternate sectors of fire.</li> </ul> <p>7. The platoon makes final preparation once in position. Leaders position themselves where they can control their units and weapons.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. (Designated platoon members) Emplace obstacles to canalize the enemy or to stop him in the kill zone (if possible).</li> <li>b. Place Claymore mines to cover the kill zone and the platoon's withdrawal routes.</li> <li>c. Prepare covered and concealed positions while waiting for the enemy.</li> </ul> <p>8. The security element alerts the platoon of the enemy approach.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reports the direction of movement, size of target, formation, number and type of vehicles.</li> <li>b. Reports any special weapons and equipment carried.</li> </ul> <p>*9. Upon enemy arrival, the platoon leader assesses the situation and initiates the ambush.</p> <p>NOTE: If the enemy force is too large, the platoon leader directs that the ambush is not initiated unless the platoon is detected. If the enemy does not detect the platoon, the platoon allows the enemy to pass. The platoon leader calls in a SITREP and continues the mission as directed by the company commander.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Initiates the ambush when the majority of the enemy is in the kill zone by using one of the following methods:</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: Ensure the weapon used to initiate the ambush engages the high-value target (for example, vehicles not people).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A command-detonated antiarmor mine, if the enemy is entirely mounted and the mine is available.</li> <li>• Dragon/Javelin, if fields of fire are over 65 meters and mines are not available.</li> </ul>		

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Multiple AT4/LAW fire, if fields of fire are less than 100 meters and mines are not available.</li> <li>b. Ensures the remainder of the armor-killer team opens well-aimed, interlocking fire with M60s/M249s, LAWs, M16s, and grenade launchers (if in range) throughout the kill zone to its flanks and beyond. (M203's can be used against lightly armored vehicles, groups of personnel, and to illuminate the kill zone.)</li> <li>NOTE: When using AT4s/LAWs, the armor-killer team(s) fire multiple shots on each target (volley fire).</li> <li>c. Controls the platoon's fires IAW the established fire control measures.</li> <li>d. Calls for indirect fire to impact in the kill zone as soon as possible after the initiation of the ambush.</li> <li>e. Ensures the platoon destroys the enemy without becoming decisively engaged.</li> <li>f. Signals to cease fire when return fire has stopped.</li> <li>NOTE: Because of the speed with which other armored forces can reinforce the enemy in the ambush site, the leader should plan to keep the engagement short and the withdrawal quick. The platoon will not clear through the kill zone as in other ambushes.</li> <li>*10. The platoon leader prepares to withdraw the platoon.             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Notifies the security teams when the ambush team is ready to withdraw.</li> <li>b. Ensures all personnel and equipment are accounted for.</li> <li>c. Directs the withdrawal to the ORP or a designated rally point.</li> </ul> </li> <li>*11. The platoon leader provides a SITREP to company headquarters.</li> <li>12. En route, or upon occupation of the rally point, the platoon leader disseminates information within the platoon.</li> </ul> <p>*A leader task step.</p>		
--	--	--



**TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK**

<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
<b>TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED</b>							
<b>TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"</b>							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

See Appendix A for task numbers and titles that correlate to the numbers listed below by STP and skill level.

**Common Tasks**

**Skill Level 1**

20, 21, 24, 25, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 47, 48, 49, 50, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 62, 63, 64, 65, 66, 67, 68, 71, 72, 73, 92, 93, 95, 97

**Skill Level 2**

6, 7, 8, 9, 25, 26

**Skill Level 3**

12

**Skill Level 4**

NONE

**STP 7-11BCHM-SM-TG**

**Skill Level 1**

14, 17, 21, 26, 28, 29, 30, 31, 32, 38, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 46, 48

**Skill Level 2**

1, 2, 8, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19

**Skill Level 3**

1, 2, 3, 4, 5

**Skill Level 4**

4, 9, 10

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK: COUNTER ANTIARMOR AMBUSH**

**CONDITIONS:** An armored or mechanized section or platoon performs a tactical movement. The OPFOR has indirect fire and CAS available.

**STANDARDS:**

1. The OPFOR security element detects the ambush.
2. The OPFOR prevents the platoon from engaging the OPFOR main body.
  - a. Bypasses the kill zone and security positions.
- OR**
- b. Attacks and defeats the ambush.
3. The OPFOR counters the ambush.
  - a. Disengages its element before all vehicles are destroyed.
  - b. Decisively engages and fixes the platoon to prevent withdrawal.
4. The OPFOR prevents the platoon from gaining PIR and other intelligence requirements from the ambush.

**ELEMENT: PLATOON/SQUAD**

**TASK: PERFORM HASTY AMBUSH (7-3/4-1144) (FM 7-8, FM 7-7J)**

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

TRAINING STATUS T P U (circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is moving when the enemy is seen moving near the platoon's route. Some iterations should be performed in MOPP4. Civilians, government organizations, NGOs, PVOs, and the international press are present on the battlefield. The US forces are operating under a restrictive ROE.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon quickly moves to concealed positions. The ambush is not initiated until the majority of the enemy is in the kill zone. The unit does not become decisively engaged. The platoon surprises the enemy. The platoon kills, captures, or forces the withdrawal of the enemy within the kill zone. On order, the platoon withdraws all personnel and equipment in the kill zone from observation and direct fire. The unit does not become decisively engaged by follow-on elements. The platoon continues follow-on operations. The US forces comply with the ROE. Collateral damage is limited.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

1. The platoon is alerted by the first person detecting the enemy.
  - a. Uses visual signals to alert the platoon leader and platoon members that the enemy is in sight.
  - b. Gives the enemy location and the direction of movement.
  - c. Halts and remains motionless.
  - d. Continues to monitor the location and activities of the enemy force until he is relieved by his team or squad leader.
- \*2. The platoon leader gives the signals to conduct a hasty ambush.
  - a. Signals IAW the platoon SOP.
  - b. Does not alert the enemy to the platoon's presence.
- \*3. The squad leaders alert their squad members.
  - a. Relay signals.

GO	NO-GO

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

- | TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>b. Ensure squad members move silently to covered and concealed positions.</p> <p>c. Ensure positions are undetected and have good observation and fields of fire into the kill zone.</p> <p>*4. The platoon leader assesses the situation and adopts a course of action based on the platoon mission and the relative size of the enemy force.</p> <p>a. Designates the location and extent of the kill zone.</p> <p>b. Positions flank security, if possible.</p> <p>c. Assigns sectors of fire and any additional fire control measures. (Shift fire limits, right and left; shift fire signals.)</p> <p>*5. The platoon leader alerts other elements on receipt of the report if the enemy force is too large.</p> <p>a. Directs that an ambush is not initiated unless the platoon is detected, if the enemy force is too large.</p> <p>b. Allows the enemy to pass and calls in a SALUTE report to the company commander and continues the mission.</p> <p>NOTE: If any member of the platoon is detected, the detected soldier initiates the ambush by firing and notifies the rest of the platoon, "Enemy right (left, front)."</p> <p>*+6. The platoon leader initiates the ambush.</p> <p>a. Uses the most casualty producing weapon.</p> <p>b. Initiates when the largest percentage of enemy is in the kill zone.</p> <p>c. Controls the rate and distribution of fire.</p> <p>d. Employs indirect fire to support the ambush.</p> <p>e. Orders cease fire (IAW the platoon SOP).</p> <p>f. Designates platoon members to conduct a hasty search of enemy personnel.</p> <p>g. Processes enemy prisoners and equipment IAW T&amp;EO 7-3/4-1503, Process Enemy Prisoners of War/Captured Materiel.</p> <p>*7. The platoon leader orders the platoon to withdraw from the ambush site.</p> <p>a. Ensures the platoon uses a covered and concealed route.</p> |    |       |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Directs the use of smoke to conceal the withdrawal. c. Ensures all personnel withdraw. d. Designates an aid and litter team, if needed.  *8. The platoon leader reports the situation to higher headquarters.  *9. The platoon leader disseminates information, reorganizes as necessary, and continues the mission as directed.  *A leader task step. +A critical task step.		

**TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK**

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

See Appendix A for task numbers and titles that correlate to the numbers listed below by STP and skill level.

**Common Tasks**

Skill Level 1

20, 21, 24, 25, 36, 37, 38, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 47, 48, 49, 50, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 62, 64, 65, 66, 67, 68, 71, 72, 73, 75, 78, 79, 80, 81, 82, 83, 84, 85, 86, 87, 88, 89, 90, 91, 92, 93, 94, 95, 97

**STP 21, 24, SMCT**

Skill Level 2

7, 8, 9, 24, 25

Skill Level 3

12

Skill Level 4

NONE

**MOS 11B TASKS**

Skill Level 1

14, 17, 21, 26, 38, 41, 42, 43, 44, 48

Skill Level 2

1, 2, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19

Skill Level 3

4, 5

Skill Level 4

4, 10

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK: COUNTER HASTY AMBUSH**

**CONDITIONS:** The squad is moving tactically as a separate unit and reacts to contact when engaged.

**STANDARDS:**

1. The OPFOR security element detects the ambush.
2. The OPFOR prevents the platoon from engaging the OPFOR main body.
  - a. Bypasses the kill zone.
- OR**
- b. Attacks and defeats the ambush element.
3. The OPFOR forces the platoon to withdraw without initiating the ambush.
4. The OPFOR engages and fixes the platoon to prevent the platoon's withdrawal.
5. The OPFOR prevents the platoon from gaining PIR and other intelligence requirements from the ambush.

**ELEMENT: PLATOON/SQUAD**

**TASK: PERFORM POINT AMBUSH (7-3/4-1145) (FM 7-8)**

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

TRAINING STATUS T P U (circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is ordered to conduct an ambush. The platoon is operating separately or as part of a larger unit. Both friendly and enemy elements have indirect fire available. The platoon is occupying an ORP. Some iterations should be performed in MOPP4. Civilians, government organizations, NGOs, PVOs, and the international press are present on the battlefield. The US forces are operating under a restrictive ROE.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The ambush is emplaced NLT the time specified in the order. The platoon surprises the enemy and engages the enemy main body. The platoon kills or captures all enemy in the kill zone and destroys equipment based on the commander's intent. The platoon withdraws all personnel and equipment from the objective, on order, within the time specified in the order. The platoon obtains all PIR from the ambush. The platoon continues follow-on operations. The US forces comply with the ROE. Collateral damage is limited.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

**GO NO-GO**

\*1. The platoon leader prepares for the ambush in the ORP or assembly area.

a. Plans IAW T&EO 7-3/4-1605, Develop and Communicate a Plan.

b. Designates an assault element, support element, and security element.

c. Plans indirect fires in the kill zone to destroy the enemy and cover the withdrawal of the platoon.

(See T&EO 7-3-1200, Employ Fire Support.)

\*2. The platoon leader prepares to conduct a leader's reconnaissance.

a. Designates key leaders to accompany him (includes FO, element leader, communications).

b. Forms a security element for the party.

c. Designates the ORP chain of command.

d. Issues a contingency plan to the ORP leadership.

GO	NO-GO

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*3. The platoon leader conducts a leader's reconnaissance of the objective area.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures the reconnaissance party moves undetected.</li> <li>b. Confirms the objective location and suitability for the ambush.</li> <li>c. Selects a kill zone.</li> <li>d. Posts a security element at the site and issues a five-point contingency before returning to the ORP.</li> <li>e. Confirms suitability of the assault and support element positions and routes from them back to the ORP.</li> </ol> <p>*4. The platoon leader adjusts the plan based on the information from the reconnaissance.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assigns positions.</li> <li>b. Designates withdrawal routes back to the ORP.</li> <li>c. Designates control measures on the ambush site.</li> </ol> <p>*5. The platoon leader designates the ambush formation based on his estimate of the situation: linear or L-shaped.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>6. The security teams depart the ORP and move to designated positions. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Secure the flanks of the ambush site, provide detection and early warning of enemy approach, and have cover and concealment.</li> <li>b. Remain motionless and observe noise and light discipline.</li> </ol> <p>NOTE: A security team remains in the ORP (if the platoon plans to return to the ORP after the execution of the ambush).</p> </li> <li>7. Once security teams are in position or on the platoon leader's order, the support element departs the ORP and moves into position. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Uses covered and concealed routes.</li> <li>b. Emplaces mines and obstacles.</li> <li>c. Identifies sectors of fire for all weapons, especially machine guns.</li> <li>d. Emplaces limiting stakes to prevent friendly fires from hitting other elements.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Emplaces Claymore mines and other protective devices.</p> <p>f. Overwatches the movement of the assault element into position.</p> <p>8. Once the support element is in position or on order of the platoon leader, the assault element moves into position.</p> <p>a. Identifies individual sectors of fire as assigned by the platoon leader and emplaces aiming stakes.</p> <p>b. Emplaces Claymore mines and other protective devices.</p> <p>c. Emplaces Claymore mines or other explosives in dead space within the kill zone.</p> <p>d. Camouflage positions.</p> <p>e. Moves the weapon's selector lever off SAFE. (Moving the selector lever on the weapon causes a metallic click that could compromise the ambush if personnel wait until the enemy is in the kill zone. This must be the last action performed by all personnel before waiting to initiate the ambush.)</p> <p>9. The security team spots the enemy and alerts the platoon leader.</p> <p>a. Reports the direction of movement, size of the target, and any special weapons and equipment carried.</p> <p>b. Keeps the platoon leader informed if any enemy forces are following the lead force.</p> <p>*10. The platoon leader alerts other elements on receipt of the report and determines if the enemy force is too large or if his ambush can engage successfully.</p> <p>a. Directs that an ambush is not initiated unless the platoon is detected, if the enemy force is too large.</p> <p>b. Allows the enemy to pass and sends a SALUTE report to the company commander and continues the mission.</p> <p>NOTE: If any member of the platoon is detected, the detected soldier initiates the ambush by firing and notifies the rest of the platoon, "Enemy right (left, front)."</p>		

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

\*11. If the enemy force is not too large, the platoon leader initiates the ambush.

- a. Uses the highest casualty-producing weapon (preferably, a command detonated Claymore mine).
- b. Ensures the assault and support elements deliver fire with the heaviest, most accurate volume possible. To conceal friendly positions, especially at night, fire may be delivered solely by hand grenades and 40-mm grenade launcher. Then, initiate other fires if enemy activity persists in the ambush kill zone.
- c. Illuminates the kill zone as necessary during periods of limited visibility.

\*12. The platoon leader gives the signal to lift or shift fires if the target is to be assaulted.

- a. Directs the support element to lift or shift fires before the assault by the assault element.
- b. Directs the FO to lift indirect fires.

13. The assault element assaults before the enemy can react.

- a. Kills or captures all enemy in the kill zone.
- b. Establishes security for specialty teams.
- c. Uses individual movement techniques or bounds by fire teams depending on the situation.

14. Specialty teams (demolition, aid and litter, search, EPW) accomplish their assigned tasks immediately after the assault.

- a. Secure all EPWs and moves them to the designated collection point.
- b. Search all dead enemy personnel using appropriate search techniques and mark the bodies.
- c. Evacuate casualties IAW the OPORD or platoon SOP.
- d. Prepare enemy equipment for demolition.

\*15. The platoon leader calls for planned indirect fire or smoke to cover the withdrawal, when required.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*16. The platoon leader halts the platoon out of enemy observation or direct fire (normally at least one terrain feature away) and disseminates information.</p> <p>17. The platoon withdraws to the ORP or rally point on order and in the sequence designated.</p> <p>a. Accounts for all personnel and equipment.</p> <p>b. Reorganizes into movement elements and continues movement.</p> <p>c. Recovers rucksacks and other equipment left at the ORP during the ambush.</p> <p>*18. The platoon leader provides a SITREP to company headquarters IAW the platoon SOP and continues the mission.</p> <p>*A leader task step.</p>		

**TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK**

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

See Appendix A for task numbers and titles that correlate to the numbers listed below by STP and skill level.

**Common Tasks**

Skill Level 1

20, 21, 24, 25, 36, 37, 38, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 47, 48, 49, 50, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 62, 64, 65, 66, 67, 68, 71, 72, 73, 75, 78, 79, 80, 81, 82, 83, 84, 85, 86, 87, 88, 89, 90, 91, 92, 93, 94, 95, 97

Skill Level 2

8, 9, 11, 24, 25

Skill Level 3

12

Skill Level 4  
NONE

**MOS 11B Tasks**

Skill Level 1  
14, 17, 21, 26, 38, 41, 42, 43, 44, 48, 52

Skill Level 2  
1, 2, 8, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19

Skill Level 3  
2, 3, 4, 5

Skill Level 4  
4, 7, 10

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK: COUNTER POINT AMBUSH**

**CONDITIONS:** The squad is moving tactically and reacts to contact when engaged. The squad has indirect fire available.

**STANDARDS:**

1. The OPFOR security element detects the ambush.
2. The OPFOR prevents the platoon from engaging the OPFOR main body.
  - a. Bypasses the kill zone and security position.

**OR**

- b. Attacks and defeats the ambush.
3. The OPFOR forces the platoon to withdraw without initiating the ambush.
4. The OPFOR engages and fixes the platoon to prevent their withdrawal.
5. The OPFOR prevents the platoon from gaining PIR and other intelligence requirements from the ambush.

**ELEMENT:** PLATOON/SQUAD

**TASK:** EXECUTE DEFENSE (7-3/4-1115) (FM 7-8, FM 7-7J)

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

TRAINING STATUS T P U (circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is ordered to occupy, prepare, and defend a battle position or sector as a separate unit or as part of a larger force. Planning, precombat checks, and movement to the rear of the defensive position are completed. The enemy can attack in company-size strength, either mounted or dismounted. Both friendly and enemy elements are supported by indirect fire and CAS. Some iterations should be performed in MOPP4. Civilians, government organizations, NGOs, PVOs, and the international press are present on the battlefield. The US forces are operating under a restrictive ROE.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon completes all designated preparations NLT the time specified in the order. The platoon main body is not surprised by the enemy. The platoon accomplishes its assigned task IAW the OPORD. The platoon continues follow-on operations. The US forces comply with the ROE. Collateral damage is limited.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES** GO NO-GO

*1. The platoon leader conducts a leader's reconnaissance of the battle position. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issues the platoon sergeant a contingency plan before the reconnaissance party departs.</li> <li>b. Approaches the position from the rear and conducts the reconnaissance with the FO, RATELO, squad leaders, and security element.</li> <li>c. Ensures the position is free of enemy, mines, and obstacles.</li> <li>d. Confirms and modifies the platoon tentative positions and fire plan.</li> <li>e. Ensures the security elements establish local security during the reconnaissance and battle position occupation.</li> <li>f. Assigns squad sectors and OP locations. (OPs have wire communications, if available.)</li> </ul>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

g. Designates the location for the platoon early warning system, the chemical-alarm system (if assigned), and the platoon CP.

h. Selects initial M249 and crew-served weapon positions to cover likely avenues of approach.

NOTE: It is important to reconnoiter the position from the enemy perspective to know how the position should be defended.

2. The platoon leader returns to the platoon position or calls the platoon forward.

a. Moves the platoon on covered and concealed routes.

b. Enforces camouflage, noise, light, and litter discipline.

c. Maintains security during movement.

d. Directs the squads to occupy designated positions at the same time, if possible.

\*3. The platoon occupies the position; the platoon leader—

a. Establishes security (to include OPs, hasty perimeter, or security patrols).

b. Determines and confirms the engagement area (where he plans to kill the enemy).

c. Adjusts the positions of the squads, machine guns, and any attachments, as required.

d. Assigns sectors of fire, engagement priorities, and other fire control measures.

e. Assigns alternate and supplementary positions and routes to them.

f. Develops an obstacle and direct fire plan.

g. Develops a fire support plan (with the platoon FO) to include FPF and fires used to support repositioning the platoon to alternate or supplementary positions.

h. Establishes communications from the platoon CP to the squad positions.

i. Confirms all positions and squad sector sketches before the soldiers begin digging.

j. Ensures the platoon is tied in with the unit on its right and left.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>k. Develops a reconnaissance and surveillance plan IAW the company plan.</p> <p>*4. The squad leaders prepare sector sketches and submit a copy to the platoon leader.</p> <p>a. Indicate the main terrain features in the squad's sector of fire and the ranges to them.</p> <p>b. Indicate each primary fighting position.</p> <p>c. Indicate the primary and secondary sectors of fire for each position.</p> <p>d. Indicate the type of weapon in each position and fire control measures (FPF, PDF, or FPL).</p> <p>e. Indicate OPs and squad leader's position.</p> <p>f. Indicate dead space.</p> <p>g. Indicate obstacles.</p> <p>h. Indicate direction of north.</p> <p>*5. The platoon leader prepares a platoon sector sketch and sends a copy to the company commander.</p> <p>a. Indicates the platoon sector or engagement area.</p> <p>b. Indicates squad positions (primary, alternate, and supplementary) and sectors of fire.</p> <p>c. Indicates vehicle, Dragon/Javelin, and M60/M249 positions with primary sectors of fire, FPL or PDF for primary vehicle weapon systems, M60s/M249s, and TRPs.</p> <p>d. Indicates OPs and patrol routes (if any).</p> <p>e. Indicates the greatest engagement lines for the primary weapons systems.</p> <p>f. Indicates mines and obstacles.</p> <p>g. Indicates indirect fire targets and FPFs (if allocated).</p> <p>h. Indicates direction of true north.</p> <p>i. Indicates platoon designation.</p> <p>j. Indicates date-time group.</p> <p>k. Indicates platoon CP.</p> <p>6. The platoon members begin preparation of fighting positions IAW the platoon SOP (usually, two or more of these tasks are performed at the same time).</p> <p>a. Emplace Claymore mines.</p> <p>b. Physically reconnoiter in front of the position to become familiar with the terrain and to locate dead space.</p>		

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

- | TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c. Make physical contact with adjacent positions, and selecting covered and or concealed routes to those positions.</li> <li>d. Clear fields of fire.</li> <li>e. Prepare range cards and aiming stakes.</li> <li>f. Dig fighting positions.</li> <li>g. Construct overhead cover for fighting positions.</li> <li>h. Camouflage positions.</li> <li>i. Stockpile ammunition, food, and water.</li> </ul> <p>7. The RATELO installs landline (hot loop).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Lays wire (hot loop) to each squad.</li> <li>b. Establishes communications with the company.</li> <li>c. Conducts a communications check to ensure that the landline is operational.</li> </ul> <p>8. The platoon emplaces obstacles IAW the platoon or company obstacle plan. (See T&amp;EO 7-3-1404, Construct an Obstacle.)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Is covered by direct or indirect fire and under friendly observation.</li> <li>b. Conceals from enemy observation as much as possible.</li> <li>c. Erects in an irregular pattern.</li> <li>d. Employs in depth.</li> <li>e. Ties in with existing obstacles.</li> </ul> <p>*9. The platoon leader (with the FO) updates the fire plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Adds enemy avenues of approach.</li> <li>b. Adds known or likely enemy positions.</li> <li>c. Adds final protective fires (if allocated).</li> </ul> <p>10. The platoon continues to improve defensive positions as time permits, to include rehearsals of movement to alternate and supplementary positions.</p> <p>+11. The platoon initiates contact or takes actions against the enemy. The platoon leader—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Alerts the squad leaders, platoon sergeant, and his forward observers.</li> <li>b. Reports the situation to the company commander.</li> </ul> |    |       |



**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

**GO NO-GO**

c. Calls in OPs. (The platoon leader may decide to leave the OP in place if the personnel manning it can provide effective flanking fires, their position affords them adequate protection, and their return will compromise the platoon position.)

d. Calls for and adjusts indirect fire when the enemy is at the greatest range.

e. Initiates direct fire engagement of the attacking enemy IAW the company or platoon fire plan. Antiarmor weapons conduct initial engagement simultaneously, if possible.

\*12. The platoon leader determines if the platoon can destroy the enemy from its assigned positions. If yes, the platoon—

a. Continues to fight by increasing the intensity of fires as the enemy closes to within range of additional weapons.

b. Continues to call for indirect fires as the enemy approaches.

c. Disrupts and canalize enemy formations into designated engagement areas.

d. Destroys the enemy attempting to breach tactical obstacles.

\*13. The platoon leader directs actions as the enemy closes in on the platoon's protective wire.

a. Initiates the FPF.

b. Directs the automatic weapons to fire along the interlocking PDF.

c. Ensures the M203 grenade launchers engage enemy in dead space or against the enemy attempting to breach the protective wire.

d. Directs the squads to occupy supplementary or alternate positions if the situation dictates.

+14. The platoon continues to defend the battle position until the enemy is repelled or is ordered to disengage.

15. If the platoon leader determines the platoon cannot hold its position, he—

a. Reports the situation to the company commander.

b. Requests permission to withdraw.

GO	NO-GO

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

c. If given permission, executes the withdrawal plan IAW T&EO 7-3/4-1122, Execute Disengagement.

d. Requests supporting HE and smoke to support the disengagement.

16. When the enemy withdraws or the platoon completes its disengagement, the platoon consolidates and reorganizes IAW T&EO 7-3/4-1607, Perform Consolidation and Reorganization.

\*A leader task step.

+A critical task step.

--	--

**TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK**

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

See Appendix A for task numbers and titles that correlate to the numbers listed below by STP and skill level.

**Common Tasks**

Skill Level 1

15, 16, 20, 21, 23, 24, 25, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 47, 48, 49, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 62, 63, 64, 65, 66, 67, 68, 69, 70, 71, 72, 73, 74, 93, 94, 95, 96, 97

Skill Level 2

1, 2, 4, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 25, 26

Skill Level 3

8, 9, 10, 11, 12

Skill Level 4

2, 3, 4, 5

**MOS 11B Tasks**

**Skill Level 1**

4, 5, 14, 15, 16, 17, 19, 21, 22, 24, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 38, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 46, 47, 52, 54, 55, 56, 57

**Skill Level 2**

1, 2, 3, 8, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19

**Skill Level 3**

1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7

**Skill Level 4**

1, 2, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK: ATTACK**

**CONDITIONS:** An enemy platoon has occupied defensive positions to the OPFOR platoon's front. The OPFOR platoon is ordered to attack the enemy. The OPFOR may act separately or as part of a larger unit. The OPFOR has indirect fire and CAS available.

**STANDARDS:**

1. The OPFOR surprises the platoon's main body.
2. The OPFOR avoids being fixed.
3. The OPFOR accomplishes the assigned task.

a. Seizes the assigned terrain.

**OR**

b. Penetrates the defense with at least 50 percent of its forces.

**OR**

c. Forces the platoon to withdraw.

**OR**

d. Maintains the specified rate of movement.

**ELEMENT: PLATOON/SQUAD****TASK: OCCUPY ASSEMBLY AREA (7-3/4-1136) (FM 7-8)**

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

TRAINING STATUS T P U (circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is ordered to occupy a portion of a company assembly area. The enemy can attack with platoon-size elements. Both friendly and enemy elements have indirect fire capabilities. Some iterations should be performed in MOPP4. Civilians, government organizations, NGOs, PVOs, and the international press are present on the battlefield. The US forces are operating under a restrictive ROE.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon moves all personnel and equipment into their assigned positions NLT the time specified in the company order. The platoon main body is not surprised by the enemy. The platoon forces enemy squad-size or smaller probes to withdraw. The platoon completes all preparations as specified by the leader. The US forces comply with the ROE. Collateral damage is limited.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

- | TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The quartering party secures, then reconnoiters the assembly area.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures no enemy are present.</li> <li>b. Clears or marks all obstacles.</li> <li>c. Determines initial positions for all platoon elements.                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ensures mutual support.</li> <li>• Marks IAW the platoon SOP.</li> </ul> </li> <li>d. Establishes initial security.</li> <li>e. Forces any enemy reconnaissance probes to withdraw.</li> <li>f. Warns the main body of the enemy attack.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. As the platoon clears the release point, the quartering party members—               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Move from covered and concealed positions to link up with their squads.</li> <li>b. Maintain their squad's movement.</li> <li>c. Guide their squad to the correct location.</li> </ol> </li> <li>*3. The platoon establishes and maintains local security under direction from the platoon leader.</li> </ol> |    |       |

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

**GO NO-GO**

- a. Assigns each squad a sector of the perimeter to ensure mutual support and to cover all gaps by observation and fire.
  - b. Designates an OP, and squad leaders select OP personnel.
  - c. Ensures the OP has communications with the platoon CP.
  - d. (OP) Warns the platoon of any enemy approach before the platoon is attacked.
- \*4. Based on the priority of work established by the platoon leader, the platoon (can vary by platoon SOP and METT-T)—
- a. Positions antiarmor weapons, machine guns, and assigns sectors of fire.
  - b. Positions other assets attached to the platoon.
  - c. Establishes the CP and wire communications.
  - d. Designates FPLs and FPFs.
  - e. Clears fields of fire and prepares range cards and sector sketches.
  - f. Camouflages the positions.
  - g. Coordinates with adjacent units—left, right, forward, and to the rear.
    - Assigns security patrols, if applicable.
    - Establishes responsibility for overlapping enemy avenues of approach between adjacent squads and platoons.
    - Ensures there are no gaps between elements.
    - Exchanges information on OP locations and platoon signals.
    - Coordinates local counterattacks.
  - h. Prepares primary fighting positions.
  - i. Emplaces obstacles and mines  
IAW T&EO 7-3-1404, Construct an Obstacle.
  - j. Marks or improves marking for TRPs and other fire control measures.
  - k. Improves primary fighting positions such as overhead cover.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
l. Prepares alternate positions, then supplementary positions. m. Establishes a sleep and rest plan. n. Reconnoiters routes. o. Rehearses engagements, disengagements, and any counterattack plans. p. Adjusts positions or control measures as required. q. Stockpiles ammunition, food, and water. r. Digs trenches to connect positions. s. Continues to improve positions.  *5. The platoon leader forwards a sector sketch to the company commander and keeps one for platoon use.  *A leader task step.		

**TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK**

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

See Appendix A for task numbers and titles that correlate to the numbers listed below by STP and skill level.

**Common Tasks**

Skill Level 1

20, 21, 23, 24, 25, 34, 36, 37, 38, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 46, 47, 48, 49, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 62, 63, 64, 65, 66, 67, 68, 69, 70, 71, 72, 73, 74, 75, 78, 79, 80, 81, 82, 83, 84, 85, 86, 87, 88, 89, 90, 91, 92, 93, 94, 95, 97

Skill Level 2

7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 24, 25

Skill Level 3

10, 12

Skill Level 4

4

**MOS 11B Tasks**

Skill Level 1

14, 15, 16, 17, 19, 21, 22, 24, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 38  
41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 46, 47, 48, 52, 54, 55, 56, 57

Skill Level 2

1, 2, 3, 8, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19

Skill Level 3

1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7

Skill Level 4

1, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 13

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK: DISRUPT ASSEMBLY AREA ACTIVITIES**

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is operating separately or as part of a larger force. The platoon is ordered to assault an enemy assembly area. The platoon has indirect fire capabilities.

**STANDARDS:**

1. The OPFOR locates the assembly area.
2. The OPFOR surprises the main body.
3. The OPFOR penetrates the assembly area with squad-size probes.
4. The OPFOR disrupts the preparations (prevents or delays beyond the platoon's allotted time).

**ELEMENT: PLATOON/SQUAD**

**TASK: MOVE TACTICALLY (7-3/4-1134) (FM 7-8)**

**ITERATION** 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

**TRAINING STATUS** T P U (circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon must move along a prescribed route or to a destination specified in the OPORD. This route can include movement through a built-up area. The platoon is operating separately or as part of a company. Both friendly and enemy forces have indirect fire and CAS available. Some iterations should be performed in MOPP4. Civilians, government organizations, NGOs, PVOs, and the international press are present on the battlefield. The US forces are operating under a restrictive ROE.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon moves on the specified route or arrives at the specified destination at the time specified in the order. The platoon main body is not surprised by the enemy. The platoon employs the movement formation and technique ordered by the leader. The platoon leader can show the location of adjacent units during movement. The US forces comply with the ROE. Collateral damage is limited.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

- \*1. The platoon leader makes a map reconnaissance and chooses a route for movement that—
  - a. Offers concealment from ground and air observation.
  - b. Avoids skylining.
  - c. Avoids moving directly forward from firing positions.
  - d. Avoids open areas and potential kill zones.
  - e. Avoids obvious avenues of approach.
- \*2. The platoon leader designates the movement technique to be used based on METT-T.
  - a. Uses traveling when enemy contact is not likely.
  - b. Uses traveling overwatch when enemy contact is likely.
  - c. Uses bounding overwatch when enemy contact is expected.
- 3. The platoon adjusts formation based on METT-T.

GO	NO-GO



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Closes wedges during limited visibility to maintain visibility between individuals, teams, and squads, and to maintain the rate of movement.</p> <p>b. Opens wedges as obstructions to movement and control diminish.</p> <p>4. When the traveling movement technique is performed, the platoon—</p> <p>a. Spaces the fire teams about 20 meters apart.</p> <p>b. Moves the squads on a column axis about 20 meters apart.</p> <p>5. When the traveling overwatch movement technique is performed, the platoon—</p> <p>a. Increases the distance between the lead squad and the platoon main body 50 meters to 100 meters.</p> <p>b. Uses traveling overwatch by the lead squad and the trailing squads use traveling.</p> <p>6. When the bounding overwatch movement technique is performed by the platoon under the platoon leader's direction, the platoon leader—</p> <p>a. Ensures the bounding squad moves in the wedge formation.</p> <p>b. Moves one squad, while the other squads with the platoon leader remain in a position to overwatch the bounding squad for its entire bound.</p> <p>c. Designates the next overwatch position, the routes to be used, and the sectors for the overwatching squads.</p> <p>d. Ensures bounds do not exceed visual overwatch.</p> <p>e. Directs bounds to stay within the greatest effective range of the overwatching weapons and fields of fire.</p> <p>*7. The platoon leader may choose to move by alternate or successive bounds. When the bounding squad moves, the squad—</p> <p>a. Signals to the platoon leader that it is beginning its movement.</p> <p>b. Uses a covered and concealed route, when available, for its bound.</p> <p>c. Moves as quickly as possible while maintaining OPSEC.</p>		

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES****GO NO-GO**

- | TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>d. Moves so as not to mask the fires of the overwatching element.</p> <p>e. Establishes an overwatch position, on completion of its bound, to overwatch the succeeding bound.</p> <p>f. Informs the platoon leader that it has finished its bound and is ready to overwatch.</p> <p>g. Alerts the platoon leader and overwatching element of any enemy detected, obstacles encountered, or danger areas.</p> <p>8. The lead team employs a point man or buddy team as far forward as visual contact allows with the rest of the squad. When the overwatch squad observes the bounding squad, the overwatch squad—</p> <p>a. Occupies a position that allows observation and fire to cover the bounding squad's movement to its next overwatch position.</p> <p>b. Orients weapons on likely enemy positions.</p> <p>c. Maintains continuous observation of the bounding squad, its route, and any terrain that can influence that route.</p> <p>d. Suppresses enemy units so that the bounding element is not fixed, or any enemy detected, based on the SOP and the platoon leader's orders.</p> <p>e. Alerts the bounding squad and platoon leader of any enemy that it detects.</p> <p>f. Prepares to bound when the bounding team assumes the overwatch position.</p> <p>9. The platoon maintains security during movement.</p> <p>a. Maintains visual contact at a normal interval of 10 meters (interval automatically expands and contracts based on terrain and visibility).</p> <p>b. Maintains noise and light discipline.</p> <p>c. Observes the sectors of responsibility assigned by leaders so the enemy cannot approach the platoon within 35 meters and no aircraft can attack the platoon without warning.</p> <p>d. Ensures the lead element reports obstacles, enemy contact, or danger areas to the leader.</p> |    |       |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*10. The platoon leaders and squad leaders control the platoon's movement.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Position themselves where they can control movement.</li> <li>b. Position key weapons where the leaders can control them.</li> <li>c. Ensure the platoon members react as their leaders do (that is, when he gets down, they get down) and to their leader's visual signals or oral commands.</li> <li>d. Assess the terrain for potential danger areas.</li> <li>e. Use arm-and-hand or flag signals until contact is made.</li> <li>f. Use visual and audio signals, such as flares, smoke, whistles, or voice commands, once contact is made.</li> </ol> <p>*11. The platoon leader maintains the platoon location.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Expresses the platoon's location as a six-digit grid coordinate or by using current operational graphics.</li> <li>b. Shows the location of all platoon elements and leading, flanking, or trailing company elements.</li> </ol> <p>12. The platoon moves in a built-up area.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Halts in a covered and concealed position outside of the urban area.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The platoon seeks cover and concealment and overwatch the urban area.</li> <li>• The platoon leader scans the urban area and determines the route through the urban area.</li> <li>• The platoon leader designates movement element and overwatch element.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Moves as two elements: a movement element and an overwatch element. When necessary, these elements or parts of them exchange roles.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The movement element (one or two squads/teams if terrain is open [for example, a wide street]) moves forward, scouts danger areas, and closes with the enemy.</li> </ul> </li> </ol>		

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The overwatch element (the rest of the platoon and supporting weapons) moves behind the lead element and secures the flanks and rear. It also provides fire support.</li> </ul> <p>c. Uses a covered and concealed route whenever possible.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The platoon moves along underground passages, through or behind buildings, along walls, and over rooftops.</li> <li>• The platoon avoids streets, alleys, and other open areas unless necessary.</li> </ul> <p>d. Makes the best use of cover and concealment when moving.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Personnel move in single file along the side of the street, staying close to the buildings.</li> <li>• Personnel move quickly and remain dispersed 3 to 5 meters apart.</li> <li>• Each soldier is assigned an area to observe on the opposite side of the street.</li> <li>• When moving with two squads abreast, each squad overwatches the buildings across the street, observing the stories above the opposite squad.</li> </ul> <p>e. Crosses the MOUT danger areas, using the greatest cover, concealment, speed, and overwatch.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Personnel use smoke, rubble, and debris for protection.</li> <li>• An element crosses as a dispersed group at the same time—not soldier by soldier.</li> </ul> <p>f. Moves while maintaining security.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Clears buildings as necessary to continue movement. (See T&amp;EO 7-3/4-1110, Clear a Building.)</li> <li>• Identifies, reports, marks, and bypasses enemy obstacles and mines.</li> </ul> <p>g. Clears the urban area. The platoon leader reports that the platoon is through the urban area.</p>		
---	--	--

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
h. Continues the mission. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Reestablishes movement formation; assumes proper intervals.</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>OR</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Takes up hasty defensive positions. (See T&amp;EO 7-3/4-1115, Execute Defense, and 7-3/4-1118, Defend MOUT/Building.)</li> </ul> <p>*A leader task step.</p>		

**TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK**

<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
<b>TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED</b>							
<b>TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"</b>							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

See Appendix A for task numbers and titles that correlate to the numbers listed below by STP and skill level.

**Common Tasks**

Skill Level 1

20, 21, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33, 65, 66, 67, 68, 71, 72, 73, 93, 95, 96, 97

Skill Level 2

6, 7, 8, 9, 11, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 25, 26

Skill Level 3

10, 12

Skill Level 4

4

**MOS 11B Tasks**

Skill Level 1

6, 41, 42, 43, 44, 48, 49, 51

Skill Level 2

1, 2, 7, 8, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19

Skill Level 3

2, 3, 4, 5

Skill Level 4

4, 7, 9, 10

### **OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

#### **TASK: ENGAGE MOVING UNIT**

**CONDITIONS:** The OPFOR squad is operating separately or as part of a larger unit. The squad is ordered to engage a moving enemy unit. The squad has indirect fire and CAS available.

#### **STANDARDS:**

1. The OPFOR surprises the platoon main body.
2. The OPFOR delays the platoon beyond its allotted time.
3. The OPFOR prevents the platoon from moving to its assigned destination or along its prescribed route.

**ELEMENT: PLATOON/SQUAD**

**TASK: PERFORM ACTIONS AT DANGER AREAS**

(7-3/4-1135) (FM 7-8)

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

TRAINING STATUS T P U (circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is moving dismounted and encounters a danger area that cannot be bypassed. The platoon must provide its own security. Some iterations should be performed in MOPP4. Civilians, government organizations, NGOs, PVOs, and the international press are present on the battlefield. The US forces are operating under a restrictive ROE.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon prevents the enemy from surprising the main body. The platoon moves all personnel and equipment across the danger area. The platoon prevents decisive engagement by the enemy. The US forces comply with the ROE. Collateral damage is limited.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

- |   |  |  |
|---|--|--|
| <p>*1. The platoon leader directs the platoon to take action on encountering a danger area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures the point man signals "danger area" (relayed throughout the platoon).</li> <li>b. Halts the platoon and maintains local security.</li> <li>c. Moves forward to the point man and confirms the danger area.</li> </ul> <p>*2. The platoon leader directs the lead squad to reconnoiter the danger area and makes an estimate based on information received.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Directs the route for the platoon, if the danger area can be bypassed.</li> <li>b. Controls the crossing of the danger area. (Minimum time is spent in or near the danger area.) The platoon leader—                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Informs all squad leaders of the situation.</li> <li>• Designates the near-side and far-side rally points.</li> <li>• Directs the positioning of near-side security.</li> <li>• Selects the crossing point that provides cover and concealment.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |  |  |
|---|--|--|

## TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES

GO NO-GO

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Assigns far-side security.</li> </ul> <p>*3. The platoon leader selects the far-side clearing method based on observable terrain. The secured area must be large enough to allow full deployment of the remainder of the platoon.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. Near-side security provides security.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Observes to the flanks.</li> <li>b. Overwatches the crossing of the far-side security team.                   <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c. Warns of enemy approach before the main body is engaged.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> </li> <li>5. The far-side team reconnoiters the far side.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Crosses the danger area once near-side security is in place.</li> <li>b. Reconnoiters the far side and ensures that any terrain (small hills, folds, streambeds) that might conceal enemy positions is clear of the enemy.                   <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c. Establishes an OP forward of the cleared area.</li> <li>d. Signals to the squad leader that the area is clear; the message is relayed to the platoon leader.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> </li> <li>6. The platoon crosses the danger area.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Uses the method selected by the platoon leader to cross the danger area (in groups or wedge [file] or line).</li> <li>b. Uses near-side security to overwatch the crossing of the platoon.                   <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c. Crosses the danger area quickly and quietly, using the method designated by the platoon leader.                       <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Line (all at once).</li> <li>• Wedge.</li> <li>• Small groups.</li> <li>• Individually.</li> </ul> </li> <li>d. If contact is made, executes Battle Drill 2, React to Contact (ARTEP 7-8-DRILL).</li> <li>e. Establishes local security once across the danger area.</li> <li>f. Completes the crossing with the near-side security squad crossing the danger area and regains their positions in the formation.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> </li> </ol>		



**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

- 7. The platoon continues mission.
  - a. Accounts for all members.
  - b. Resumes tactical movement.
  - c. Maintains proper formation and personnel intervals.
- \*A leader task step.

--	--

**TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK**

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

See Appendix A for task numbers and titles that correlate to the numbers listed below by STP and skill level.

**Common Tasks**

Skill Level 1

20, 21, 24, 25, 41, 45, 50, 55, 58, 60, 61, 64, 65, 66, 67, 68, 71, 72, 73, 93, 95, 96, 97

Skill Level 2

7, 8, 9, 25, 26

Skill Level 3

10, 12

Skill Level 4

NONE

**MOS 11B Tasks**

Skill Level 1

6, 41, 42, 43, 44, 48

Skill Level 2

8, 14, 15, 16, 19

Skill Level 3

4, 5

Skill Level 4  
4, 9, 10

### **OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

#### **TASK: DEFEND DANGER AREA**

**CONDITIONS:** The OPFOR squad is ordered to occupy and defend a position that controls a danger area. The squad may operate separately or as part of a larger unit.

#### **STANDARDS:**

1. The OPFOR detects the crossing.
2. The OPFOR surprises the main body.
3. The OPFOR decisively engages the platoon.
4. The OPFOR prevents the platoon from crossing at its chosen location.

**ELEMENT:** PLATOON

**TASK:** PERFORM TACTICAL ROAD MARCH (7-3-1123)  
(FM 7-8, FM 21-18)

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

TRAINING STATUS T P U (circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is ordered to conduct a tactical road march. The platoon is operating separately or as part of the company. The enemy has the ability to attack and employ indirect fire and CAS. Some iterations should be performed in MOPP4. Civilians, government organizations, NGOs, PVOs, and the international press are present on the battlefield. The US forces are operating under a restrictive ROE.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon crosses the start point and release point at the time specified in the order. The platoon follows the prescribed route, rate of march, and interval without deviation unless required by enemy action or higher headquarters' orders. The main body is not surprised by the enemy. The US forces comply with the ROE. Collateral damage is limited.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES** GO NO-GO

<p>*1. The platoon leader receives the order and develops a plan for the road march IAW T&amp;EO 7-3/4-1605, Develop and Communicate a Plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Organizes the platoon for the march.</li> <li>b. Determines the route, if not provided.</li> <li>c. Sets the order of march.</li> <li>d. Determines the soldier's load, based on the mission and input from the platoon sergeant.</li> <li>e. Establishes control measures.</li> <li>f. Plans for actions on enemy contact to include indirect fires along the route.</li> <li>g. Plans for the evacuation of any casualties.</li> </ul> <p>*2. The platoon leader, platoon sergeant, and squad leaders prepare the platoon for the mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prepare IAW T&amp;EO 7-3/4-1606, Prepare for Combat.</li> <li>b. Inspect the platoon's personnel for the soldier's load, equipment, and readiness to move before beginning movement.</li> <li>c. Ensure all personnel are briefed on the plan and the route.</li> </ul>		
---	--	--

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

<p>*3. The platoon leader directs the quartering party to the start point.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reconnoiters the route and the next location.</li> <li>b. Provides guides along the route as necessary.</li> </ol> <p>4. The platoon maintains local security throughout the movement.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintains all-round observation at all times, to include air guards.</li> <li>b. Orients weapons, as directed, to establish platoon local security.</li> <li>c. Uses the proper dispersion and camouflage.</li> <li>d. Reports and engages any enemy observed, as ordered.</li> </ol> <p>*5. The platoon leader conducts halts at regular intervals IAW the platoon's SOP (as the tactical situation permits) to rest the personnel.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Positions the squads to ensure local security.</li> <li>b. Adjusts and redistributes equipment and performs foot hygiene.</li> <li>c. Ensures leaders check the condition of all personnel (for foot problems).</li> <li>d. Performs equipment cross loading as necessary.</li> </ol> <p>*6. The platoon leader controls the platoon.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reacts to enemy contact IAW ARTEP 7-8-DRILL, Battle Drill 2, React to Contact, or platoon SOP.</li> <li>b. Reports the platoon position to the company, as required, as a six-digit coordinate or uses company-specified control graphics.</li> </ol> <p>7. The platoon arrives at the check or release points at the time specified.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Meets the quartering party guides.</li> <li>b. Passes through the release point without halting.</li> </ol> <p>*A leader task step.</p>		
--	--	--

**TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK**

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

See Appendix A for task numbers and titles that correlate to the numbers listed below by STP and skill level.

**Common Tasks**

Skill Level 1

20, 21, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 31, 33, 36, 37, 38, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 47, 48, 49, 50, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 64, 65, 66, 67, 68, 71, 72, 73, 74, 93, 95, 96, 97

Skill Level 2

6, 7, 8, 9, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 25, 26

Skill Level 3

12

Skill Level 4

4

**MOS 11B Tasks**

Skill Level 1

6, 41, 42, 43, 44, 48

Skill Level 2

1, 2, 8, 14, 15, 17, 18, 19

Skill Level 3

4, 5

Skill Level 4

4, 9, 10

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK: ENGAGE MOVING UNIT**

**CONDITIONS:** The OPFOR squad is ordered to establish an ambush along a likely enemy avenue of approach. The squad may operate separately or as part of a larger unit.

**STANDARDS:**

1. The OPFOR prevents the platoon from meeting its specified time schedule.
2. The OPFOR forces the platoon to deviate from its specified route.
3. The OPFOR prevents the platoon from reaching its assigned destination.
4. The OPFOR surprises the platoon main body.

**ELEMENT: PLATOON/SQUADS**

**TASK: PERFORM PASSAGE OF LINES (7-3/4-1125) (FM 7-8)**

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

TRAINING STATUS T P U (circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is required to conduct a passage of lines forward or rearward. The enemy can attack with indirect fire, aircraft, or company-size mounted or dismounted forces. Some iterations should be performed in MOPP4. Civilians, government organizations, NGOs, PVOs, and the international press are present on the battlefield. The US forces are operating under a restrictive ROE.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon moves all personnel and equipment through the stationary unit NLT the time specified in the order. The platoon main body is not surprised by the enemy during departure of friendly lines. The US forces comply with the ROE. Collateral damage is limited.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES** **GO NO-GO**

<p>*1. The platoon leader receives the company OPORD and initiates planning and coordination for the operation IAW T&amp;EO 7-3/4-1605, Develop and Communicate a Plan.</p> <p>a. Arranges for a specific time and location for coordinating the passage of his platoon with the stationary platoon leader (squad leaders, FO, and platoon sergeant should be included).</p> <p>b. Develops a plan that reduces the disruption of both his platoon and the stationary platoon.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Conducts the passage as quickly as possible.</li> <li>• Avoids masking the fires of the stationary platoon.</li> <li>• Coordinates early in the planning process and maintains coordination and liaison during execution.</li> <li>• Increases the support from the stationary platoon.</li> <li>• Plans for likely contingences.</li> <li>• When possible, bypasses the stationary platoon.</li> <li>• When possible, avoids passing through a unit that is in contact with the enemy.</li> </ul> <p>*2. The platoon leader or platoon sergeant meets with the stationary platoon.</p>		
---	--	--

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

- | TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>a. Provides the platoon's identification.</p> <p>b. Provides the size of the platoon.</p> <p>c. Provides the time(s) of departure and return.</p> <p>d. Provides the area of the unit's operation.</p> <p>*3. The platoon leader or platoon sergeant coordinates with the stationary platoon leader.</p> <p>a. Plans for exchange of enemy intelligence.</p> <p>b. Plans for reconnaissance of the position.</p> <p>c. Plans for exchange of tactical plans.</p> <p>d. Plans for exchange of communication information.</p> <p>e. Plans for recognition signals for the passage, both near and far.</p> <p>f. Plans for guides (down to squad level) and traffic control measures.</p> <p>g. Plans for security measures for the passage.</p> <p>h. Plans for specific control measures for the passage—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Contact points.</li> <li>• Passage lanes.</li> <li>• Passage points.</li> <li>• Release points.</li> <li>• Assembly areas (rearward passage).</li> </ul> <p>i. Coordinates fire support responsibilities and fire plans.</p> <p>j. Determines transfer of responsibility or action on enemy contact during the passage of lines.</p> <p>k. Coordinates CSS (items left on the position).</p> <p>l. Checks with other leaders who will be operating in the same area or adjacent areas, and exchanges any information that will assist them with their operation.</p> <p>*4. During reconnaissance, the platoon leader and squad leaders identify and locate all key positions and routes.</p> <p>a. Locate passage lanes.</p> <p>b. Locate passage points.</p> <p>c. Locate obstacles and safety lanes.</p> <p>d. Locate release points.</p> <p>e. Locate assembly areas (for rearward passage).</p> <p>f. Locate contact points, start points, and routes.</p> |    |       |



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>g. Locate positions of the stationary force during the passage.</p> <p>h. Locate CS and CSS elements (CPs, OPs, and antiarmor and mortar positions).</p> <p>i. Locate enemy positions.</p> <p>5. The platoon leader maintains OPSEC during the operation IAW T&amp;EO 7-3/4-1409, Maintain Operations Security.</p> <p>a. Ensures the reconnaissance and other activities do not reveal the operation to the enemy.</p> <p>b. Moves the platoon to a secure position as designated in the primary coordination meeting by the stationary leader.</p> <p>*6. Before reentry passage, the platoon leader issues a contingency plan before moving out to make final coordination.</p> <p>a. Briefs squads on what is happening and what is going to happen.</p> <p>b. Confirms chain of command.</p> <p>c. Actions to be taken on contact.</p> <p>d. Actions to be taken in the absence of the leader.</p> <p>e. Provides time schedule, suspenses, and any limits on action.</p> <p>7. The platoon moves, at the designated time, to a covered and concealed position near the contact point, as directed by the platoon leader.</p> <p>a. Links up with guides that lead the security element from the contact point(s) through the passage lane(s) and passage point(s) to the release point(s).</p> <p>b. Clears the area forward of the release point(s) to the first covered and concealed position using the security element(s).</p> <p>c. Moves forward to the release point(s), when the area is cleared.</p> <p>d. Ensures the guides identify and account for all personnel passing through the passage point(s), contact point(s), and release points(s).</p> <p>8. The platoon is counted through the release points by the platoon sergeant.</p>		

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

- | TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <p>a. Provides the number of personnel in the platoon.</p> <p>b. Tells how long to wait at the release points.</p> <p>c. Confirms the running password.</p> <p>d. Ensures movement is continuous throughout the passage.</p> <p>e. Conducts a security halt after the platoon has moved beyond the stationary platoon unit's FPF.</p> <p>*9. Both platoon leaders are collocated to observe critical areas, to make timely decisions, and to facilitate battle handover.</p> <p>a. Ensure the platoon sergeant does not move forward from the release point until the leader is sure that he will not have to withdraw through the passage point.</p> <p>b. Ensure when squads have used separate passage points, the platoon reforms by linkup IAW T&amp;EO 7-3/4-1128, Perform Linkup. The platoon moves to the objective or ORP after the linkup.</p> <p>*10. The platoon leader directs the platoon to make a reentry through friendly lines.</p> <p>a. Establishes a reentry rally point.</p> <p>NOTE: If in contact with the enemy, the platoon does not halt. Contact party or guides from the stationary platoon leads the platoon through the passage points, or long-range recognition signals are used to keep moving.</p> <p>b. Contacts the forward unit by radio and tells them, by use of arranged code word, that the platoon is ready to reenter. (The platoon leader may keep the platoon outside of friendly lines until daylight.)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Before reentry, if radio communications are possible, a reconnaissance and security team use the challenge and password to contact an OP. The OP then contacts the stationary platoon leader.</li> <li>• If no communications can be established and no OPs can be found, the platoon leader directs a small security team to reconnoiter for the contact point.</li> </ul> |    |       |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Confirms the message is acknowledged, and directs a security team to the contact point.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The security team establishes contact with the guide (far and near recognition signals).</li> <li>• The security team signals the platoon forward, or goes back and leads the platoon to the passage point.</li> </ul> <p>d. Directs the platoon sergeant to count and identify each squad as they pass through the passage point.</p> <p>e. Follows the guides, without halting, to a secure area behind the stationary platoon.</p> <p>*11. The platoon leader reports to the CP of the stationary platoon. He gives the commander tactical information concerning the commander's area of responsibility.</p> <p>*12. The platoon leader rejoins the platoon and moves to a secure area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Debriefs the platoon.</li> <li>b. Consolidates and reorganizes as required IAW T&amp;EO 7-3/4-1607, Perform Consolidation and Reorganization.</li> </ul> <p>*A leader task step.</p>		

**TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK**

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							

### **SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

See Appendix A for task numbers and titles that correlate to the numbers listed below by STP and skill level.

#### **Common Tasks**

Skill Level 1

20, 21, 24, 25, 64, 65, 66, 67, 68, 71, 72, 73, 93, 95, 96, 97

Skill Level 2

6, 7, 8, 9, 25, 26

Skill Level 3

12

Skill Level 4

4

#### **MOS 11B Tasks**

Skill Level 1

29, 41, 42, 43, 44, 48

Skill Level 2

1, 2, 8, 14, 15, 17, 18, 19

Skill Level 3

4, 5

Skill Level 4

4, 8, 9, 10

### **OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

#### **TASK: COUNTER PASSAGE OF LINES**

**CONDITIONS:** The OPFOR squad is ordered to establish a defense to prevent passage of enemy forces. The squad may operate separately or as part of a larger unit.

#### **STANDARDS:**

1. The OPFOR delays the passage.
2. The OPFOR prevents the platoon from moving all personnel through the stationary unit.
3. The OPFOR engages the main body of either the moving or stationary unit during the passage.

**ELEMENT: PLATOON/SQUAD**

**TASK: CLEAR A BUILDING (7-3/4-1110) (FM 7-8, FM 90-10-1)**

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

TRAINING STATUS T P U (circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is operating as a part of the company in a MOUT environment. The platoon identifies enemy of unknown size in a building and is required to clear the building. Some iterations should be performed in MOPP4. Civilians, government organizations, NGOs, PVOs, and the international press are present on the battlefield. The US forces are operating under a restrictive ROE.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon kills, captures, or forces the withdrawal of all enemy in the building. The platoon maintains a sufficient force capable of repelling an enemy counterattack and conducting further combat operations. The US forces comply with the ROE. Collateral damage is limited.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

**GO NO-GO**

<p>*1. The platoon leader organizes the platoon into a support element and an assault element.</p> <p>2. The platoon leader organizes the assault element into room clearing teams, consisting of three personnel minimum or four personnel (a fire team maximum). The exact number of clearing teams is based on the factors of METT-T. The assault element carries as much ammunition as possible, especially extra grenades.</p> <p>3. The support element provides fire support for the assault force (M60s/M249s are positioned with the support element).</p> <p>4. The assault element lessens the effects of enemy defensive fires during movement to the objective. (See T&amp;EO 7-3/4-1134, Move Tactically.)</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Uses covered and concealed routes (to include rooftops); exploits limited visibility conditions whenever possible.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">b. Conducts movement only after enemy defensive fires are suppressed or obscured.</p>		
--	--	--

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES****GO NO-GO**

- | TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO NO-GO |  |
|---|----------|--|
| <p>c. Moves along routes that do not mask friendly suppressive fires.</p> <p>d. Crosses open areas rapidly under the concealment of smoke and the suppression of enemy targets provided by the support force.</p> <p>*5. The platoon sergeant controls the actions of the support element.</p> <p>a. Assigns each soldier and key weapon a target or area to cover.</p> <p>b. Suppresses and or impairs enemy gunners within the objective building and adjacent buildings.</p> <p>c. Isolates the objective building with direct and indirect fires to prevent enemy withdrawal, reinforcement, or counterattack.</p> <p>d. Uses direct fire weapons to destroy enemy positions.</p> <p>e. Increases the support element's rate of fire just before the assault element enters the building.</p> <p>f. Shifts supporting fires to the upper windows, and then shifts to adjacent buildings as the assault element enters the building from ground level, or shifts to lower windows when entering through an upper story.</p> <p>g. Provides replacements and ammunition to the assault force, as required.</p> <p>6. The assault element under the platoon leader's control assaults the objective building.</p> <p>a. Enters the building at the highest level possible.</p> <p>b. Enters the first floor only when forced to do so.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Approaches from enemy flank or rear.</li> <li>• Blows an entrance through a wall.</li> <li>• Throws (cooked off, at the most two seconds) grenades through doors or windows.</li> </ul> <p>c. Secures the entry point and covering staircases and other routes leading to upper and lower stories once inside the building.</p> <p>d. Clears the rooms first that overlook the approaches to the building.</p> |          |  |

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

**GO NO-GO**

7. The assault element clears each room in the objective building IAW ARTEP 7-8-DRILL, Battle Drill 6, Enter and Clear a Building (Platoon); and Battle Drill 6A, Enter a Building and Clear a Room (Squad).

- a. Marks the cleared rooms (IAW the platoon SOP).
- b. Consolidates and continues the attack.
- c. Positions teams, as directed by the assault element leader, to secure entry points, hallways, stairs, and cleared rooms from enemy infiltration.

8. The platoon consolidates and reorganizes in the cleared building to repel enemy counterattack. (See T&EO 7-3/4-1607, Perform Consolidation and Reorganization.)

- a. Positions personnel to cover enemy routes of counterattack and infiltration into the building.
- b. Redistributes ammunition and requests resupply, as required.
- c. Treats and evacuates casualties.
- d. Marks the building to show that it has been cleared. Also, marks entry points (IAW the platoon SOP).
- e. Establishes hasty defensive positions, if required. (See T&EO 7-3/4-1115, Execute Defense; and 7-3/4-1118, Defend MOUT/Building.)
- f. Continues its mission.

\*A leader task step.

--	--

**TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK**

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

See Appendix A for task numbers and titles that correlate to the numbers listed below by STP and skill level.

**Common Tasks****Skill Level 1**

20, 21, 24, 25, 36, 37, 38, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 47, 48, 49, 50, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 64, 65, 66, 67, 68, 71, 72, 73, 93, 95, 97

**Skill Level 2**

6, 7, 8, 9, 11, 25

**Skill Level 3**

12

**Skill Level 4**

4

**MOS 11B Tasks****Skill Level 1**

6, 14, 21, 26, 29, 30, 31, 32, 38, 41, 42, 43, 44, 48, 49, 51

**Skill Level 2**

1, 2, 7, 8, 14, 15, 16, 17, 19

**Skill Level 3**

1, 4, 5

**Skill Level 4**

4, 9, 10

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS****TASK: DEFEND BUILDING**

**CONDITIONS:** The OPFOR squad is ordered to occupy a defensive position in a built-up area. The squad is operating separately or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has indirect fire available.

**STANDARDS:**

The OPFOR prevents the platoon from clearing the building.

- a. Retains forces in the building.
- b. Counterattacks, regains, and maintains a foothold in the building (at least one room).



**ELEMENT:** PLATOON/SQUAD

**TASK:** DEFEND MOUT/BUILDING (7-3/4-1118)  
(FM 7-8, FM 90-10-1)

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

TRAINING STATUS T P U (circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is ordered to occupy a defensive position in a built-up area. The platoon is operating separately or as part of the company. Both friendly and enemy units have indirect fire available. Some iterations should be performed in MOPP4. Civilians, government organizations, NGOs, PVOs, and the international press are present on the battlefield. The US forces are operating under a restrictive ROE.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon completes all specified defensive preparations NLT the time specified in the order. The platoon main body is not surprised by the enemy. The platoon denies the enemy from gaining a foothold or any penetrations of its position, or prevents enemy units of company-size or smaller from moving through the area, or destroys attacking enemy units of company-size or smaller, or forces the enemy to withdraw. The platoon continues follow-on operations. The US forces comply with the ROE. Collateral damage is limited.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES** **GO NO-GO**

<p>*1. The platoon leader develops a tentative plan IAW T&amp;EO 7-3/4-1605, Develop and Communicate a Plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducts reconnaissance of the position with the squad leaders, RATELO, FO, and security element.</li> <li>b. Assigns the squad sectors and OP locations.</li> <li>c. Analyzes the defensive sector to recommend to the company commander the best use of obstacles and supporting fires.</li> </ul> <p>2. The platoon occupies the position and sets up security.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Emplaces at least one OP with communications within five minutes of occupation so that the main body is warned before an enemy attack.</li> <li>b. Emplaces the platoon early warning system or devices before dark or other limited visibility.</li> <li>c. Sets up the chemical-alarm system for monitoring within five minutes of occupying the position.</li> </ul>		
---	--	--

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*3. The leaders position crew-served weapons and special weapons.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Position antiarmor weapons to cover armored avenues of approach.</li> <li>b. Position weapons inside buildings with adequate space and ventilation for backblast (on upper floors, if possible, for long-range top shots).</li> <li>c. Position MGs/M249s to cover dismounted avenues of approach. (Place them near ground level to increase grazing fires. If ground rubble obstructs grazing fires, MGs/M249s are placed in the upper stories of the building.)</li> <li>d. Ensures weapons are mutually supporting and are tied in with adjacent units.</li> </ol> <p>*4. The platoon leader establishes leader positions.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Places the platoon CP in a covered and concealed location.</li> <li>b. Establishes an OP where the platoon leader can view and control the battle.</li> <li>c. Has squad leaders occupy fighting positions with their squads.</li> </ol> <p>*5. The squad/team leaders position remaining squad members.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assign each member a position with primary and secondary sectors of fire.</li> <li>b. Make sure positions permit interlocking fires.</li> <li>c. Improve positions as time permits. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Sandbags for overhead and all-round protection.</li> <li>• Wire mesh over windows (open at the bottom to allow grenades to be dropped out).</li> <li>• Loopholes/fire prevention measures.</li> </ul> </li> </ol> <p>*6. The platoon leader makes coordination with adjacent units.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Establishes responsibility for overlapping enemy avenues of approach between adjacent squads and platoons.</li> <li>b. Exchanges information on OP locations, unit signals, and passage points.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>7. The RATELO installs wire communications.</p> <p>a. Lays wire between the platoon CP and the squads.</p> <p>b. Employs switchboards or hot loops as appropriate.</p> <p>NOTE: Wire communications with OPs must be immediately installed, when OPs are established.</p> <p>8. The platoon constructs barriers and obstacles to deny the enemy access to streets, underground passages, buildings, and to slow his movement (including rooftops and in all buildings).</p> <p>a. Integrates barriers and or obstacles with the platoon's key weapons.</p> <p>b. Covers all barriers and obstacles by fire and or observation (both direct and indirect), mined, and booby-trapped.</p> <p>*9. The platoon leader and FO plan and coordinate indirect fires to support the platoon defense.</p> <p>a. Cover likely avenues of approach.</p> <p>b. Cover obstacles.</p> <p>c. Cover counterattack plans.</p> <p>*10. The leaders designate alternate and supplementary positions.</p> <p>a. Give each soldier and key weapon an alternate and supplementary position.</p> <p>b. Designate and, when appropriate, mark routes between primary, alternate, and supplementary positions.</p> <p>11. The platoon improves movement routes within the platoon position.</p> <p>a. Improves routes by digging trenches, using sewers and tunnels, creating mouseholes, and emplacing ropes for climbing and rappelling.</p> <p>b. Marks routes between positions.</p> <p>*12. The platoon leader develops a counterattack plan for each likely enemy situation.</p> <p>a. Ensures the counterattack force is allocated demolitions, antiarmor assets, and extra grenades.</p> <p>b. Designates and, if appropriate, marks routes for counterattack.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Ensures the counterattack plan is rehearsed during the day and at night.</p> <p>*13. The platoon leader prepares and rehearses the withdrawal plan.</p> <p>a. Designates and, if appropriate, marks the withdrawal routes.</p> <p>b. Ensures leaders plan and disseminate primary and alternate withdrawal signals.</p> <p>c. Ensures the withdrawal plan is rehearsed during the day and at night.</p> <p>14. The platoon defends against an assault.</p> <p>a. Uses direct and indirect fire to separate the enemy fighting vehicles from the dismounted personnel that are providing security for the vehicles.</p> <p>b. Executes the company or platoon barrier plan to impede and canalize the vehicles and personnel into planned fires.</p> <p>c. Employs smoke to blind the vehicles.</p> <p>d. Engages the vehicles with organic and attached antiarmor weapons (simultaneously, if possible), command-detonated mines and demolitions, and field-expedient antiarmor weapons.</p> <p>e. Commits the reserve to defeat or block a penetration, if required.</p> <p>f. Moves elements, as directed by the platoon leader, between primary, alternate, and supplementary positions to complete the destruction or expulsion of the enemy force.</p> <p>g. Uses direct and indirect FPFs to suppress, block, and destroy dismounted, enemy troop formations, as ordered by the commander.</p> <p>15. The platoon consolidates and reorganizes during lulls in the fighting.</p> <p>a. Consolidates and reorganizes squads and other elements IAW T&amp;EO 7-3/4-1607, Perform Consolidation and Reorganization.</p> <p>b. Transmits status reports, requests for support and resupply, and enemy information to the company CP IAW the platoon SOP and current orders.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Replaces damaged barriers and obstacles, repairs positions, restores communications, and posts OPs that were withdrawn during the engagement. d. Resumes security and patrolling activities. e. Continues to defend until a change of mission is received.  *A leader task step.		

**TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK**

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

See Appendix A for task numbers and titles that correlate to the numbers listed below by STP and skill level.

**Common Tasks**

Skill Level 1

20, 21, 23, 25, 36, 37, 38, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 47, 48, 49, 50, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 62, 63, 64, 65, 66, 67, 68, 71, 72, 73, 93, 95, 97

Skill Level 2

6, 7, 8, 9, 11, 12, 13, 25

Skill Level 3

8, 9, 10, 11, 12

Skill Level 4

2, 3, 4, 5

**MOS 11B Tasks**

Skill Level 1

4, 5, 6, 14, 21, 26, 30, 38, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 48, 49, 50, 51, 54, 55, 56, 57

Skill Level 2

1, 2, 3, 7, 8, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19

Skill Level 3

1, 5, 6, 7

Skill Level 4

1, 9

### **OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

#### **TASK: ATTACK (MOUT)**

**CONDITIONS:** The OPFOR platoon is ordered to attack in a built-up area. The OPFOR is acting separately or as part of a larger unit. The OPFOR has indirect fire available.

#### **STANDARDS:**

1. The OPFOR surprises the main body.
2. The OPFOR avoids becoming fixed.
3. The OPFOR accomplishes the assigned task.
  - a. Seizes the assigned terrain.

**OR**
  - b. Penetrates the defense with at least 75 percent of its force.

**OR**
  - c. Forces the platoon to withdraw.

**OR**
  - d. Maintains the specified rate of movement.

**ELEMENT: PLATOON/SQUAD**

**TASK: PERFORM STAY-BEHIND OPERATIONS**  
(7-3/4-1116) (FM 7-8)

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

TRAINING STATUS T P U (circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon has been ordered to act as a stay-behind force or has been cut off from friendly units. The enemy has indirect fire and CAS capabilities. The platoon must provide its own security. Some iterations should be performed in MOPP4. Civilians, government organizations, NGOs, PVOs, and the international press are present on the battlefield. The US forces are operating under a restrictive ROE.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon prevents the enemy from learning its location, strength, and intentions. The platoon avoids decisive engagement. The platoon accomplishes its assigned combat tasks according to the standards for those specific tasks. The platoon links up with friendly forces at the time and place specified by the orders. The US forces comply with the ROE. Collateral damage is limited.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

- |  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>*1. The platoon leader makes an estimate of the situation and plans for a deliberate stay-behind operation IAW T&amp;EO 7-3/4-1605, Develop and Communicate a Plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Task organizes the platoon for the operation.</li> <li>b. Uses only those personnel and equipment that are needed.</li> <li>c. Evacuates wounded personnel, inoperable equipment, or excess items.</li> <li>d. Requests additional CS or CSS assets, as needed (FO personnel, aidmen, engineers, antiarmor weapons, machine guns, demolitions, or special equipment).</li> <li>e. Plans for deception of the enemy or ensures the platoon actions support the higher unit's deception plan.</li> </ul> <p>*2. The platoon leader conducts reconnaissance of the area to confirm or deny his plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducts a map reconnaissance.</li> <li>b. Conducts a ground reconnaissance as time permits.</li> </ul> <p>Identifies—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Suitable sites for patrol bases.</li> </ul> |    |       |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• OPs.</li> <li>• Caches.</li> <li>• Water sources.</li> <li>• Avenues of approach (mounted and foot).</li> <li>• Kill zones.</li> <li>• Engagement areas.</li> <li>• Likely enemy objectives and positions.</li> <li>• Covered and concealed approach routes.</li> </ul> <p>*3. The platoon sergeant assists the platoon leader in preparing the platoon for the operation IAW T&amp;EO 7-3/4-1606, Prepare for Combat.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Stocks additional supplies for support when not in contact with friendly units.</li> <li>b. Plans possible caches.</li> <li>c. Plans for EPW and casualty evacuation.</li> </ul> <p>4. If the platoon is cut off from friendly units and has standing orders to conduct unplanned stay-behind operations, the platoon leader—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Establishes local security, to include OPs and early warning devices and notifies the company.</li> <li>b. Makes an estimate based on the enemy situation and the status of elements under platoon control and plans the operation.</li> <li>c. Decides whether to remain in position or to move to a hide position in a different location based on the situation estimate.</li> <li>d. Follows the same steps as a deliberate operation once in position.</li> </ul> <p>5. The platoon conducts the stay-behind operation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Executes deception activities IAW the order.</li> <li>b. Moves undetected to the hide position.</li> <li>c. Remains undetected by the enemy during the operation. (See T&amp;EO 7-3/4-1409, Maintain Operations Security.)</li> </ul> <p>6. The platoon conducts combat operations against the enemy.</p>		



<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
a. Attacks high-priority targets in enemy's rear (C <sup>2</sup> , CS, CSS, lines of communication) based on the commander's intent or the platoon mission. b. Collects intelligence on enemy forces. c. Calls for and controls artillery and air strikes. d. Avoids decisive engagement by the enemy unless required by the commander's intent.  7. The platoon links up with friendly forces. a. Determines the manner of regaining contact with friendly units. b. Conducts linkup as a moving or a stationary unit IAW T&EO 7-3/4-1128, Perform Linkup. c. Returns to friendly unit NLT the time required by higher headquarters.  *A leader task step.		

**TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK**

<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
<b>TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED</b>							
<b>TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"</b>							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

See Appendix A for task numbers and titles that correlate to the numbers listed below by STP and skill level.

**Common Tasks**

**Skill Level 1**

20, 21, 24, 25, 36, 37, 38, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 47, 48, 49, 50, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 64, 65, 66, 67, 71, 72, 73, 75, 78, 79, 80, 81, 82, 83, 84, 85, 86, 87, 88, 89, 90, 91, 92, 93, 94, 95, 96, 97

**Skill Level 2**

6, 9, 11, 12, 13, 24, 25, 26

Skill Level 3  
10, 12

Skill Level 4  
NONE

**MOS 11B Tasks**

Skill Level 1  
14, 21, 26, 29, 30, 38, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 46, 48, 52

Skill Level 2  
1, 2, 8, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19

Skill Level 3  
4, 5

Skill Level 4  
4, 7, 8, 9, 10

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK: PERFORM REAR AREA OPERATIONS**

**CONDITIONS:** The OPFOR platoon is ordered to perform rear area operations that may include the following tasks: find, fix, and destroy stay-behind forces; protect lines with communications; protect installations and units; and act against enemy penetrations. The OPFOR may act separately or as part of a larger unit. The OPFOR has indirect fire available.

**STANDARDS:**

1. The OPFOR determines the platoon's intentions.
2. The OPFOR determines the platoon's strength (echelon: squad, platoon, company; or strength: plus or minus 10 percent).
3. The OPFOR fixes the platoon or forces it to withdraw from the area.
4. The OPFOR prevents the platoon from linking up with other units.

**ELEMENT:** PLATOON/SQUAD

**TASK:** PERFORM LINKUP (7-3/4-1128) (FM 7-8)

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

TRAINING STATUS T P U (circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon leader orders the platoon to link up with a unit. Platoon-size enemy elements are operating in the area. (The platoon could be the stationary or moving unit.) Some iterations should be performed in MOPP4. Civilians, government organizations, NGOs, PVOs, and the international press are present on the battlefield. The US forces are operating under a restrictive ROE.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The units link up at the time and place specified in the order. The main bodies of the units are not surprised by the enemy. The linkup units establish a consolidated chain of command. The US forces comply with the ROE. Collateral damage is limited.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

- \*1. The platoon leader identifies the tentative linkup site by map reconnaissance or a linkup site is designated by higher headquarters.
  - a. Be easy to recognize.
  - b. Provide cover and concealment.
  - c. Be away from natural lines of drift.
  - d. Be defensible.
  - e. Provide multiple access and escape routes.
  - f. Must not be located on terrain the enemy is likely to occupy (key terrain, possible enemy objectives).
- \*2. The platoon leader coordinates with the linkup unit.
  - a. Exchanges frequencies, call signs, and codes.
  - b. Confirms visual signals and alternatives (near and far recognition signals).
  - c. Exchanges fire coordination measures (for example, restrictive fire line).
  - d. Coordinates command relationship with the linkup unit. (Who is in charge if the enemy attacks during linkup?) (Who is in charge after linkup?)
  - e. Plans actions following linkup.

GO	NO-GO

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>f. Exchanges control measures (contact points, checkpoints, phase line, and others, as required). Establishes how long the linkup site will be occupied (that is, length of time or until percentage of the unit arrives).</p> <p>3. The stationary unit performs linkup actions.</p> <p>a. Occupies the linkup rally point before the time stated in the platoon order.</p> <p>b. Establishes all-round security.</p> <p>c. Establishes communications with the other unit.</p> <p>d. Prepares to accept the moving unit at the linkup point.</p> <p>4. The moving unit performs linkup actions.</p> <p>a. Halts at a safe distance from the linkup point in a covered and concealed position (linkup rally point), and establishes local security.</p> <p>b. Establishes communications with the stationary unit.</p> <p>*5. The platoon leader and the contact team (security element with communications) prepare to make physical contact with the stationary unit.</p> <p>a. Issue contingency plans to the contact team and to the platoon sergeant, who remains with the main body of the platoon in the linkup rally point.</p> <p>b. Maintain communications with the platoon.</p> <p>c. Position the security element in a covered and concealed position that overwatches the linkup point.</p> <p>d. Verify far and near recognition signals of the stationary unit.</p> <p>e. Do not block the security element's observation and fields of fire while approaching the linkup point.</p> <p>f. Link up with the members from the stationary unit and exchange oral authentication.</p> <p>g. Conduct final coordination with the stationary unit.</p> <p>h. Guide the stationary unit contact team to the platoon linkup rally point.</p> <p>6. The stationary unit contact team executes the linkup procedures.</p> <p>a. Guides the moving unit from its linkup rally point to the stationary unit linkup rally point.</p>		

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

- b. Completes the linkup by the time specified in the OPORD.
  - c. Alerts its main body before bringing the moving unit to the stationary unit linkup rally point.
  - 7. The platoon continues its mission IAW the OPORD.
- \*A leader task step.

--	--

**TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK**

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

See Appendix A for task numbers and titles that correlate to the numbers listed below by STP and skill level.

**Common Tasks**

Skill Level 1

20, 21, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 31, 33, 68, 71, 72, 73, 93, 95, 97

Skill Level 2

9, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 25

Skill Level 3

12

Skill Level 4

4

**MOS 11B Tasks**

Skill Level 1

29, 41, 42, 43, 44, 48

Skill Level 2

1, 2, 14, 15, 19

Skill Level 3

2, 5

Skill Level 4  
NONE

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK: COUNTER LINKUP**

**CONDITIONS:** The OPFOR platoon is ordered to disrupt and counter enemy linkups by finding, fixing, and destroying enemy elements. The OPFOR may act separately or as part of a larger unit. The OPFOR has indirect fire available.

**STANDARDS:**

1. The OPFOR surprises the main body of at least one element.
2. The OPFOR prevents the linkup at the specified time and location.

**ELEMENT:** PLATOON/SQUAD

**TASK:** PERFORM INFILTRATION/EXFILTRATION  
(7-3/4-1137) (FM 7-8)

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

TRAINING STATUS T P U (circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is operating separately or as part of a company. The platoon must provide its own security. Both friendly and enemy units have indirect fire available. The platoon must move through an enemy area that has positions with gaps and weakly held areas. Some iterations should be performed in MOPP4. Civilians, government organizations, NGOs, PVOs, and the international press are present on the battlefield. The US forces are operating under a restrictive ROE.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon moves through the enemy area without the enemy determining the size, composition, destination, or intentions of the platoon. The platoon links up sufficient leaders, personnel, and equipment to accomplish the assigned task at the time and location specified in the order, or returns to friendly controlled areas for further operations. The US forces comply with the ROE. Collateral damage is limited.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

<p>*1. The platoon leader plans the infiltration IAW T&amp;EO 7-3/4-1605, Develop and Communicate a Plan.</p> <p>a. Conducts reconnaissance to find gaps, weaknesses, routes, and positions in an enemy area. (Lanes may be identified by the platoon reconnaissance.)</p> <p>b. Coordinates for passage of lines with forward unit, if necessary (T&amp;EO 7-3/4-1125, Perform Passage of Lines). Coordinates with flank units.</p> <p>c. Task organizes to facilitate control of the infiltration with the largest elements that can move undetected.</p> <p>d. Assigns the lanes to subordinate elements and squad release points.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The subordinate leaders decide on specific infiltration routes, release points, and methods. Methods that may be used are individual lanes, staggered elements, or unit movement.</li> </ul> <p>e. Rehearses infiltration actions (use terrain models).</p>		
--	--	--

## TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES

## GO NO-GO

- | TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO NO-GO |
|--|----------|
| <p>f. Tailors the soldier's load to the minimum required for the operation.</p> <p>g. Makes contingency plans for enemy contact (before, during, and after infiltration) with all or part of the infiltrating platoon.</p> <p>h. Designates primary and alternate linkup points for elements (T&amp;EO 7-3/4-1128, Perform Linkup).</p> <p>2. The platoon infiltrates or exfiltrates.</p> <p>a. Conducts passage of lines, as needed.<br/>(See T&amp;EO 7-3/4-1125, Perform Passage of Lines.)</p> <p>b. Breaks down into infiltrating elements at designated release points.</p> <p>c. Takes advantage of gaps and weaknesses in enemy positions, limited visibility, bad weather, and broken terrain affording cover and concealment.</p> <p>d. Avoids enemy contact.</p> <p>e. Records and reports ineffective enemy fire.</p> <p>f. Maintains dispersion and strict noise, light, and camouflage discipline.</p> <p>g. Enforces radio silence until either the objective or the ORP is reached by the entire platoon.</p> <p>h. Uses the method of infiltration determined during planning.</p> <p>3. The platoon consolidates.</p> <p>a. Moves the infiltrating elements to the linkup points at the enemy's rear or on his flanks.</p> <p>b. Conducts linkup of all elements (T&amp;EO 7-3/4-1128, Perform Linkup) by the specified time.</p> <p>c. Moves to an ORP or assembly area.</p> <p>d. Reports to the company headquarters, if required, and continues the operation.</p> |          |

\*A leader task step.



**TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK**

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

See Appendix A for task numbers and titles that correlate to the numbers listed below by STP and skill level.

**Common Tasks**

Skill Level 1

20, 21, 24, 25, 65, 66, 67, 68, 71, 72, 73, 93, 95, 97

Skill Level 2

6, 7, 8, 9

Skill Level 3

10, 12

Skill Level 4

4

**MOS 11B Tasks**

Skill Level 1

6, 29, 41, 42, 43, 44, 48

Skill Level 2

8, 14, 15, 16, 19

Skill Level 3

4, 5

Skill Level 4

8

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK: COUNTER INFILTRATION/EXFILTRATION**

**CONDITIONS:** The OPFOR platoon/squad is ordered to block enemy penetration of the OPFOR area of operations by preventing infiltration and exfiltration by the enemy. The OPFOR may act separately or as part of a larger unit. The OPFOR has indirect fire available.

**STANDARDS:**

1. The OPFOR determines the strength of the platoon, plus or minus 10 percent, or the echelon of the unit (squad, platoon, company).
2. The OPFOR determines the type of platoon and the types of attachments.
3. The OPFOR determines the destination of the platoon.
4. The OPFOR determines the platoon's intentions.
5. The OPFOR prevents linkup by fixing or forcing the withdrawal of at least 30 percent of the platoon.
6. The OPFOR delays the linkup beyond its specified time.

**ELEMENT: PLATOON/SQUAD**

**TASK: TAKE ACTION ON CONTACT (7-3/4-1107) (FM 7-8)**

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

TRAINING STATUS T P U (circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is halted or moving. The platoon receives fires from enemy individual or crew-served weapons. Some iterations should be performed in MOPP4. Civilians, government organizations, NGOs, PVOs, and the international press are present on the battlefield. The US forces are operating under a restrictive ROE.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon returns fire immediately. The platoon locates and engages the enemy with well-aimed fire. The leader identifies the enemy positions and types of weapons (such as small arms, light machine gun). The platoon continues follow-on operations. The US forces comply with the ROE. Collateral damage is limited.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES** **GO NO-GO**

<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The lead element reacts to enemy fire.             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Immediately returns fire and takes up the nearest covered positions.</li> <li>b. Alerts the remainder of the squad to the direction of the enemy.</li> </ol> </li> <li>*2. Squad leaders control their personnel actions.             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Control fires using standard fire commands containing the following elements:                 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Alert.</li> <li>• Direction.</li> <li>• Description of target.</li> <li>• Range.</li> <li>• Method of fire (manipulation and rate of fire)</li> <li>• Command to commence firing.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Locate and engage known or suspected enemy positions with well-aimed fire.</li> <li>c. Ensure personnel maintain contact with the personnel on their left and right.</li> <li>d. Ensure personnel maintain contact with their team leaders and report the location of enemy positions.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		
---	--	--

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES****GO NO-GO**

- | TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO NO-GO |  |
|--|----------|--|
| <p>e. Check the status of their personnel.</p> <p>f. Pass all information to the platoon leader.</p> <p>g. Maintain contact with the platoon leader.</p> <p>*3. The platoon leader moves up to the squad in contact and links up with its leader.</p> <p>a. Determines whether or not the platoon must move out of an engagement area.</p> <p>b. Determines whether or not he can gain and maintain suppressive fires with his element already in contact (based on the volume and accuracy of enemy fires against the element in contact).</p> <p>c. Makes an assessment of the situation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Identifies the location of the enemy position and obstacles.</li> <li>• Identifies the size of the enemy force engaging the unit in contact.</li> <li>• Identifies the vulnerable flanks.</li> <li>• Identifies covered and concealed flanking routes to the enemy position.</li> </ul> <p>d. Determines the next course of action (for example, assault, breach, knock out a bunker, enter and clear a building or trench).</p> <p>e. Reports the situation to the company commander.</p> <p>f. Calls for and adjusts indirect fire as required.</p> <p>*4. The platoon leader decides on a course of action.</p> <p>a. Develops a plan.</p> <p>b. Issues a FRAGO.</p> <p>c. Coordinates for required support.</p> <p>d. Executes actions IAW T&amp;EOs 7-3/4-1103, Execute Assault; 7-3/4-1402, Breach an Obstacle; 7-3/4-1108, Perform Overwatch/Support by Fire; or 7-3/4-1111, Break Contact.</p> <p>5. The platoon continues the mission.</p> <p>*A leader task step.</p> |          |  |

**TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK**

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

See Appendix A for task numbers and titles that correlate to the numbers listed below by STP and skill level.

**Common Tasks**

Skill Level 1

24, 25, 36, 37, 38, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 47, 48, 49, 50, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 64, 65, 67, 68, 72, 93, 95, 97

Skill Level 2

9, 25

Skill Level 3

12

Skill Level 4

NONE

**MOS 11B Tasks**

Skill Level 1

21, 26, 38, 41, 42, 43, 44, 48

Skill Level 2

1, 2, 15, 16, 19

Skill Level 3

4

Skill Level 4

4, 10

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** ENGAGE PLATOON

**CONDITIONS:** The OPFOR squad is ordered to locate and engage friendly forces. The OPFOR may act separately or as part of a larger unit.

**STANDARDS:**

1. The OPFOR surprises the platoon.
2. The OPFOR prevents the platoon from locating and suppressing its fires.

**ELEMENT: PLATOON/SQUAD**

**TASK: BREAK CONTACT (7-3/4-1111) (FM 7-8)**

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

TRAINING STATUS T P U (circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is moving or stationary. The enemy fires on the platoon. The platoon leader orders the platoon to break contact. Some iterations should be performed in MOPP4. Civilians, government organizations, NGOs, PVOs, and the international press are present on the battlefield. The US forces are operating under a restrictive ROE.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon moves to where the enemy cannot observe or place direct fire on it. The platoon continues follow-on operations. The US forces comply with the ROE. Collateral damage is limited.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES** **GO NO-GO**

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>*1. The platoon leader gives the order to break contact.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Directs one squad in contact to support the disengagement of the remainder of the platoon.</li> <li>b. Orders the movement of one squad to a recognizable terrain feature or to the last rally point to establish a subsequent fire support area.</li> </ul> </li> <li>2. The base-of-fire element continues to suppress the enemy.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintains effective direct fire against specified targets.</li> <li>b. Uses indirect fire to suppress the enemy and mask the movement of the movement element, as available.</li> <li>c. Obscures the enemy position with smoke (hand held or M203).</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. The movement element begins its disengagement.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Uses fragmentation, concussion, and smoke grenades to mask its movement.</li> <li>b. Takes up the designated position and engages the enemy position.</li> </ul> </li> <li>*4. The platoon leader directs the base-of-fire element to move to its next location.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Uses the appropriate movement technique based on the volume and accuracy of the enemy fire.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		
---	--	--

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

- b. Takes up the designated position and engages the enemy position.
  - 5. The platoon continues to bound away from the enemy.
    - a. Continues to suppress the enemy as it breaks contact.
    - b. Continues to bound until it breaks contact, passes through a higher level support-by-fire position, or reaches the assigned position for its next mission.
    - c. Changes the direction of movement once contact is broken to reduce the ability of the enemy to place effective indirect fires on the unit.
    - d. Moves to the last designated rally point in the absence of a leader's instructions.
  - \*6. The platoon leader moves the platoon to the final rally point.
    - a. Accounts for personnel and equipment.
    - b. Reorganizes as required IAW T&EO 7-3/4-1607, Perform Consolidation and Reorganization.
    - c. Reports to the company commander.
- \*A leader task step.

--	--

**TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK**

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

See Appendix A for task numbers and titles that correlate to the numbers listed below by STP and skill level.



**Common Tasks**

**Skill Level 1**

24, 25, 36, 37, 38, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 47, 48, 49, 50, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 64, 67, 68, 93, 97

**Skill Level 2**

7, 8, 9, 25

**Skill Level 3**

12

**Skill Level 4**

NONE

**MOS 11B Tasks**

**Skill Level 1**

14, 17, 21, 26, 38, 41, 42, 43, 44, 48

**Skill Level 2**

14, 15, 16, 19

**Skill Level 3**

4

**Skill Level 4**

4, 10

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK: MAINTAIN CONTACT**

**CONDITIONS:** The OPFOR platoon/squad is ordered to gain and maintain contact with the enemy. The OPFOR may act separately or as part of a larger unit.

**STANDARDS:**

1. The OPFOR maintains observation and suppresses friendly fire.
2. The OPFOR prevents platoon maneuver.

**ELEMENT: PLATOON/SQUAD**

**TASK: REACT TO AMBUSH (7-3/4-1112) (FM 7-8)**

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

TRAINING STATUS T P U (circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is in a prepared kill zone. The enemy initiates the ambush with a casualty-producing device and a high volume of fire. Some iterations should be performed in MOPP4. Civilians, government organizations, NGOs, PVOs, and the international press are present on the battlefield. The US forces are operating under a restrictive ROE.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon reacts immediately to the ambush based on the type (near, far). The platoon disengages the element in the kill zone or forces the enemy to withdraw. The platoon continues follow-on operations. The US forces comply with the ROE. Collateral damage is limited.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

<p>1. The personnel in the kill zone react to a near ambush (within hand-grenade range).</p> <p>a. Immediately return fire, assume covered positions, and throw fragmentation, concussion, and smoke grenades.</p> <p>b. Immediately after the grenades detonate, individually assault through the ambush using individual fire and movement.</p> <p>2. The personnel not in the kill zone react to a near ambush.</p> <p>a. Identify enemy positions.</p> <p>b. Initiate immediate suppressive fires against the enemy.</p> <p>c. Take up covered positions.</p> <p>d. Shift fires as the personnel in the kill zone assault through the ambush.</p> <p>3. The personnel receiving fire in a far ambush (beyond hand-grenade range) immediately return fire and take up covered positions.</p> <p>a. Suppress or destroy enemy crew-served weapons first.</p> <p>b. Obscure the enemy position with smoke (M203).</p>		
--	--	--

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

- c. Sustain suppressive fires and shift them as the assaulting squads fight through the enemy position.
  - 4. The personnel not receiving fire react to far ambush.
    - a. Move by a covered and concealed route to a vulnerable flank of the enemy position.
    - b. Assault using fire and movement techniques.
  - 5. The platoon FO calls for and adjusts indirect fires as directed by the platoon leader.
    - a. Uses indirect fires to isolate the enemy position.
    - b. Adjusts fires on any retreating enemy.
  - \*6. The platoon leader accounts for all personnel and equipment after the enemy has withdrawn.
    - a. Reports the situation to higher headquarters.
    - b. Reorganizes as necessary IAW T&EO 7-3/4-1607, Perform Consolidation and Reorganization.
    - c. Continues the mission.
- \*A leader task step.

--	--

**TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK**

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

See Appendix A for task numbers and titles that correlate to the numbers listed below by STP and skill level.

**Common Tasks**

Skill Level 1

- 24, 25, 36, 37, 38, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 47, 48, 49, 50, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 64, 66, 67, 68, 72, 93, 95, 97

Skill Level 2

7, 8, 9, 25

Skill Level 3

12

Skill Level 4

NONE

**MOS 11B Tasks**

Skill Level 1

14, 17, 21, 26, 38, 41, 42, 43, 44, 48

Skill Level 2

8, 14, 15, 16, 19

Skill Level 3

4

Skill Level 4

4, 10

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK: CONDUCT AMBUSH**

**CONDITIONS:** The OPFOR platoon/squad is ordered to perform a point or area ambush. The OPFOR may act separately or as part of a larger unit. The OPFOR must provide its own security. The OPFOR has indirect fire available.

**STANDARDS:**

1. The OPFOR surprises the platoon.
2. The OPFOR kills all friendly elements in the kill zone.
3. The OPFOR fixes and suppresses friendly elements not in the kill zone.

**ELEMENT:** PLATOON/SQUAD

**TASK:** PERFORM DELAY (7-3/4-1119) (FM 7-8, FM 7-10)

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

TRAINING STATUS T P U (circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company orders the platoon to delay the enemy for a specific time. The enemy can attack by air, indirect fire, and ground (mounted or dismounted). Some iterations should be performed in MOPP4. Civilians, government organizations, NGOs, PVOs, and the international press are present on the battlefield. The US forces are operating under a restrictive ROE.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon does not start the delay earlier than the specified time, event, or on order. The platoon delays the enemy in the designated area for the time specified in the order. The platoon maintains contact with the enemy for the time specified in the order and does not become decisively engaged. The platoon continues follow-on operations. The US forces comply with the ROE. Collateral damage is limited.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES** **GO NO-GO**

<p>*1. The platoon leader plans the delay in sector or by subsequent battle positions IAW T&amp;EO 7-3/4-1605, Develop and Communicate a Plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Obtains graphics and overlays for the operation.</li> <li>b. Identifies initial and subsequent delay positions.</li> <li>c. Includes company-level phase lines and graphics.</li> <li>d. Identifies general routes between delay positions.</li> <li>e. Locates and develops a series of squad delay positions.</li> <li>f. Conducts a reconnaissance and marks general routes between delay positions.</li> <li>g. Plans for possible offensive operations.</li> <li>h. Incorporates the company fire plan into his plan.</li> <li>i. Plans evacuation routes.</li> <li>j. Informs all personnel of disengagement criteria.</li> </ul> <p>2. The platoon prepares for the delay.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prepares and marks routes and subsequent positions.</li> <li>b. Conducts reconnaissance and rehearsals.</li> <li>c. Constructs a series of fighting positions to fall back on.</li> </ul>		
--	--	--

## TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES

GO NO-GO

- | TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO NO-GO |  |
|---|----------|--|
| <p>d. Prestocks supplies, fuel, and ammunition in designated positions.</p> <p>e. Constructs obstacles IAW the OPORD and T&amp;EO 7-3-1404, Construct an Obstacle.</p> <p>f. Evacuates unneeded personnel, supplies, and equipment according to company instructions.</p> <p>g. Destroys unneeded supplies and equipment that cannot be evacuated.</p> <p>+3. The platoon conducts the delay.</p> <p>a. Occupies initial delay positions IAW company OPORD.</p> <p>b. Complies with all control measures and time constraints specified in the company order.</p> <p>c. Defends positions IAW T&amp;EO 7-3/4-1115, Execute Defense.</p> <p>NOTE: The company commander may direct the platoons to attack or assault as part of a company counterattack, based on battalion orders, the battalion commander's intent, and the current situation.</p> <p>d. Implements the company fire support plan.</p> <p>e. Depending on the situation, the platoon withdraws to new positions to continue the delay.</p> <p>f. Disengages from the enemy IAW T&amp;EO 7-3/4-1122, Execute Disengagement.</p> <p>g. Continues delaying action until the unit reaches its final BP or the mission is altered by the company.</p> <p>4. The platoon conducts follow-on operations.</p> <p>a. Moves to new defensive positions and continues the defense IAW T&amp;EO 7-3/4-1134, Move Tactically; and T&amp;EO 7-3/4-1115, Execute Defense.</p> <p>b. Returns to friendly lines, conducts a passage of lines IAW T&amp;EO 7-3/4-1125, Perform Passage of Lines; or T&amp;EO 7-3/4-1137, Perform Infiltration/Exfiltration.</p> <p>c. Moves into an assembly area IAW T&amp;EO 7-3/4-1136, Occupy Assembly Area.</p> |          |  |

\*A leader task step.

+A critical task step.

---

**TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK**

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

See Appendix A for task numbers and titles that correlate to the numbers listed below by STP and skill level.

**Common Tasks**

Skill Level 1

20, 21, 24, 25, 41, 45, 50, 55, 58, 60, 61, 66, 67, 71, 72, 73, 93, 95, 96, 97

Skill Level 2

7, 8, 9, 25, 26

Skill Level 3

12

Skill Level 4

4

**MOS 11B Tasks**

Skill Level 1

14, 17, 21, 26, 38, 41, 42, 43, 44, 48

Skill Level 2

1, 2, 8, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19

Skill Level 3

2, 3, 4, 5

Skill Level 4

4, 8, 10

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS****TASK: ATTACK**

**CONDITIONS:** An enemy platoon has occupied defensive positions to the OPFOR platoon's front. The OPFOR platoon is ordered to attack the enemy. The OPFOR may act separately or as part of a larger unit. The OPFOR has indirect fire and CAS available.

**STANDARDS:**

1. The OPFOR penetrates the designated boundary or seizes the designated terrain feature.
2. The OPFOR bypasses or disengages from the platoon.
3. The OPFOR engages or fixes the platoon.



**ELEMENT: PLATOON/SQUAD**

**TASK: PERFORM RELIEF OPERATIONS (7-3/4-1124) (FM 7-8)**

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

TRAINING STATUS T P U (circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is ordered to relieve another unit in place or is to be relieved by another unit. The enemy can attack with indirect fire, air support, or ground forces of up to company-size. Some iterations should be performed in MOPP4. Civilians, government organizations, NGOs, PVOs, and the international press are present on the battlefield. The US forces are operating under a restrictive ROE.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon starts the relief NLT the time specified in the order. Defeats any enemy attacks during the relief. The enemy does not detect the relief. The relief is completed NLT the time specified. The relieved unit has all personnel and equipment assembled at the designated location NLT the specified time. The US forces comply with the ROE. Collateral damage is limited.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

**GO NO-GO**

<p>*1. The platoon leader plans a relief in place IAW T&amp;EO 7-3/4-1605, Develop and Communicate a Plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Develops the task organization. (Should conform as closely as possible to the relieved unit to aid in deception.)</li> <li>b. Identifies tasks to subordinate elements.             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Sequence of relief: Laterally or in depth.</li> <li>• Method of relief: By elements or simultaneously.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Plans control measures.             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Sectors and positions for subordinate elements.</li> <li>• Assembly areas.</li> <li>• Contact points: Primary and alternate.</li> <li>• Release points.</li> <li>• Routes.</li> </ul> </li> <li>d. Develops contingency plans for enemy contact.</li> <li>e. Determines criteria for transfer of control.</li> <li>f. Plans the exchange of liaison personnel.</li> </ul>		
---	--	--

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*2. The relieved and relieving platoon leaders conduct coordination.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Arrange a specific time and place for coordination.</li> <li>b. Include key personnel in the coordination element, such as platoon sergeants, squad leaders, FOs, and antiarmor leaders.</li> <li>c. Coordinate the exchange of enemy information.</li> <li>d. Coordinate a time to conduct reconnaissance of relieved unit area.</li> <li>e. Exchange communication information.</li> <li>f. Plan use of guides and liaison personnel.</li> <li>g. Coordinate security measures.</li> <li>h. Coordinate control measures.</li> <li>i. Establish fire control measures.</li> <li>j. Exchange fire support plans.</li> <li>k. Confirm sequence and method of relief.</li> <li>l. Coordinate traffic control.</li> <li>m. Establish transfer of responsibility. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Contingency plans for control when attacked during the relief.</li> <li>• Criteria for battle handover.</li> </ul> </li> <li>n. Establish procedures for transfer and exchange of equipment, range cards, tripods, supplies, ammunition, and minefields IAW the SOP or the relief order. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Coordinate contingency plans for enemy contact.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>*3. The platoon leaders and key personnel reconnoiter the terrain and routes to be used during the relief.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reconnoiter all unit positions, to include OPs, platoon sectors, mortars, CPs, aid station, and supply point (if established). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• All obstacles.</li> <li>• Assembly areas.</li> <li>• Primary and alternate contact points.</li> <li>• Routes.</li> <li>• Release points.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO NO-GO
<p>b. Confirms designated routes for the relieving platoon from the contact point to the platoon RP and for each relieving squad to the squad RPs.</p> <p>4. The relieving platoon begins the relief.</p> <p>a. Initiates the relief at the time specified in the order.</p> <p>b. Moves to the contact point.</p> <p>c. Collocates leaders during the relief.</p> <p>d. Operates on the relieved unit's radio net.</p> <p>e. Maintains radio-listening silence during the relief.</p> <p>5. The relieved platoon conducts the relief.</p> <p>a. Maintains its normal level of radio traffic.</p> <p>b. Provides guides to lead the relieving platoon to the platoon RP, using the route designated by the relieved commander.</p> <p>c. Provides platoon and section guides to meet the relieving platoon at the platoon RP.</p> <p>d. Leads elements into positions according to the plan.</p> <p>e. Exchanges equipment, supplies, and weapons left in place, as coordinated.</p> <p>f. Continues normal activities, including patrolling, until the affected element is relieved, then the relieving unit conducts the activity.</p> <p>g. Moves to the squad, platoon, and company assembly areas on the designated routes.</p> <p>6. The units continue the relief according to the plan.</p> <p>a. Maintain communications with higher and lower units.</p> <p>b. Exchange fire plans, minefield records, barrier plans, sector sketches, and range cards.</p> <p>c. Conducts the relief as rapidly as possible, there are no interruptions to the relief, and dispersion is maintained to prevent massing of troops.</p> <p>d. Prevents enemy detection of the relief through deception and operations security. (See T&amp;EO 7-3/4-1409, Maintain Operations Security.)</p> <p>7. The units respond to enemy attack.</p> <p>a. Fights the defense IAW T&amp;EO 7-3/4-1115, Execute Defense, according to the platoon leader that is responsible for the defense (relieved or relieving). Assumes</p>	

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
operational control of the other unit's elements (relieved or relieving) that are in the area. b. Continues the relief as directed by the commander in charge after consolidation and reorganization.  8. The units transfer command. a. Transfer control of the defense and conduct of the relief to the relieving platoon leader once two-thirds of the relieving unit is in position and communications have been established. b. (Relieving unit) Upon a prearranged signal, switches to its own radio frequency and conducts normal radio traffic to mask the relief.  9. Both platoons report the completion of the relief to higher headquarters.  *A leader task step.		

**TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK**

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

See Appendix A for task numbers and titles that correlate to the numbers listed below by STP and skill level.

**Common Tasks**

Skill Level 1

20, 21, 24, 25, 68, 71, 72, 73, 93, 95, 96, 97

Skill Level 2

7, 8, 9, 25, 26

Skill Level 3

12

Skill Level 4

4

**MOS 11B Tasks**

Skill Level 1

41, 42, 43, 44, 48

Skill Level 2

8, 14, 19

Skill Level 3

2, 3, 5

Skill Level 4

4, 8, 10

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK: DISRUPT RELIEF**

**CONDITIONS:** The OPFOR platoon/squad is ordered to disrupt enemy relief in place efforts. The OPFOR may operate separately or as part of a larger unit. The OPFOR has indirect fire and CAS available.

**STANDARDS:**

1. The OPFOR detects the relief.
2. The OPFOR attacks the main body of either friendly unit before it is warned.
3. The OPFOR penetrates friendly defenses or seizes a specified terrain feature.
4. The OPFOR prevents the completion of the relief beyond the specified time.

**ELEMENT:** PLATOON/SQUAD

**TASK:** PERFORM AIRBORNE ASSAULT (7-3/4-1127)  
(FM 7-8, FM 7-10)

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

TRAINING STATUS T P U (circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon receives a company OPORD with detailed intelligence data and sufficient time to plan and conduct rehearsals. The platoon has adequate aircraft and air items to insert the entire platoon in one move. The enemy, no larger than a platoon, can react with a ground assault, NBC attack, and indirect fire. Civilians, government organizations, NGOs, PVOs, and the international press are present on the battlefield. The US forces are operating under a restrictive ROE.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon accomplishes all preparations NLT the time specified in the OPORD. The platoon meets station and load times. The platoon assembles its personnel within the time specified in the OPORD. The platoon departs the assembly area within the time specified in the order. The platoon arrives at the DZ with enough personnel and equipment to accomplish the mission. The platoon is prepared for further follow-on operations. The US forces comply with the ROE. Collateral damage is limited.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

\*1. The platoon leader develops a plan for airborne assault IAW T&EO 7-3/4-1605, Develop and Communicate a Plan.

a. Ensures the landing plan supports the ground tactical plan, and the loading plan supports the landing plan.

b. Plans marshalling activities.

- Jumpmaster and safety briefings.
- Initial manifest call.
- Prejump training.
- Rehearsals.
- Final manifest call.
- Leader briefbacks.
- Movement.

GO	NO-GO

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Station time.</li> <li>• Load time.</li> <li>• TOT.</li> </ul> <p>c. Develops control measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cross loading, maintaining tactical integrity.</li> <li>• Bump plan.</li> <li>• Assembly plan, including assembly aids.</li> <li>• Assault objectives.</li> <li>• DZ.</li> <li>• Alternate DZ.</li> <li>• Checkpoints.</li> <li>• Enemy contact on the DZ.</li> <li>• Abort criteria.</li> </ul> <p>d. Coordinates with adjacent and supporting units.</p> <p>e. Develops a detailed fire support plan for the DZ.</p> <p>2. The platoon conducts marshalling area activities.</p> <p>a. Assembles, organizes, and marks personnel IAW the OPORD.</p> <p>b. Ensures cross loading of personnel.</p> <p>c. Conducts prejump training no earlier than 48 hours (24 hours preferred) to time on target.</p> <p>d. Rigs all equipment for combat.</p> <p>e. Conducts rehearsals IAW the OPORD.</p> <p>f. Conducts final inspections.</p> <p>g. Moves NLT the time specified in the OPORD.</p> <p>h. Inspects all personnel and equipment rigged by the jumpmaster NLT the time specified in the OPORD.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>i. Meets aircraft load time.</li> <li>j. Meets Air Force station time.</li> <li>k. Receives Air Force safety briefing before take-off.</li> </ul> <p>3. The platoon conducts air movement under the jumpmasters' control.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintains control over personnel and equipment.</li> <li>b. Maintains communication with the company.</li> <li>c. Remains oriented during flight.</li> </ul>		

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

<p>d. Executes appropriate warnings.</p> <p>4. The jumpmasters control the platoon's execution of the airborne insertion.</p> <p>a. Identify the DZ.</p> <p>b. Maintain control of exits ensuring no unsafe procedures occur.</p> <p>5. The platoon secures assault objectives.</p> <p>a. Discards parachutes on the DZ. Reserves are placed on top of main parachute to prevent inflation.</p> <p>b. Removes all parachutes from runways and taxiways (if jumping on airfield) so as not to jeopardize follow-on operations.</p> <p>c. Establishes communication on all nets within 10 minutes of last aircraft pass.</p> <p>d. Assembles personnel while on the move by their leaders.</p> <p>e. Assembles IAW the assembly plan.</p> <p>f. Uses proper movement techniques IAW T&amp;EO 7-3/4-1134, Move Tactically.</p> <p>g. Recovers enough of its supplies and equipment to complete the mission.</p> <p>h. Treats and evacuates casualties IAW T&amp;EO 7-3/4-1504, Treat and Evacuate Casualties.</p> <p>i. Sends a SITREP to the company commander from the platoon leader.</p> <p>j. Departs assembly area(s) to secure assault objectives within the time specified in the order.</p> <p>k. Continues the mission IAW the OPORD.</p> <p>*A leader task step.</p>		
--	--	--

**TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK**

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							



### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

See Appendix A for task numbers and titles that correlate to the numbers listed below by STP and skill level.

#### Common Tasks

Skill Level 1

20, 21, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 31, 33, 66, 68, 71, 72, 73, 93, 95, 97

Skill Level 2

7, 8, 9, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 25, 26

Skill Level 3

12

Skill Level 4

4

#### MOS 11B Tasks

Skill Level 1

41, 42, 43, 44, 48

Skill Level 2

1, 2, 8, 14, 15, 19

Skill Level 3

4

Skill Level 4

4, 8, 10

### OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

#### TASK: COUNTER AIRBORNE ASSAULT

**CONDITIONS:** The OPFOR platoon/squad is ordered to defend an area that is a likely drop zone. The OPFOR may operate separately or as part of a larger unit. The OPFOR has indirect fire and NBC capabilities.

#### STANDARDS:

1. The OPFOR prevents the platoon from assembling 90 percent of its personnel within 25 minutes of the last aircraft pass.
2. The OPFOR prevents the platoon from departing assembly area(s) within 65 minutes of the last aircraft pass.
3. The OPFOR main body is not surprised by the platoon insertion.

**ELEMENT: PLATOON/SQUAD**

**TASK: PERFORM OPERATIONS WITH ARMORED VEHICLES**  
(7-3/4-1140) (FM 7-8)

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

TRAINING STATUS T P U (circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is ordered to conduct tactical operations with armored vehicles attached or in support. The enemy has antitank guided missiles, antitank guns, mines, indirect fire, and aircraft available. The platoon has the necessary support to operate with armored vehicles. Some iterations should be performed in MOPP4. Civilians, government organizations, NGOs, PVOs, and the international press are present on the battlefield. The US forces are operating under a restrictive ROE.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon successfully conducts the mission using the armored vehicles correctly. The platoon sustains a sufficient fighting force capable of continuing the tactical operations. The US forces comply with the ROE. Collateral damage is limited.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES** GO NO-GO

- \*1. The platoon leader plans the mission IAW T&EO 7-3/4-1605, Develop and Communicate a Plan.
  - a. Plans the employment and support of the armored vehicles.
  - b. Ensures all leaders understand the limitations and capabilities of the armored force.
  - c. Coordinates with the leader of the armored force to ensure his plan increases the armored capabilities.
  - d. Conducts rehearsals.
  - e. Plans for communicating with vehicles during the mission.
- \*2. The platoon sergeant plans for the logistical support of the armored force.
  - a. Plans for a daily resupply of POL products.
  - b. Ensures maintenance support is available.
  - c. Coordinates for ammunition resupply.
  - d. Develops a recovery plan.
- 3. The platoon conducts tactical operations with armored vehicles.

	GO	NO-GO

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

- a. Provides infantry support to the armored force.
  - Finds, marks, or breaches antitank obstacles.
  - Detects, suppresses, or destroys enemy antitank weapons.
  - Designates targets for armored vehicles.
  - Protects armored vehicles in close terrain.
- b. Provides armored support to infantry forces.
  - Leads infantry in open terrain.
  - Provides a protected, fast-moving assault weapons systems.
  - Suppresses and destroys enemy weapons, bunkers, and tanks by fire and maneuver.
  - Provides transport when the enemy situations permits.
- 4. The infantry platoon rides on the armored vehicles to increase movement and mission accomplishment. (The only advantage the infantry gains is speed and increased haul capability. This is only done when the enemy situation allows.)
  - a. Avoids riding on the lead vehicle of a section.
  - b. Positions infantry leaders with armored vehicle leaders.
  - c. Assigns air guards and sectors of responsibility.
  - d. Considers putting rucksacks, ammunition, and other equipment on the vehicles and have the infantry move on a separate avenue of approach.
  - e. Dismounts personnel to clear danger areas.

--	--

\*A leader task step.

**TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK**

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							

---

## SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

See Appendix A for task numbers and titles that correlate to the numbers listed below by STP and skill level.

### Common Tasks

#### Skill Level 1

20, 21, 22, 24, 25, 36, 37, 38, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 47, 48, 49, 50, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 64, 65, 66, 68, 71, 72, 73, 93, 95, 96, 97

#### Skill Level 2

6, 7, 8, 9, 26

#### Skill Level 3

12

#### Skill Level 4

4

### MOS 11B Tasks

#### Skill Level 1

6, 14, 17, 21, 26, 28, 29, 30, 31, 32, 38, 41, 42, 43, 44, 48, 53

#### Skill Level 2

7, 8, 14, 15, 16, 19

#### Skill Level 3

4

#### Skill Level 4

4, 9, 10

## OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

### TASK: DISRUPT ARMORED MOVEMENT

**CONDITIONS:** The OPFOR platoon/squad is ordered to disrupt enemy armored movement. The OPFOR is equipped with mines, antitank guns, and ATGMs. The OPFOR also has indirect fire and CAS available. The OPFOR may operate separately or as part of a larger unit.

### STANDARDS:

1. The OPFOR prevents the platoon from employing the armored forces.
2. The OPFOR fixes the platoon.

**ELEMENT: PLATOON/SQUAD**

**TASK: PERFORM AIR ASSAULT (7-3/4-1126) (FM 7-8, FM 90-4)**

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

TRAINING STATUS T P U (circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is required to conduct movement by helicopter. The platoon is operating separately or as part of a company. The platoon must provide its own security. Both friendly and enemy units have indirect fire and CAS available. Some iterations should be performed in MOPP4. Civilians, government organizations, NGOs, PVOs, and the international press are present on the battlefield. The US forces are operating under a restrictive ROE.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon main body is not surprised at the PZ. All platoon personnel and equipment are prepared for movement at the time and place specified. Each helicopter is loaded within 30 seconds and unloaded within 10 seconds of the crew chief's signal. A sufficient number of leaders, personnel, and key equipment are moved to the LZ to accomplish the mission and conduct further combat operations. The US forces comply with the ROE. Collateral damage is limited.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES** GO NO-GO

<p>*1. The platoon leader organizes the load based on the allowable cargo load as stated in the OPORD or FRAGO.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Designates chinks and chalk leaders.</li> <li>b. Maintains tactical integrity (keeps teams and squads together on the same aircraft).</li> <li>c. Maintains self-sufficiency (keeps machine guns, Dragons/Javelins, and their crews on the same aircraft with ammunition and components).</li> <li>d. Cross-loads key personnel and weapons among the aircraft.</li> </ul> <p>*2. The platoon leader briefs personnel on the helicopter landing formation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Informs them of both LZ and PZ and rendezvous points.</li> <li>b. Informs them of the type of aircraft.</li> <li>c. Informs them of the allowable cargo load of aircraft.</li> <li>d. Informs them of the contingency plan for downed aircraft (both for personnel on the aircraft and the remainder of the unit).</li> </ul>		
--	--	--

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

- |   |  |  |
|---|--|--|
| <p>*3. The chalk leaders brief personnel in the chalk.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Inform them when to load and where to sit on the aircraft.</li> <li>Inform them of emergency procedures to be used in an emergency.</li> <li>Inform them of what to do when the aircraft lands.</li> </ol> <p>*4. The platoon leader establishes priority of loading.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Designates the priority of aircraft loads.</li> <li>Designates personnel to be bumped (if necessary) on each aircraft.</li> <li>Ensures bumped personnel (if any) are told to report to the straggler control point.</li> <li>Ensures that each aircraft is loaded so that dismounting personnel can react promptly and contribute to mission accomplishment.</li> </ol> <p>5. The platoon members prepare the equipment for loading IAW the platoon SOP.</p> <p>6. The platoon members secure the assigned portion of the pick-up zone while waiting for the order to load the aircraft.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Remain dispersed, covered, and concealed while awaiting the aircraft's arrival.</li> <li>Approach aircraft only after landing is completed.</li> <li>Approach aircraft (front or side) at double-time.</li> </ol> |  |  |
|---|--|--|

**WARNING****Never approach aircraft from the rear.**

- Load at LZ or PZ at the time specified in the OPORD or FRAGO.
  - Keep low when approaching and departing a helicopter, especially on slopes.
- \*7. The leaders enforce safety measures IAW the platoon SOP.
- Keep safety belts fastened when airborne (training).
  - Ensure weapons are on SAFE.
  - Secure radio antennas.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Secure hand grenades.</p> <p>*8. The leaders ensure the soldiers dismount the aircraft after it lands.</p> <p>a. Prevent soldiers from jumping from a hovering helicopter until directed to do so by a member of the aircraft crew.</p> <p>b. Move the personnel out about 20 meters from the side of the aircraft and assume prone firing positions (facing outward).</p> <p>c. Watch for enemy and wait for aircraft to leave.</p> <p>d. Move to the assigned positions to provide all-round security.</p> <p>e. Evacuate any casualties that occur, on departing aircraft.</p> <p>f. Proceed with the mission IAW the OPORD.</p> <p>*A leader task step.</p>		

**TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK**

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

See Appendix A for task numbers and titles that correlate to the numbers listed below by STP and skill level.

**Common Tasks**

Skill Level 1

20, 21, 24, 25, 66, 68, 71, 72, 73, 93, 95, 96, 97

Skill Level 2

7, 8, 9, 26

Skill Level 3

12

Skill Level 4

4

**MOS 11B Tasks**

Skill Level 1

41, 42, 43, 44, 48

Skill Level 2

8, 14, 19

Skill Level 3

4

Skill Level 4

4, 7, 9, 10

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK: COUNTER AIR ASSAULT**

**CONDITIONS:** The OPFOR platoon/squad is ordered to defend a likely LZ or PZ. They may operate separately or as part of a larger unit. The OPFOR has indirect fire and CAS available.

**STANDARDS:**

1. The OPFOR surprises the platoon main body at the LZ or the PZ.
2. The OPFOR engages the platoon and prevents the helicopters from landing and loading or unloading at the LZ or the PZ. (Leaders call so as to preclude incidents.)



**ELEMENT: PLATOON/SQUAD**

**TASK: CROSS WATER OBSTACLES (7-3/4-1131) (FM 7-8)**

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

TRAINING STATUS T P U (circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon must cross a water obstacle. The platoon is operating separately or as part of a company. The platoon must provide its own security. Both friendly and enemy units have indirect fire and CAS available. Some iterations should be performed in MOPP4. Civilians, government organizations, NGOs, PVOs, and the international press are present on the battlefield. The US forces are operating under a restrictive ROE.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon prevents the enemy from surprising the main body. The platoon moves all personnel and equipment across the water obstacle without loss or damage. The platoon prevents decisive engagement by the enemy. The US forces comply with the ROE. Collateral damage is limited.

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
<p>*1. The platoon leader plans the water obstacle crossing during planning of the combat mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selects primary and alternate crossing sites that support the tactical plan based on map reconnaissance, patrols, or other information.</li> <li>b. Selects a tentative method for crossing.</li> <li>c. Plans for contingencies, such as enemy contact during the crossing.</li> <li>d. Directs special teams to rehearse their actions.</li> <li>e. Plans indirect fires.</li> </ul> <p>*2. The platoon leader stops the platoon short of the tentative crossing site.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Sets up security.</li> <li>b. Assigns responsibilities for near-side security and far-side security.</li> </ul> <p>3. The reconnaissance team (platoon leader, RATELO, squad leaders, and security element) reconnoiters and selects the crossing site (that provides the best cover and concealment).</p>		

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES****GO NO-GO**

a. Selects a site that has at least one strong, well-rooted tree or similar anchor point on each side of the obstacle, 4 to 6 feet from the bank (for bridging).

b. Selects a site that has low banks and shallow enough at the bank to permit a soldier to wade into or out of the water.

c. Selects a site that has good positions for security on each flank that provide cover, concealment, observation, and fields of fire.

4. Personnel in the security area prepare for the water crossing under the supervision of the platoon sergeant. Noise, light, and camouflage discipline are maintained throughout the crossing.

5. The platoon members prepare for the water crossing.

a. Waterproof all water-sensitive items.

b. Unblouse trousers.

c. Unbuckle chin straps on helmets.

6. The security team moves to and secures the near side of the crossing site.

\*7. The platoon leader makes an estimate of the situation and determines the method for the platoon to cross the water obstacle.

a. Organizes the platoon into the required teams and elements (if not previously designated).

b. Directs the platoon to prepare the necessary crossing equipment.

c. Moves the crossing teams to the crossing site.

d. Crosses using one of the following techniques.

- One-rope bridge.

- Two-rope bridge.

- Poncho rafts.

- Waterproof bags.

- Empty canteens.

- Water wings (made from extra trousers).

- Boats (military or civilian).

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

- 8. The far-side security team crosses the water obstacle, using the selected technique.
  - a. Sets up far-side security.
  - b. Assists the remainder of the platoon in crossing the obstacle and directs them to security positions on the far-side.
- 9. Once the entire platoon is across and equipment is gathered, the far-side security team rejoins the platoon.
- \*10. The leaders account for all personnel and equipment.
- 11. The platoon moves out of the area of the water obstacle as soon as possible and continues the mission.

\*A leader task step.

--	--

**TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK**

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

See Appendix A for task numbers and titles that correlate to the numbers listed below by STP and skill level.

**Common Tasks**

Skill Level 1

20, 21, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 33, 66, 68, 71, 72, 73, 93, 95, 96, 97

Skill Level 2

7, 8, 9, 14, 15, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 25, 26

Skill Level 3

12

Skill Level 4

4

**MOS 11B Tasks**

Skill Level 1

41, 42, 43, 44, 48

Skill Level 2

8, 14, 15, 19

Skill Level 3

4, 5

Skill Level 4

4, 9, 10

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK: DEFEND WATER OBSTACLE**

**CONDITIONS:** The OPFOR platoon/squad is ordered to defend a likely water obstacle crossing site. They may operate separately or as part of a larger unit. The OPFOR has indirect fire and CAS available.

**STANDARDS:**

1. The OPFOR detects the crossing.
2. The OPFOR surprises the main body.
3. The OPFOR fixes the platoon.
4. The OPFOR prevents the platoon from crossing at its chosen location.

**ELEMENT:** PLATOON

**TASK:** EMPLOY FIRE SUPPORT (7-3-1200) (FM 7-8, FM 7-10)

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

TRAINING STATUS T P U (circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon has been given a company order to conduct combat operations. The enemy is dug in and defending in a deliberate defense or is expected to attack the platoon position with motorized and or dismounted forces. Both friendly and enemy forces have indirect fires available. Some iterations should be performed in MOPP4. Civilians, government organizations, NGOs, PVOs, and the international press are present on the battlefield. The US forces are operating under a restrictive ROE.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon leader and platoon FO plan and execute fires that support the platoon leader's scheme of maneuver or defensive plan. Friendly fires stop or slow the enemy. Fires neutralize, suppress, or destroy enemy weapons and fires. The US forces comply with the ROE. Collateral damage is limited.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

- | TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <p>*1. The platoon leader and platoon FO make a tentative fire support plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Develop a fire support plan IAW the company commander's plan, guidance, and intent.</li> <li>b. Develop a plan for the use of priority targets (if allocated by higher) addressing targets in depth, timing, and control of those fires.</li> <li>c. Integrate COLT (if allocated) into the observation and designation plan.</li> </ul> <p>2. The platoon FO ensures the platoon leader is informed of all the assets available and weapons systems (mortars) operational.</p> <p>3. The platoon leader and FO conduct a leaders reconnaissance and plan fires for the offense. (The situation may not allow for a leader's reconnaissance, he may only be able to do a map reconnaissance as METT-T dictates.)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reconnoiter known enemy locations.</li> </ul> |    |       |

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES****GO NO-GO**

- | TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Reconnoiter dominant and key terrain.</li> <li>c. Reconnoiter enemy counterattack routes.</li> <li>d. Reconnoiter targets of concern (those targets that the maneuver commander feels that, if not fired on, will deter the success of the maneuver).</li> <li>e. Reconnoiter possible enemy locations.</li> <li>f. Develop platoon fire plan using the results of the reconnaissance.</li> </ul> <p>*4. The platoon leader and FO plan fires for the defense operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identify enemy avenues of approach.</li> <li>b. Cover possible enemy hull-down firing positions in the engagement area.</li> <li>c. Ensure coverage of planned and existing obstacles in the engagement area.</li> <li>d. Plan FPFs in front of the battle positions.</li> <li>e. Plan fires on and to the rear of platoon positions (in case of withdrawal).</li> </ul> <p>*5. The platoon leader and FO plan fires for the consolidation phase of the attack or defense.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensure coverage of enemy counterattack routes and counterattack forces.</li> <li>b. Cover enemy withdrawal routes.</li> <li>c. Plan fires on possible enemy positions in the platoon area of operation.</li> <li>d. Plan targets that would support resuming the offense.</li> </ul> <p>*6. The platoon leader and FO plan the type of munitions needed to accomplish the desired results.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Consider HE with fuze combinations.</li> <li>b. Plan smoke for obscuration.</li> <li>c. Plan DPICM.</li> <li>d. Plan illumination.</li> </ul> <p>*7. The platoon leader and FO synchronize fires with the scheme of maneuver and plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Synchronize artillery with the maneuver plan.</li> <li>b. Determine effects required on the enemy (suppress, isolate, obscure, neutralize, destroy, deceive, or disrupt).</li> </ul> |    |       |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Request for mortars and artillery.</p> <p>d. Plan priority of fires (should support the main effort).</p> <p>e. Identify priority targets.</p> <p>f. Consider close air support.</p> <p>g. Identify ammunition restrictions and controlled supply rate.</p> <p>h. Consider dismount areas.</p> <p>i. Identify targets during consolidation.</p> <p>j. Develop graphical fire control measures.</p> <p>k. Decide whether priority targets should be retained at platoon level or given to the squads.</p> <p>l. Confirm whether the use of smoke, FASCAM, illumination, or DPICM is restricted and who controls them.</p> <p>*8. The platoon leader approves the platoon fire support execution matrix and distributes it to the squad leaders as a part of the OPORD.</p> <p>a. Ensures the platoon FO provides a copy of the fire plan to the company.</p> <p>b. Ensures that the fire support plan is incorporated into the platoon rehearsals.</p> <p>*9. The platoon leader and platoon FO execute fire support.</p> <p>a. Ensure all available supporting fires are executed in a timely manner and accomplish the prescribed result IAW the fire plan and execution matrix.</p> <p>b. Ensure fires hit critical and vulnerable areas of enemy formations or positions.</p> <p>c. Ensure friendly fires stop or slow enemy movement and suppress enemy fires.</p> <p>d. Ensures the employment of smoke does not degrade the platoon mission.</p> <p>e. Adjusts the priorities of fire as the battle progresses.</p> <p>f. Uses the COLT when available.</p> <p>*10. The platoon leader reports battle damage caused by indirect fire to the company at the close of each fire mission.</p> <p>*A leader task step.</p>		

**TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK**

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

See Appendix A for task numbers and titles that correlate to the numbers listed below by STP and skill level.

**Common Tasks**

Skill Level 1

24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 31, 33, 66, 72, 93, 95, 97

Skill Level 2

7, 8, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 22, 23, 25

Skill Level 3

12

Skill Level 4

4

**MOS 11B Tasks**

Skill Level 1

29, 41, 42, 43, 44

Skill Level 2

1, 2, 8, 14, 17, 18

Skill Level 3

3, 5

Skill Level 4

9

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS****TASK: EMPLOY DECEPTION MEASURES**

**CONDITIONS:** The OPFOR is ordered to employ deception measures while conducting tactical operations. The OPFOR has indirect fire available.



**STANDARDS:**

1. The OPFOR uses deception measures to prevent the platoon from locating direct fire, defensive positions, or attacking forces.
2. The OPFOR employs counterbattery measures.
3. The OPFOR causes the platoon to suspend combat operations for more than 15 minutes.

**ELEMENT: PLATOON**

**TASK: RECONNOITER ZONE (7-3-1004) (FM 7-8)**

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

TRAINING STATUS T P U (circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is required to reconnoiter a zone. The platoon is operating separately and provides its own security. Both friendly and enemy elements have indirect fire and CAS capabilities. Some iterations should be performed in MOPP4. Civilians, government organizations, NGOs, PVOs, and the international press are present on the battlefield. The US forces are operating under a restrictive ROE.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon determines all PIR and other intelligence requirements specified in the order for its assigned zone. The platoon reconnoiters without detection by the enemy. The platoon completes the reconnaissance and reports all information by the time specified in the order. The US forces comply with the ROE. Collateral damage is limited.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

- \*1. The platoon leader plans and task organizes the platoon for the zone reconnaissance.
  - a. Plans the mission IAW T&EO 7-3/4-1605, Develop and Communicate a Plan.
  - b. Organizes the platoon into reconnaissance teams and security teams for the ORP.
  - c. Coordinates with the company commander and battalion staff as necessary.
  - d. Coordinates with the unit through which the platoon will conduct its forward passage of lines.
  - e. Coordinates with the units that will be patrolling in the adjacent areas.
- \*2. The platoon leader selects a series of ORPs or rally points throughout the zone from which to operate.
  - a. Estimates time requirements for movement to and from ORPs and rally points.
  - b. Selects primary and alternate routes to the ORPs.
  - c. Develops a contingency plan for actions on contact.

GO	NO-GO

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*3. The reconnaissance team leaders organize the reconnaissance team.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Designate the security and reconnaissance element.</li> <li>b. Assign responsibilities (point, pace, recorder, and rear security).</li> <li>c. Designate rally points that are easily recognizable.</li> <li>d. Ensure local security is established at all halts.</li> </ul> <p>4. The platoon reconnoiters the zone.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moves tactically to the ORPs.</li> <li>b. Occupies the ORP.</li> <li>c. Follows the method selected by the platoon leader.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Fan method.</li> <li>• Converging-routes method.</li> <li>• Successive-sectors method.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>+5. The reconnaissance teams perform reconnaissance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Use the designated method along routes. (See T&amp;EO 7-3/4-1134, Move Tactically.)</li> <li>b. Gather all information based on PIR IAW the OPORD.</li> <li>c. Return to the ORP, or link up at the rendezvous point on time.</li> </ul> <p>*6. The platoon leader controls the reconnaissance elements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moves with the reconnaissance element that sets up the linkup point.</li> <li>b. Changes the reconnaissance method as the situation requires.</li> <li>c. Designates times for the reconnaissance elements to return to the ORP, or link up at the rendezvous point.</li> <li>d. Collects the information and disseminates it to all platoon members through subordinate leaders.</li> <li>e. Accounts for personnel.</li> </ul> <p>7. The platoon continues the reconnaissance using the selected method.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Continues until all selected areas have been reconnoitered.</li> <li>b. Returns undetected to friendly positions.</li> </ul>		

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

c. Provides timely and accurate PIR as required in the OPORD.

--	--

\*A leader task step.

+A critical task step.

**TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK**

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

See Appendix A for task numbers and titles that correlate to the numbers listed below by STP and skill level.

**Common Tasks**

Skill Level 1

20, 21, 24, 25, 66, 68, 71, 72, 73, 93, 95, 96, 97

Skill Level 2

7, 8, 9, 25, 26

Skill Level 3

12

Skill Level 4

4

**MOS 11B Tasks**

Skill Level 1

41, 42, 43, 44, 48

Skill Level 2

1, 2, 8, 14, 19

Skill Level 3

4, 5

Skill Level 4

9, 10, 12

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK: COUNTER ZONE RECONNAISSANCE**

**CONDITIONS:** The OPFOR platoon/squad is ordered to conduct tactical operations to deny the enemy intelligence by countering zone reconnaissance. The OPFOR may operate separately or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has indirect fire and CAS available.

**STANDARDS:**

1. The OPFOR prevents the platoon from obtaining its assigned PIR and other intelligence requirements.
2. The OPFOR locates at least 66 percent of the elements.
3. The OPFOR determines the platoon's intentions.
4. The OPFOR determines the platoon's strength: plus or minus 10 percent and echelon: squad, platoon, company.
5. The OPFOR prevents the platoon from completing the reconnaissance within its allotted time.

**ELEMENT: PLATOON/SQUAD**

**TASK: RECONNOITER AREA (7-3/4-1003) (FM 7-8)**

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

TRAINING STATUS T P U (circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is in an ORP and must reconnoiter an area. The platoon is operating separately and provides its own security. The enemy is establishing hasty defensive positions. Both friendly and enemy elements have indirect fire available. Some iterations should be performed in MOPP4. Civilians, government organizations, NGOs, PVOs, and the international press are present on the battlefield. The US forces are operating under a restrictive ROE.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon collects all available information on PIR and other intelligence requirements specified in the order for the area. The platoon completes the reconnaissance and reports all information by the time specified in the order. The platoon is not compromised. The US forces comply with the ROE. Collateral damage is limited.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

<p>*1. The platoon leader organizes the platoon in one of two ways.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Organizes the platoon into separate reconnaissance and security elements.</li> <li>b. Organizes the platoon into combined reconnaissance and security element.</li> </ul> <p>*2. The platoon leader takes subordinate leaders and key personnel on a leader's reconnaissance to confirm the objective and the plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issues a contingency plan before departure.</li> <li>b. Identifies the objective and emplaces surveillance.</li> <li>c. Maintains communications with the platoon throughout the reconnaissance.</li> <li>d. Designates at least one surveillance team to keep the objective under surveillance.</li> </ul> <p>*3. The platoon sergeant maintains security.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Establishes security at the ORP.</li> <li>b. Positions other security teams as required on likely enemy avenues of approach into the objective area.</li> </ul>		
---	--	--

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*4. The platoon leader with the reconnaissance party returns to the ORP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Confirms the plan or issues a FRAGO to change it.</li> <li>b. Allows subordinate leaders time to brief their personnel.</li> </ul> <p>5. The platoon conducts the reconnaissance by long-range observation and surveillance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and that is far enough from the objective to be outside of enemy small-arms weapons range and local security measures.</li> <li>b. Establishes a series of OPs, occupied by one or more reconnaissance teams, if the information cannot be gathered from one OP.</li> <li>c. Gathers all PIR by using the memory aid SALUTE.</li> </ul> <p>+6. The platoon conducts the reconnaissance by short-range observation and surveillance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moves to a point near the objective that is within the range of enemy small-arms weapons fire and local security measures.</li> <li>b. Passes through any outposts, defensive wire, or minefields to get close enough to gain information.</li> <li>c. Gathers all PIR by using the memory aid SALUTE.</li> </ul> <p>7. The platoon returns undetected to the ORP by the specified time.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Disseminates information to all platoon members through the squad leaders at the ORP, or moves to another position at least one terrain feature away to disseminate information.</li> <li>b. Reports information of immediate effect and departs for the debriefing area.</li> </ul> <p>*A leader task step. +A critical task step.</p>		

**TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK**

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

See Appendix A for task numbers and titles that correlate to the numbers listed below by STP and skill level.

**Common Tasks**

Skill Level 1

20, 21, 24, 25, 66, 68, 71, 72, 73, 93, 95, 97

Skill Level 2

7, 8, 9, 25

Skill Level 3

12

Skill Level 4

4

**MOS 11B Tasks**

Skill Level 1

41, 42, 43, 44, 48

Skill Level 2

1, 2, 8, 14, 17, 19

Skill Level 3

4, 5

Skill Level 4

9, 10, 13

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS****TASK: COUNTER AREA RECONNAISSANCE**

**CONDITIONS:** The OPFOR platoon/squad is ordered to conduct tactical operations to deny the enemy intelligence by countering enemy area reconnaissance. The OPFOR may operate separately or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has indirect fire and CAS available.



**STANDARDS:**

1. The OPFOR prevents the platoon from obtaining its assigned PIR and other intelligence requirements.
2. The OPFOR locates at least 66 percent of the elements.
3. The OPFOR determines the platoon's intentions.
4. The OPFOR determines the platoon's strength (plus or minus 10 percent) and echelon: squad, platoon, company.
5. The OPFOR prevents the platoon from completing the reconnaissance within its specified time.

**ELEMENT: PLATOON**

**TASK: RECONNOITER ROUTE (7-3-1005) (FM 7-8, FM 5-34)**

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

TRAINING STATUS T P U (circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is ordered to conduct a route reconnaissance. The platoon is operating separately or as part of a larger force. The platoon provides its own security. Both friendly and enemy elements have indirect fire and CAS available. Some iterations should be performed in MOPP4. Civilians, government organizations, NGOs, PVOs, and the international press are present on the battlefield. The US forces are operating under a restrictive ROE.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon collects all available information on PIR and other intelligence requirements specified in the order for the route. The platoon completes the reconnaissance and reports all information by the time specified in the order. The platoon is not compromised. The US forces comply with the ROE. Collateral damage is limited.

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
<p>1. The platoon prepares for the mission IAW T&amp;EO 7-3/4-1606, Prepare for Combat; and T&amp;EO 7-3/4-1605, Develop and Communicate a Plan.</p> <p>+2. The platoon conducts the reconnaissance.</p> <p>a. Uses the preferred reconnaissance method based on METT-T.</p> <p>b. Ensures intersecting routes are reconnoitered beyond direct-fire range.</p> <p>c. Uses a different return route.</p> <p>3. Collects and reports information about the route and the adjacent terrain.</p> <p>a. Determines trafficability.</p> <p>b. Locates and evaluates all bridges.</p> <p>c. Locates and classifies fords or crossing sites near bridges.</p> <p>d. Evaluates the road surface of the route to include the width.</p> <p>e. Locates and classifies all underpasses, tunnels, and culverts.</p>		

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

- | TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>f. Identifies and evaluates restrictive curves and steep grades.</li> <li>g. Identifies and evaluates all other restrictive passages and obstacles.</li> <li>h. Locates and evaluates bypasses of all restrictive passages.</li> <li>i. Completes and confirms the map reconnaissance by visual inspection of the route and the adjacent terrain.</li> <li>j. Reconnoiters the terrain that dominates the route.</li> <li>k. Reconnoiters all built-up areas along the route.</li> <li>l. Reconnoiters all lateral and axial routes.</li> <li>m. Identifies all enemy forces that can influence the route.</li> <li>n. Determines the enemy location, strength, composition, and activity.</li> <li>o. Locates the enemy supporting units and weapons.</li> <li>p. Identifies the possible avenues of approach.</li> <li>q. Reports the situation to higher headquarters.</li> </ul> <p>4. The platoon prepares a route classification overlay.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provides the beginning and the end coordinates of the route.</li> <li>b. Includes the trace of the route.</li> <li>c. Shows all restrictions to the traffic flow, to include bypass capability and classification for all restrictive passages.</li> <li>d. Shows all sharp curves and series of curves.</li> <li>e. Includes all level and uneven crossings.</li> <li>f. Includes the length and width of constrictions.</li> <li>g. Provides the percentage of slope on steep upgrades.</li> <li>h. Shows the overall capability of the route.</li> </ul> <p>5. The platoon reports terrain information to the company.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Submits the route classification in an overlay format IAW FM 5-34.</li> <li>b. Submits obstacle, bypass, and ford reports.</li> </ul> |    |       |

+A critical task step.

**TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK**

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

See Appendix A for task numbers and titles that correlate to the numbers listed below by STP and skill level.

**Common Tasks**

Skill Level 1

20, 21, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 31, 33, 66, 71, 72, 93, 95, 96, 97

Skill Level 2

7, 8, 9, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 22, 23, 26

Skill Level 3

12

Skill Level 4

4

**MOS 11B Tasks**

Skill Level 1

6, 41, 42, 43, 44, 48

Skill Level 2

1, 2, 8, 14, 19

Skill Level 3

4, 5

Skill Level 4

4, 10

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS****TASK: COUNTER ROUTE RECONNAISSANCE**

**CONDITIONS:** The OPFOR platoon/squad is ordered to conduct tactical operations to deny the enemy intelligence by countering route reconnaissance. The OPFOR may operate separately or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has indirect fire and CAS available.

**STANDARDS:**

1. The OPFOR prevents the platoon from obtaining its assigned PIR and other intelligence requirements.
2. The OPFOR determines the platoon's strength (locates at least 66 percent of the element's echelon).
3. The OPFOR determines the platoon's intentions.
4. The OPFOR prevents the platoon from completing the reconnaissance within its specified time.

**ELEMENT: PLATOON/SQUAD**

**TASK: PERFORM SURVEILLANCE FROM AN OBSERVATION POST (7-3/4-1008) (FM 7-8)**

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

TRAINING STATUS T P U (circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is tasked to occupy observation posts as part of an operation. The platoon must provide its own security. The platoon is operating separately or as part of a larger force. Both friendly and enemy units have indirect fire and CAS available. Some iterations should be performed in MOPP4. Civilians, government organizations, NGOs, PVOs, and the international press are present on the battlefield. The US forces are operating under a restrictive ROE.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon establishes the OPs, undetected by the enemy. The platoon maintains sustained operation of the OPs and warns the main body before the enemy can engage it with direct fire. The platoon gathers all intelligence requirements specified in the order. The US forces comply with the ROE. Collateral damage is limited.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>*1. The platoon leader formulates a plan for occupying the OPs and identifies the general location, and the squad leader selects the actual site for the OPs.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selects a site that allows observation of the designated area.</li> <li>b. Takes advantage of natural cover and concealment to provide protection for the personnel manning it.</li> <li>c. Selects a site within small-arms weapons range of the platoon positions.</li> <li>d. Selects sites from which the OP field of view overlaps the view of the adjacent OPs.</li> <li>e. Ensures the sites are away from landmarks and or conspicuous areas.</li> <li>f. Selects covered and concealed routes to and from the OP.</li> </ul> </li> <li>*2. The platoon leader establishes procedures for security and reporting before personnel move to the OP sites.</li> </ul> |  |
|---|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO NO-GO	
<p>a. Establishes communications using wire as the primary means.</p> <p>b. Establishes a backup means of communications with radio or a messenger.</p> <p>c. Mans the OP with at least two soldiers.</p> <p>d. Ensures soldiers prepare fighting positions at the OP for protection and concealment.</p> <p>e. Ensures each soldier has a prepared position to return to in the platoon position.</p> <p>f. Directs the squad leader to brief the personnel manning the OP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Challenge and password.</li> <li>• Running password.</li> <li>• When to engage and when not to engage the enemy.</li> <li>• Conditions when the OP can withdraw.</li> <li>• When to expect relief.</li> <li>• Contingency plans for loss of communications.</li> </ul> <p>g. Designates any special equipment necessary for the OP.</p> <p>+3. The platoon conducts actions at the OP.</p> <p>a. Establishes security.</p> <p>b. Prepares positions to include range cards.</p> <p>c. Makes communications checks or reports as required.</p> <p>d. Rotates the observer every 20 to 30 minutes.</p> <p>e. Briefs the relieving soldiers on any information or special instructions before departing the OP.</p> <p>f. Withdraws as directed or to avoid capture.</p> <p>g. Orients the map to the OP field of view.</p> <p>h. Uses appropriate night vision devices during darkness.</p> <p>i. Identifies enemy soldiers, vehicles, and aircraft. Reports immediately to the platoon by submitting a SITREP (SALUTE).</p> <p>j. Uses overlapping sectors to maintain surveillance. Observes 50-meter-wide strips.</p>		

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

**GO NO-GO**

<p>k. Searches the sector continuously to maintain surveillance.</p> <p>4. The squads may occupy squad-sized OPs to add security and combat power to the platoon position as the situation requires.</p> <p>a. Designates soldiers to act as observer, recorder, and security. If the situation permits, soldiers may rotate for sustained operations.</p> <p>b. Performs a hasty, visual search immediately on beginning the OP operation.</p> <p>c. Conducts patrols between OPs as directed by the platoon leader.</p> <p>d. Uses the same considerations as the two-man OP.</p> <p>e. Spreads personnel out in two- or three-man positions.</p> <p>f. Assigns a sector to each position to observe.</p> <p>*A leader task step. +A critical task step.</p>				
--	--	--	--	--

**TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK**

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

See Appendix A for task numbers and titles that correlate to the numbers listed below by STP and skill level.

**Common Tasks**

Skill Level 1

20, 21, 23, 24, 25, 62, 63, 66, 67, 68, 69, 70, 71, 72, 73, 93, 95, 96, 97

Skill Level 2

6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 12, 13, 25, 26

Skill Level 3

10, 11, 12



Skill Level 4

4, 5

**MOS 11B Tasks**

Skill Level 1

4, 5, 7, 8, 29, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 54, 55, 56, 57

Skill Level 2

8, 14

Skill Level 3

6, 7

Skill Level 4

5

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK: MAINTAIN OPERATIONS SECURITY**

**CONDITIONS:** The OPFOR platoon/squad is ordered to conduct tactical operations and maintain operational security to prevent enemy surveillance. The OPFOR is operating separately or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has indirect fire and CAS available.

**STANDARDS:**

1. The OPFOR detects the OP.
2. The OPFOR prevents the observers from determining strength, location, and intentions.
3. The OPFOR bypasses the OP.
4. The OPFOR surprises the main body.
5. The OPFOR locates at least 50 percent of the elements and the crew-served and automatic weapons of the main body.

**ELEMENT: PLATOON****TASK: PERFORM A SCREEN (7-3-1006) (FM 7-8)**

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

TRAINING STATUS T P U (circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon has been ordered to conduct a screen of a larger force. The platoon may have attachments and must provide its own security. The unit may be moving or stationary. The enemy is attempting to gain intelligence about the friendly unit and impede its operation. Both friendly and enemy units have indirect fire and CAS available. Some iterations should be performed in MOPP4. Civilians, government organizations, NGOs, PVOs, and the international press are present on the battlefield. The US forces are operating under a restrictive ROE.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon maintains surveillance and provides early warning to the main body and detects all enemy activity in its sector. The screening platoon impedes and harasses the enemy with indirect fire and requests for CAS (if available and applicable). The platoon destroys enemy reconnaissance within its capabilities. The platoon provides the company headquarters the SALUTE report within 30 seconds of detecting the enemy. The platoon continues follow-on operations. The US forces comply with the ROE. Collateral damage is limited.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

- | TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The platoon screens forward of a moving force.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Deploys OPs on a proposed screen line or executes guard (advance, flank, or rear) mission for the main body using the appropriate movement techniques and using the terrain for protection. (See T&amp;EO 7-3/4-1134, Move Tactically.)</li> <li>b. Positions the squads to provide early warning and maintains cover and concealment.</li> <li>c. Reports enemy activity while at the screen line and before engaging enemy elements.</li> <li>d. Engages the enemy when contact is made with indirect or direct fires as stated in the OPORD.</li> <li>e. Guides the reaction force, if one is designated, to the location of the enemy activity.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The platoon screens the flank or rear of a moving force.</li> </ol> |    |       |

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

- a. Moves to the initial screen line using the appropriate movement techniques.  
(See T&EO 7-3/4-1134, Move Tactically.)
  - b. Provides early warning of enemy activity to the main body.
  - c. Moves to keep pace with the main body by moving or displacing OPs or moving tactically at a designated interval from the main body.
  - d. Conducts patrols between OPs and in areas that cannot be observed, as the situation permits.
  - e. Requests and adjusts supporting fire to delay and force deployment of enemy forces.
  - f. Maintains the continuity of the screen and prevents the enemy reconnaissance elements from reaching the main body undetected.
  - g. Destroys enemy reconnaissance elements within its capabilities.
  - h. Withdraws to the subsequent screen line on order.
3. The platoon screens a stationary force.
- a. Establishes two to four OPs for surveillance of the area forward of the initial screen line IAW T&EO 7-3/4-1008, Perform Surveillance From an Observation Post.
  - b. Establishes successive screen lines as enemy pressure increases.
  - c. Executes the remainder of this task IAW the performance measures 2a and 2b, 2d through 2h, above. Performance measure 2c is not evaluated.

--	--

**TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK**

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

See Appendix A for task numbers and titles that correlate to the numbers listed below by STP and skill level.

**Common Tasks**

## Skill Level 1

20, 21, 24, 25, 36, 37, 38, 41, 45, 47, 48, 49, 50, 52, 53, 54, 55, 58, 59, 60, 61, 64, 66, 67, 68, 71, 72, 73, 93, 95, 96, 97

## Skill Level 2

7, 8, 9, 25, 26

## Skill Level 3

10, 12

## Skill Level 4

4

**MOS 11B Tasks**

## Skill Level 1

14, 17, 21, 26, 30, 31, 32, 38, 41, 42, 43, 44, 48

## Skill Level 2

1, 2, 8, 14, 15, 16, 17, 19

## Skill Level 3

4, 5

## Skill Level 4

4, 8, 9, 10, 11

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS****TASK: COUNTER SCREEN**

**CONDITIONS:** The OPFOR platoon/squad is ordered to conduct tactical operations in order to counter an enemy screen. The OPFOR is operating separately or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has indirect fire and CAS available.

**STANDARDS:**

The OPFOR penetrates the platoon's screen undetected.

**ELEMENT:** PLATOON/SQUAD

**TASK:** BREACH AN OBSTACLE (7-3/4-1402) (FM 7-8)

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

TRAINING STATUS T P U (circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon leader is given a FRAGO to conduct an obstacle breach as part of the company's attack during a movement to contact, deliberate attack, or hasty attack. Both friendly and enemy elements have indirect fire available. Some iterations should be performed in MOPP4. Civilians, government organizations, NGOs, PVOs, and the international press are present on the battlefield. The US forces are operating under a restrictive ROE.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon leader develops a plan for the platoon breach. The plan is issued to, and understood by, key personnel. Subordinate leaders are given adequate time to plan. The platoon breaches the obstacle in the time specified by the company commander. The platoon maintains security throughout the operation. The US forces comply with the ROE. Collateral damage is limited.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

- \*1. The platoon leader conducts troop-leading procedures. (See T&EO 7-3/4-1605, Develop and Communicate a Plan.)
    - a. Organizes the platoon into support, breach, and assault elements.
    - b. Plans the reconnaissance and determines the breach point.
    - c. Plans for direct and indirect fires to support the breach.
    - d. Plans for integration of engineers and special equipment.
  - 2. The platoon prepares for the breach. (See T&EO 7-3/4-1606, Prepare for Combat.)
  - +3. The platoon conducts the breach IAW T&EO 7-3/4-1403, Conduct Initial Breach of a Mined Wire Obstacle.
- \*A leader task step.  
+A critical task step.

GO	NO-GO

**TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK**

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

See Appendix A for task numbers and titles that correlate to the numbers listed below by STP and skill level.

**Common Tasks**

Skill Level 1

24, 25, 65, 71, 72, 73, 95, 93, 97

Skill Level 2

6, 7, 8, 9

Skill Level 3

12

Skill Level 4

4

**MOS 11B Tasks**

Skill Level 1

41, 42, 43, 44

Skill Level 2

8, 14, 17

Skill Level 3

2

Skill Level 4

9

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS****TASK: DEFEND OBSTACLE**

**CONDITIONS:** The OPFOR squad is ordered to defend an obstacle. The OPFOR is operating separately or as part of a larger force. The squad must provide its own security. The OPFOR has indirect fire and CAS available.

**STANDARDS:**

1. The OPFOR prevents the platoon from detecting the obstacle.
2. The OPFOR disrupts the breaching operation.
  - a. Prevents the platoon from breaching the obstacle.

**OR**
  - b. Prevents the platoon from moving all personnel through the breach.

**OR**
  - c. Delays the completion of the breach for more than 45 minutes.

**ELEMENT: PLATOON/SQUAD**

**TASK: PERFORM WATERBORNE OPERATIONS**  
(7-3/4-1408) (FM 7-8)

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

TRAINING STATUS T P U (circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon leader receives an operation order directing the platoon to conduct water movement. The platoon is operating separately or as part of a larger unit. The platoon must provide its own security. The platoon conducts tactical operations during hours of daylight and darkness. Both friendly and enemy units have indirect fire available. Some iterations should be performed in MOPP4. Civilians, government organizations, NGOs, PVOs, and the international press are present on the battlefield. The US forces are operating under a restrictive ROE.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon moves to the designated debarkation point and conducts the boat movement according to the time schedule specified in the order. The main body is not surprised by the enemy during the boat movement. The platoon moves all personnel and equipment without loss or damage. The platoon maintains a sufficient fighting force capable of completing the mission and conducting further combat operations. The US forces comply with the ROE. Collateral damage is limited.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

\*1. The platoon leader issues a boat movement annex with the OPOD. (See T&EO 7-3/4-1605, Develop and Communicate a Plan.)

a. Ensures subordinate leaders conduct briefbacks upon receiving the OPOD and conducting their planning.

b. Ensures rehearsals are conducted according to the OPOD.

c. Designates movement formations, techniques, and intervals.

d. Ensures key personnel and equipment are cross-loaded.

\*2. The platoon leader plans for indirect fire support along the river route. (See T&EO 7-3-1200, Employ Fire Support.)

GO	NO-GO



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>3. The squad leaders inspect the boats, supervise the loading and lashing of equipment, and assign a seat number to each soldier.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Cross-load personnel and equipment according to the OPORD.</li> <li>b. Identify weak swimmers.</li> <li>c. Maintain tactical integrity of elements in each boat.</li> </ul> <p>*4. The platoon leader selects the method of navigation.</p> <p>*5. The squad leaders act as the coxswain (boat leader) for each boat.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assign an air guard based on the threat.</li> <li>b. Man at least one automatic weapon or grenade launcher during movement.</li> <li>c. Direct the first paddler on the right to be the observer (alerts the coxswain of obstructions in the water and alerts the navigator of river characteristics).</li> <li>d. Direct the first man to the left to set the stroke to be followed by all paddlers.</li> <li>e. Embark the boat according to the platoon leader's orders or platoon SOP.</li> <li>f. Enforce strict light and noise discipline during movement.</li> <li>g. Avoid obstructions, maintain balance in the boat, and keep the squad alert at all times.</li> <li>h. Steer the boat, using a paddle as a rudder.</li> </ul> <p>*6. The platoon leader knows his location at all times during movement.</p> <p>*7. The platoon leader maintains control of the platoon at all times.</p> <p>8. The platoon maintains the proper formation and interval and moves to reduce detection.</p> <p>9. The platoon reacts to enemy contact as rehearsed.</p> <p>10. The platoon arrives at the debarkation point at the time designated in the OPORD.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Disembarks IAW the SOP or the coxswain's orders.</li> </ul>		

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

b. Establishes local security by the lead boat or individual swimmers from the lead boat.

c. Secures and camouflages the boats (security team may remain if mission requires).

\*11. The squad leaders account for personnel and equipment and report the status to the platoon leader and platoon sergeant.

12. The platoon continues the mission.

\*A leader task step.

--	--

**TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK**

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

See Appendix A for task numbers and titles that correlate to the numbers listed below by STP and skill level.

**Common Tasks**

Skill Level 1

20, 21, 24, 25, 27, 28, 30, 33, 50, 55, 71, 72, 95, 97

Skill Level 2

7, 8, 9, 15, 25

Skill Level 3

12

Skill Level 4

NONE

**MOS 11B Tasks**

Skill Level 1

14, 17, 21, 26, 38, 41, 42, 43, 44

Skill Level 2

8, 14, 18

Skill Level 3

2, 3

**MOS 11B, Skill Level 4**

NONE

### **OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

#### **TASK: DISRUPT WATERBORNE OPERATIONS**

**CONDITIONS:** The OPFOR squad is ordered to defend an area through which likely enemy boat movement will pass. The squad is operating separately or as part of a larger force. The squad must provide its own security. The OPFOR has indirect fire available.

#### **STANDARDS:**

1. The OPFOR detects and surprises the main body.
2. The OPFOR prevents the platoon from moving to its specified location by decisively engaging and fixing the main body.
3. The OPFOR inflicts casualties to make the platoon combat ineffective.

**ELEMENT:** PLATOON/SQUAD**TASK:** PERFORM NBC OPERATIONS (7-3/4-1406) (FM 7-8,  
CTA 50-900, FM 3-3, FM 3-4, FM 3-5, FM 7-10, FM 21-11)

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

TRAINING STATUS T P U (circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon performs combat operations. The enemy or friendly higher echelon can employ nuclear weapons and persistent and nonpersistent chemical agents. All-source intelligence indicates that the enemy is planning a chemical attack in the area of operations. Company headquarters directs the platoon to take appropriate actions to reduce the effects of the chemical attack. The platoon must cross a chemically contaminated area. The company provides a map overlay of the contaminated area. Time is suitable, and the tactical situation provides an opportunity for decontamination operations. A nearby decontamination site has been selected. The platoon receives a NUCWARN message and alerts all units of the minimum safe distance in which they are to be located. Some iterations should be performed in MOPP4. Civilians, government organizations, NGOs, PVOs, and the international press are present on the battlefield. The US forces are operating under a restrictive ROE.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon maintains a combat effective force to fight after a chemical or nuclear attack. The platoon is delayed no more than 20 minutes due to enemy nuclear or chemical attack or contamination. Preparation efforts must be completed before the attack or before the effects of a nuclear or chemical attack reach the platoon's location. The platoon protects personnel, mission-essential equipment, food, and water. The platoon continues its assigned mission. The platoon crosses the contaminated area without loss of personnel and without delay to the platoon's mission. The platoon performs a hasty decontamination of essential equipment, weapons, and contaminated personnel, and is prepared to continue the mission. Personnel do not go out of MOPP4 until an all clear report is given from the platoon leader. Decontamination is completed within six hours of the attack. The platoon is prepared to conduct further follow-on operations. The US forces comply with the ROE. Collateral damage is limited.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. The platoon leader conducts an estimate based on the effects of friendly or enemy use of nuclear or chemical weapons or smoke.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identifies terrain where deficiencies in cover and concealment may be augmented by smoke.</li> <li>b. Locates water sources for possible decontamination sites.</li> <li>c. Conducts a vulnerability analysis.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Locations of forces and resources.</li> <li>• Effects of NBC on each course of action.</li> <li>• Effects of NBC on civilians.</li> <li>• Availability of chemical units to support decontamination, NBC reconnaissance, or smoke operations.</li> <li>• State of training and ability of the platoon to meet the shock and stress of an NBC attack.</li> </ul> </li> <li>d. Chooses the best application of NBC defense or retaliatory responses.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use of obscurants.</li> <li>• Use of flame weapons.</li> <li>• MOPP levels and where MOPP gear will be stored or carried.</li> <li>• Call for chemical fires (if authority received).</li> </ul> </li> <li>e. Ensures control measures and fire support plans support the maneuver plan and prevent friendly NBC casualties.</li> </ul> <p>2. The platoon maintains NBC equipment and supplies IAW MTOE, TOE, TMs, and SOPs.</p> <p>3. The platoon performs chemical monitoring.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Plans chemical surveillance.</li> <li>b. Performs chemical monitoring actions IAW FM 3-3 and the commander's OPORD.</li> <li>c. Identifies the type of agent and general area of contamination correctly within 20 minutes.</li> </ul> <p>4. The platoon prepares for a chemical attack.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Ensures all personnel are in MOPP gear.</p> <p>b. Protects individual equipment with overhead cover according to command MOPP guidance when in a stationary position.</p> <p>c. Attaches M9 paper to overgarments, random supplies, and equipment.</p> <p>d. Ensures that personnel know and understand the signals and warnings for a chemical attack as established in the platoon's SOP.</p> <p>e. Specifies the means to efficiently transmit reports.</p> <p>f. Stores all water, supplies, rations, and equipment not being used in vehicles or undercover.</p> <p>g. Operates the chemical agent alarm upwind when the unit is stationary.</p> <p>5. The platoon prepares defensive positions or shelters. Locates and selects existing or reinforceable facilities such as caves, ditches, ravines, culverts, overpasses, tunnels, and empty ammunition storage bunkers for use as defensive positions or protective shelters.</p> <p>6. The platoon improves positions.</p> <p>a. Prepares and uses overhead cover on defensive positions.</p> <p>b. Emplaces sandbags around positions to reduce the effects of the attack.</p> <p>c. Directs and implements actions to increase personnel protection consistent with the mission and tactical situation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Monitors personnel combat effectiveness IAW performance-degradation data outlined in FM 3-4, Appendix A.</li> <li>• Establishes work and rest periods for personnel to match current temperatures and type of work (light, moderate, or heavy) IAW FM 3-4.</li> </ul> <p>7. The platoon reacts to a chemical attack.</p> <p>a. Masks and gives alarm IAW SOP.</p> <p>b. Decontaminates exposed skin within one minute of contact and before going into MOPP4.</p>		

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

- c. Performs immediate decontamination IAW FM 3-5, Chapter 4, as soon as the situation permits.
- d. Ensures all personnel go to MOPP4 within eight minutes.
- e. (Buddy or combat life saver) Immediately perform first aid on all casualties within two minutes or when the tactical situation permits (IAW STP 21-1-SMCT). The tactical mission always takes priority.
- f. Evacuates chemical casualties for treatment by medical personnel immediately.
- g. Uses chemical detection equipment to determine the extent and nature of the hazard. Identifies the agent within 20 minutes.
- h. Submits NBC reports to higher headquarters immediately.
- i. Continues the mission or requests movement to an alternate location.
- j. Determines and disseminates the area of contamination and reports or directs action.
- k. Ensures no casualties occur to elements not in the initial area of strike. Contaminated elements do not move through uncontaminated elements. Elements do not move through contaminated areas unless required by the tactical situation. If they do, they are all in MOPP4.
- l. Executes operational decontamination, resupply of replacements, and MOPP exchange for all contaminated elements within six hours of being contaminated.
  - (1) Moves to the decontamination site at the appropriate time.
  - (2) Ensures the site is covered and concealed.
  - (3) Occupies the position and establishes local, all-round security.
  - (4) Checks all personnel in the platoon for contamination of uniforms and physical signs of contamination. All contamination is located.
  - (5) Sweeps all loose radioactive particles and debris from vehicles, equipment, and personnel. Sprays all chemical contamination on vehicles and equipment with an M11 decontamination apparatus.

GO	NO-GO

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

(6) Performs MOPP uniform exchange for all contaminated personnel.

(7) Inspects equipment (CTA 50-900, tarpaulins, weapons, and radios) after the decontamination work is complete.

8. The platoon performs a thorough chemical or nuclear decontamination IAW FM 3-5, Chapter 6.

a. Conducts a detailed troop decontamination.

(1) Ensures all weapons are cleared and on SAFE before entering the site.

(2) Maintains at least 3 meters between stations to prevent cross contamination.

(3) Provides trained personnel from the platoon to assist in the detailed decontamination.

(4) Positions alarms upwind of the site.

(5) Makes every attempt to use hot soapy water.

(6) Ensures personnel are decontaminated to negligible risk levels.

b. Conducts a detailed equipment decontamination.

(1) Maintains at least 30 to 50 meters between stations to prevent cross contamination.

(2) Provides toxicological agent protective aprons or wet weather gear to protect soldier's overgarments during decontamination.

(3) Removes exterior mounted supplies and equipment susceptible to damage by decontaminants or decontamination procedures.

(4) Ensures all ammunition and equipment items have been decontaminated before personnel return to duty.

(5) Conducts periodic detection checks for several hours after decontamination to detect desorbing vapors that could harm crews.

(6) Moves the vehicles through the site and into the wind.

(7) Crews continue to wear gloves while handling decontaminated equipment to prevent direct contact with desorbing agent.



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Marks the contaminated decontamination site before departing.</p> <p>9. The platoon prepares for a friendly nuclear strike. (See FM 3-3, Chapter 2.)</p> <p>a. Authenticates the NUCWARN report and relays the alert to all subordinate leaders.</p> <p>b. Executes orders and takes actions according to their minimum safe distance (MSD) zone.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• More than MSD 3: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><i>Ten minutes before the attack—</i></li> <li>Covers and protects food and water containers.</li> <li>Secures loose, flammable, and explosive items.</li> <li>Zeros radiation-monitoring equipment.</li> <li>Ties down antennas.</li> <li><i>Five minutes before the attack—</i></li> <li>Closes nonessential sites and optics.</li> <li>Shuts off radios, and disconnects and grounds antenna leads from the face of the radios.</li> <li>Takes protective measures for dazzle (closes or protects eyes).</li> </ul> </li> <li>• For MSD 3: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><i>Ten minutes before the attack—</i></li> <li>Covers and protects food and water containers.</li> <li>Secures loose, flammable, and explosive items.</li> <li>Zeros radiation-monitoring equipment.</li> <li>Ties down antennas.</li> <li>Stores essential equipment in turret.</li> <li><i>Two minutes before the attack—</i></li> <li>Closes nonessential sights and optics.</li> <li>Ensures OPs or dismounted personnel are in protective shelters.</li> <li>Shuts off radios, and disconnects and grounds antenna leads from the face of the radios.</li> <li>Takes protective measures for dazzle (closes or protects eyes).</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For MSD 2:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><i>Ten minutes before the attack—</i></li> <li>Positions personnel, vehicles, and equipment for best terrain shielding.</li> <li>Secures food, water, and CTA 50-900 inside shelters.</li> <li>Places all loose, flammable, and explosive items away from vehicles or personnel and shields them if possible.</li> <li>Zeros radiation-monitoring equipment.</li> <li>Strips natural or flammable camouflage from vehicles.</li> <li><i>Five minutes before the attack—</i></li> <li>Closes nonessential sights and optics.</li> <li>Ensures OPs or patrols return to protective shelters.</li> <li>Turns off and disconnects all nonessential electronic equipment.</li> <li>Takes down nonessential antennas and stores them.</li> <li>Takes down upper mast of essential antennas and ties down base.</li> <li><i>Two minutes before the attack—</i></li> <li>Closes all sights and optics.</li> <li>Shuts off radios, and disconnects and grounds antenna leads from the face of the radios.</li> <li>Takes protective measures for dazzle (closes or protects eyes).</li> <li>Ensures all personnel brace for attack.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• For MSD 1: Moves to a position outside the MSD I zone in time to make preparations for the appropriate MSD zone.</li> </ul> <p>10. The platoon receives and sends status reports on unit NUCWARN preparations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Receives reports from each unit on their current status and when they are prepared for the strike.</li> <li>b. Sends current status reports to the company.</li> </ul> <p>11. The platoon prepares to cross a contaminated area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Crosses the contaminated areas only when required by the tactical situation and uses the shortest routes.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Ensures the units take the correct protective actions and comply with the commander's operational exposure guidance IAW FM 3-3, Appendix A.</p> <p>c. Identifies the location of the contaminated area. Boundaries are posted on the map to within 10 meters of actual boundaries.</p> <p>d. Uses the map overlay and NBC 5 report to select the best route through the contaminated area. Subjective analysis must determine the quickest, most secure, and best route.</p> <p>e. Halts at least 500 meters short of the contaminated area to upgrade the MOPP level. Completes the MOPP up grade within eight minutes.</p> <p>f. Directs each squad to execute actions at the halt such as providing its own security. All-round security is provided to weapon systems oriented on high-speed avenues of approach.</p> <p>g. Ensures all personnel are at MOPP4 before movement into the contaminated area.</p> <p>h. Places all externally stored equipment inside the vehicles or rucksacks before entering the contaminated area.</p> <p>i. Places M8/M9 detection paper on all personnel and equipment.</p> <p>12. The platoon crosses the contaminated area.</p> <p>a. Extends the interval between squads and personnel. Avoids the dust of the units ahead, since the interval is METT-T dependent.</p> <p>b. Slows column speed.</p> <p>c. Continues to move without departing the directed crossing route.</p> <p>d. Avoids puddles, overhanging branches, and brush.</p> <p>13. The platoon exits the contaminated area.</p> <p>a. Moves at least 500 meters from the area before halting.</p> <p>b. Controls the actions of the squads as they exit.</p> <p>c. Administers first aid to all casualties within five minutes of halt.</p>		

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

- d. Performs an operational and or a thorough decontamination, if the situation permits. (See task steps 7 and 8.)
- 14. The platoon continues to monitor the NBC detection devices.
- 15. The platoon maintains a record of the radiation dose received during and after the attack.
- 16. The platoon reports contamination levels to the company.

--	--

\*A leader task step.

**TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK**

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

See Appendix A for task numbers and titles that correlate to the numbers listed below by STP and skill level.

**Common Tasks**

Skill Level 1

1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 76, 77

Skill Level 2

1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 9

Skill Level 3

1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7

Skill Level 4

1

**MOS 11B Tasks**

Skill Level 1

1, 2, 3

Skill Level 2

3

Skill Level 3

NONE

Skill Level 4

1, 3

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK: EMPLOY NBC WEAPONS**

**CONDITIONS:** The OPFOR is operating separately or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is ordered to employ NBC weapons.

**STANDARDS:**

1. The OPFOR prevents the platoon from reaching the objective within the time given in the OPORD.
2. The OPFOR delays the platoon for one hour to go to MOPP4.

**ELEMENT: PLATOON**

**TASK: CONSTRUCT AN OBSTACLE (7-3-1404) (FM 7-8, FM 5-34, FM 5-102)**

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

TRAINING STATUS T P U (circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is executing a mission that requires constructing obstacles. The platoon is operating separately or as part of a larger force. The platoon must provide its own security. Both friendly and enemy elements have indirect fire and CAS capabilities. Some iterations should be performed in MOPP4. Civilians, government organizations, NGOs, PVOs, and the international press are present on the battlefield. The US forces are operating under a restrictive ROE.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon emplaces obstacles within the time specified by the company commander. The placement of obstacles should complement each other. The obstacles should be tied in with the terrain so that the platoon can provide massed direct and indirect fires on the enemy. The obstacles disrupt, turn, fix, or hold the enemy force. The obstacles should be covered by direct fire. The US forces comply with the ROE. Collateral damage is limited.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

<p>*1. The platoon leader reconnoiters the terrain in front of the platoon position and develops an obstacle plan. (FM 5-102, page 56.)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Analyzes the mission.</li> <li>b. Analyzes the avenues of approach.</li> <li>c. Analyzes engagement area, battle positions, and location of weapons systems.</li> <li>d. Determines possible obstacle locations and types if not directed from higher headquarters.</li> <li>e. Determines obstacle priorities.</li> <li>f. Determines resources available and necessary.</li> <li>g. Determines actual work sequence and time required.</li> <li>h. Determines task organization.</li> <li>i. Determines coordination required.</li> <li>j. Plans for deception with possible phony minefields.</li> </ul> <p>*2. The platoon leader employs obstacles. (See FM 7-8, Chapter 2.)</p>		
---	--	--

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Ensures obstacles support the tactical plan.</p> <p>b. Ensures obstacles are covered by observation and fire.</p> <p>c. Ensures obstacles tie in with and support the flank units, existing obstacles, and fire plans (indirect and direct).</p> <p>d. Constructs obstacles in depth.</p> <p>e. Employs obstacles for surprise.</p> <p>f. Positions protective obstacles outside hand-grenade range.</p> <p>g. Emplaces obstacles by priority IAW in OPORD.</p> <p>*3. The platoon leader assigns obstacle construction tasks to the squads (by sector or as a task throughout the platoon area).</p> <p>4. The squads construct the obstacles.</p> <p>a. Organize for construction according to the task organization.</p> <p>b. Construct the obstacles.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Hasty protective minefield.</li> <li>• Triple standard concertina.</li> <li>• Knife rest.</li> <li>• Abatis.</li> </ul> <p>c. Maintain security during construction.</p> <p>d. Camouflage the obstacles.</p> <p>*5. The platoon leader reports emplacement of minefields and obstacles to higher headquarters.</p> <p>a. Submits the intention to emplace the minefields and reports to the company commander.</p> <p>b. Reports initiation to the company commander or higher headquarters.</p> <p>c. Records minefields on DA Form 1355-1-R. The leader retains a copy and forwards a copy to the company commander.</p> <p>d. Includes all obstacles on sector sketches and defensive plans.</p> <p>e. Reports the completion of the minefields.</p> <p>6. The platoon may be required to remove obstacles.</p>		

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

<p>a. Recovers mines with the same personnel who emplaced them.</p> <p>b. Disarms and recovers mines, beginning with the row nearest the friendly side.</p> <p>c. Ensures the security force remains with the recovery team until all mines are disarmed and recovered.</p> <p>d. Destroys DA Form 1355-1-R upon completion of recovery.</p> <p>*7. The platoon leader reports the removal of minefields and obstacles to the company commander.</p> <p>*8. The platoon leader transfers the responsibility of obstacles.</p> <p>a. Ensures the leader of the gaining unit (as applicable) signs, dates, and accepts DA Form 1355-1-R from the platoon leader being relieved. The platoon reports the transfer.</p> <p>b. Forwards a copy of the signed DA Form 1355-1-R to the company commander.</p>				
--	--	--	--	--

\*A leader task step.

**TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK**

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

See Appendix A for task numbers and titles that correlate to the numbers listed below by STP and skill level.

**Common Tasks**

Skill Level 1

22, 25, 61, 62, 63, 65, 66, 71, 72, 73, 95, 97



Skill Level 2  
6, 7, 8, 12, 13, 25

Skill Level 3  
12

Skill Level 4  
4

**MOS 11B Tasks**

Skill Level 1  
4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45

Skill Level 2  
4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 14, 15

Skill Level 3  
2, 5, 6

Skill Level 4  
2

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK: DEFEAT OBSTACLE**

**CONDITIONS:** The OPFOR platoon is ordered to defeat a reinforced obstacle in order to continue combat operations. The OPFOR is equipped with bangalore torpedoes, wire-cutting equipment, and mine probes. The OPFOR may be assisted by engineers. The OPFOR has indirect fire and CAS available. The OPFOR may operate separately or as part of a larger force.

**STANDARDS:**

1. The OPFOR detects the obstacle before halting its main body.
2. The OPFOR defeats the obstacle.
  - a. Bypasses the obstacle without entering engagement areas.
  - b. Breaches the obstacle within 45 minutes and passes its entire force through.

**ELEMENT:** PLATOON/SQUAD

**TASK:** MAINTAIN OPERATIONS SECURITY (7-3/4-1409) (FM 7-8)

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

TRAINING STATUS T P U (circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is conducting tactical operations. The platoon is operating separately or as part of a larger force. The enemy has the capability to detect the platoon visually, audibly, and electronically. Some iterations should be performed in MOPP4. Civilians, government organizations, NGOs, PVOs, and the international press are present on the battlefield. The US forces are operating under a restrictive ROE.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon prevents the enemy from learning its strength, dispositions, and intentions. The platoon prevents the enemy from surprising its main body and uses active and passive noise and light discipline. The US forces comply with the ROE. Collateral damage is limited.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

<p>*1. The leaders protect friendly information by checking or performing the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prohibit fraternization with civilians (as applicable).</li> <li>b. Ensure uncontrolled maps do not contain the friendly order of battle.</li> <li>c. Conduct inspections and give briefings to ensure that personnel do not carry details of military activities in personal materials (letters, diaries, notes, drawings, sketches, or photographs).</li> <li>d. Safeguard weapons, ammunition, sensitive items, classified documents.</li> <li>e. Sanitize all planning areas and positions before departure.</li> </ul> <p>2. The platoon employs active and passive security measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Man and performs surveillance from an OP IAW T&amp;EO 7-3/4-1008, Perform Surveillance From an Observation Post.</li> <li>b. Conducts counterreconnaissance patrols.</li> <li>c. Destroys enemy reconnaissance elements.</li> <li>d. Conducts stand-to procedures.</li> <li>e. Establishes local security.</li> </ul>		
--	--	--

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>f. Establishes specific levels of alert (based on METT-T).</p> <p>g. Uses camouflage.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ensures fighting positions are camouflaged using all exposed dirt to break the outline of a position. Checks the position from the enemy's point of view.</li> <li>• Ensures camouflage nets (if used) are hung properly.</li> <li>• Employs overhead camouflage and sites positions and personnel to prevent detection from the air.</li> <li>• Keeps personnel and equipment in the shadows, when possible.</li> <li>• Ensures all personnel use camouflage paint to cover exposed skin.</li> <li>• Camouflages equipment using vegetation to break up the outline of the equipment and to cover all reflective surfaces.</li> </ul> <p>h. Enforces litter discipline.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Collects and backhauls trash during logistics runs, during stationary periods.</li> <li>• Carries trash until it can be disposed of securely.</li> </ul> <p>i. Uses terrain and vegetation for concealment.</p> <p>j. Controls movement.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Uses the proper movement formation and movement technique.</li> <li>• Moves as fast as the situation permits.</li> <li>• Moves along covered and concealed routes.</li> </ul> <p>3. The platoon enforces radio discipline.</p> <p>a. Uses the proper radio procedures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Changes frequencies and call signs IAW platoon SOI.</li> <li>• Uses varied transmissions schedules and lengths.</li> <li>• Uses established formats to expedite transmissions.</li> <li>• Encodes messages or uses secure voice.</li> <li>• Uses brevity codes, when possible.</li> <li>• Uses the lowest power settings possible.</li> <li>• Avoids transmission patterns.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Maintains radio silence, as directed.</li> <li>b. Takes action if jamming is suspected.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Continues to operate.</li> <li>• Disconnects the antenna.</li> <li>• Switches to the highest power.</li> <li>• Relocates the radio.</li> <li>• Uses directional antennas.</li> <li>• Turns the squelch off.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Uses messenger and wire whenever possible, especially in static positions.</li> <li>d. Uses the radio in the quiet-message mode. Transmits an arranged number of taps or uses the PUSH-TO-TALK switch in the same manner.</li> <li>*4. The platoon leadership enforces light discipline.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Uses a poncho to conceal lights that are necessary for planning or reading a map. Ensures all flashlights have filters.</li> <li>b. Ensures all personnel remove or tape personal items that may reflect light (identification tags, rings, watches).</li> <li>c. Uses hand grenades and Claymore mines to eliminate exposure of individual positions by weapon muzzle flashes.</li> <li>d. Builds cooking fires or smokes cigarettes, during daylight or darkness, only with permission of a leader.</li> <li>e. Uses only passive night observation equipment (if possible); active infrared sources can be detected.</li> </ul> </li> <li>*5. The platoon leadership enforces noise discipline.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identifies shortcomings in noise discipline during final inspections.</li> <li>b. Ensures personnel tape down or remove items that make noise.</li> <li>c. Uses normal means of communication to the greatest extent possible.</li> <li>d. Prohibits talking except as required to conduct or plan operations.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

**GO NO-GO**

e. Ensures arm-and-hand signals are used along with night vision devices.

f. Considers using a tug line as a means of communication in a static position.

--	--

\*A leader task step.

**TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK**

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

See Appendix A for task numbers and titles that correlate to the numbers listed below by STP and skill level.

**Common Tasks**

Skill Level 1

20, 21, 23, 24, 60, 61, 62, 63, 71, 72, 73, 93, 95, 97

Skill Level 2

9, 12, 13, 14, 25

Skill Level 3

10, 12

Skill level 4

NONE

**MOS 11B Tasks**

Skill Level 1

41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 54, 55, 56, 57

Skill Level 2

1, 2, 14, 15

Skill Level 3

5, 6, 7

Skill Level 4  
11, 12, 13

### **OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

#### **TASK: GATHER INTELLIGENCE**

**CONDITIONS:** The OPFOR squad/platoon is ordered to gather intelligence through reconnaissance and surveillance. The OPFOR is operating separately or as part of a larger unit.

#### **STANDARDS:**

1. The OPFOR locates at least 66 percent of the elements and 50 percent of crew-served and automatic weapons.
2. The OPFOR determines the platoon's intentions.
3. The OPFOR determines the platoon's strength (plus or minus 10 percent) and echelon (squad, platoon, company).
4. The OPFOR obtains specified PIR on the platoons.
5. The OPFOR reports all information to higher headquarters.
6. The OPFOR surprises the main body.

**ELEMENT: PLATOON/SQUAD**

**TASK: ESTABLISH A ROADBLOCK/CHECKPOINT (7-3/4-1401)**  
 (FM 7-10, FM 7-8, FM 7-20, FM 7-98, FM 19-15, FM 90-8)

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

TRAINING STATUS T P U (circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon leader receives a WO to construct a roadblock/checkpoint. The platoon is provided the rules of engagement; information as to the direction of the threat; suitable construction materials, tools, and transportation. Continuous operations (day and night) are envisioned. Civilian population and vehicles are in the area of operation. Some iterations should be performed in MOPP4. Civilians, government organizations, NGOs, PVOs, and the international press are present on the battlefield. The US forces are operating under a restrictive ROE.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon plans and constructs the roadblock/checkpoint IAW the commander's guidance. The position and orientation of the barriers prevent passage or limit entry and exit by personnel and vehicles into or from the specified area. The platoon leader ensures all platoon members understand the ROE. The platoon is not surprised by any infiltrating military or paramilitary forces. The US forces comply with the ROE. Collateral damage is limited.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES** GO NO-GO

<p>*1. The platoon leader receives the mission from the company commander to establish a roadblock/checkpoint.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Clarifies any questions on the ROE.</li> <li>b. Clarifies the purpose of the roadblock/checkpoint.</li> <li>c. Clarifies the type of roadblock/checkpoint (deliberate or hasty). (See FM 7-10, Appendix A.)</li> </ul> <p>*2. The platoon leader conducts troop-leading procedures and issues OPORD. (See T&amp;EO 7-3/4-1605, Develop and Communicate a Plan.)</p> <p>*3. The platoon leader selects the roadblock/checkpoint site.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Sites tactically so that the roadblock/checkpoint cannot be seen more than a short distance away to prevent drivers</li> </ul>		
--	--	--

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

from avoiding it. Using culverts, bridges, deep cuts, sharp bends or dips in a road are ideal.

b. Ensures the roadblock/checkpoint is not positioned so that it is such a sudden surprise drivers will not have enough time to stop safely.

c. Places roadblock/checkpoint in depth.

d. Considers the balance between force protection and the ROE when positioning roadblock/checkpoints.

\*4. The platoon leader organizes the platoon to operate the roadblock/checkpoint 24 hours.

a. Assigns vehicle, male, and female search teams.

b. Assigns close-in and far security or support-by-fire positions.

c. Establishes a command and control cell to maintain communications with higher headquarters and control operations.

5. The platoon constructs the roadblock/checkpoint according to the platoon leader's plan. (For an example of a layout, see FM 90-8, Appendix G.)

a. Emplaces two parallel obstacles across the road. The barriers should have gaps negotiable only by slowly moving vehicles to allow the search or security teams to observe them closely.

b. Ensures the number and separation of obstacles are based on the amount of traffic to be held in the search area.

c. Establishes a second position to hastily block personnel or vehicles attempting to flee.

d. Marks all perimeter barriers, wires, and limits with warning signs. (Signs in the native language and in English should be used, if available.)

e. Establishes female search areas.

f. Establishes vehicle search areas.

g. Establishes security force positions.

h. Prepares drop holes for searcher protection in the event of problems during the search and to prevent the searchers from masking the security element fires.

i. Ensures there is adequate lighting for night operations.



**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

- j. Ensures the civilian population understands the roadblock/checkpoint is a preventive and not a punitive measure.
- k. Ensures a translator is present at the roadblock/checkpoint.
- 6. The platoon maintains security.
  - a. Ensures an element is positioned and concealed an appropriate distance (one hundred to several hundred meters) from the roadblock/checkpoint to prevent the escape of any vehicle or person attempting to turn back upon sighting the roadblock/checkpoint.
  - b. Establishes a rest area for personnel near the search area so personnel can be assembled quickly as a reserve force.
  - c. Searches all vehicles and personnel for certain items as directed by the company commander.
  - d. Develops measures for protecting searchers from possible explosives (if possible dig the vehicle search area into the ground to deflect the blasts upward).
  - e. Ensures the close-in security element that fields of fire are not masked.
  - f. Uses sentries and patrols to prevent possible ambush.
- 7. The platoon reacts to hostile actions.
  - a. Fires warning shots to deter the breach, if authorized by the ROE.
  - b. Controls exfiltrating civilians with the greatest force necessary.
  - c. Uses the greatest force necessary to disarm exfiltrating military or paramilitary forces.
  - d. Attacks to disable all vehicles attempting to breach or flee.
  - e. Destroys vehicles that return or initiate fires.
  - f. Destroys vehicles that persist in attempting a breach.
- \*8. The platoon leader disseminates and enforces the ROE.
  - a. Ensures personnel are aware of the ROE and the limitations regarding search, arrest, and use of force.

GO	NO-GO

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

- b. Ensures compliance of ROE by positioning himself close to the search area.
  - c. Ensures when searching, politeness and consideration are shown at all times.
  - 9. The platoon keeps the enemy off balance by moving the roadblock/checkpoint.
    - a. Establishes SOPs for moving the roadblock/checkpoint.
    - b. Stores prepackaged roadblock/checkpoint equipment on vehicles and rehearses setting up quickly.
    - c. Makes roadblock/checkpoint turnover procedures as detailed as minefield turnover or relief-in-place procedures.
  - 10. The platoon continually improves the roadblock/checkpoint as the time and situation permits.
- \*A leader task step.

--	--

**TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK**

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

See Appendix A for task numbers and titles that correlate to the numbers listed below by STP and skill level.

**Common Tasks**

Skill Level 1

20, 21, 24, 25, 41, 45, 50, 55, 58, 61, 68, 69, 71, 72, 73, 93, 95, 97

Skill Level 2

9, 11, 25

Skill Level 3

12

Skill Level 4  
NONE

**MOS 11B Tasks**

Skill Level 1  
14, 17, 21, 26, 38, 41, 42, 43, 44, 54, 56, 57

Skill Level 2  
1, 2, 14, 17, 18

Skill Level 3  
5

Skill Level 4  
NONE

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK: DEFEAT A ROADBLOCK/CHECKPOINT**

**CONDITIONS:** The OPFOR is mounted or dismounted in military or nonmilitary clothing. The OPFOR attempts to defeat a roadblock/checkpoint.

**STANDARDS:**

1. The OPFOR destroys or penetrates the roadblock/checkpoint.
  - a. Infiltrates the roadblock/checkpoint.

**OR**
  - b. Ambushes the forces in the search area.

**OR**
  - c. Breach the roadblock/checkpoint with a vehicle.

**OR**
  - d. Inflict casualties with a booby trapped vehicle.

**ELEMENT: PLATOON/SQUAD**

**TASK: CONDUCT INITIAL BREACH OF A MINED WIRE OBSTACLE (7-3/4-1403) (FM 7-8)**

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)  
 TRAINING STATUS T P U (circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is operating as part of a larger force. The lead squad identifies a wire obstacle, reinforced with mines. The obstacle cannot be bypassed and enemy positions are on the far side of the obstacle. Both friendly and enemy forces have indirect fires available. Some iterations should be performed in MOPP4. Civilians, government organizations, NGOs, PVOs, and the international press are present on the battlefield. The US forces are operating under a restrictive ROE.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon makes a breach in the obstacle and moves all effective personnel and equipment through the breach within the time specified by the company commander. The platoon moves the support element or follow-on forces through the breach. The US forces comply with the ROE. Collateral damage is limited.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES** GO NO-GO

<p>*1. The platoon leader, RATELO, platoon FO, and one machine gun team move forward to link up with the squad leader of the lead squad.</p> <p>*2. The platoon leader determines that the platoon can breach the obstacle. (If the platoon leader determines that he cannot breach the obstacle, he notifies the company commander and prepares to support a company breach.)</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Identifies the obstacle and enemy positions covering it by fire.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">b. Identifies the size of the enemy force engaging the squad (the number of enemy automatic weapons, the presence of any vehicles, and the employment of indirect fires are indicators of enemy strength).</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">c. Determines a breach point.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">d. Identifies a covered and concealed route to the breach point.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">e. Identifies a support by fire position large enough for a squad reinforced with machine guns.</p>		
---	--	--

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

- \*3. The platoon leader directs one squad to support the movement of the other squad(s) to the breach point.
  - a. Indicates the support-by-fire position and route to it.
  - b. Indicates the enemy position to be suppressed.
  - c. Informs the squad leader of the breach point and the route that the rest of the platoon will take.
  - d. Gives instructions for lifting and shifting fires.
- \*4. The platoon leader designates one squad as the breach squad, and the remaining squad as the assault squad once the breach has been made. (The assault squad may add its fires to the base-of-fire element. Normally, it follows the covered and concealed route of the breach squad and assaults through immediately after the breach is made.)
- \*5. The designated squad moves to and establishes a base of fire.
- \*6. The platoon sergeant moves forward to the base-of-fire element with the second machine gun team and assumes control of that element.
- 7. The breach squad prepares for the breach.
  - a. Prepares teams, consisting of a demolition specialist and a lane marker.
  - b. Ensures each member wears body armor, if available, and carries three white smoke grenades for self-screening during the breaching operation.
  - c. Prepares demolitions.
  - d. Carries protective masks while conducting the breach.
  - e. Carries wire cutters, work gloves, and any additional required equipment.
  - f. Prepares smoke pots for immediate use upon breaching the obstacle.
- 8. On the platoon leader's signal, the base-of-fire element initiates fire.
  - a. Destroys or suppresses enemy crew-served weapons.
  - b. Obscures the enemy's ability to place effective fires on the obstacle with smoke (M203, mortar, or artillery).
  - c. Sustains suppressive fires at the lowest possible level.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

\*9. The platoon leader leads the breach and assault squads along the covered and concealed route to the breach point.

10. The platoon FO calls for and adjusts indirect fires as directed by the platoon leader.

\*11. The breach squad leader directs actions of his squad to breach the obstacle.

a. Directs one fire team to support the movement of the other fire team to the breach point.

b. Identifies the breach point.

c. Confers with the platoon leader to ensure continuous suppressive fires from the base-of-fire element to isolate the breach point.

d. Leads the breaching fire team to the breach point using the covered and concealed route.

- The squad leader and breaching fire team leader employ smoke grenades to obscure the breach point. The platoon base-of-fire element shifts direct fires away from the breach point and continues to suppress key enemy positions. The platoon FO lifts indirect fires or shifts them beyond the obstacle.
- The breaching fire team leader positions himself and the automatic rifleman on one flank of the breach point to provide close-in security.
- The grenadier and rifleman of the breaching fire team probe up to the obstacle and inspect it for pressure prongs and trip wires.
- Demolitions are exploded to breach the obstacle, if available. If no demolitions are available, the breach personnel must physically cut the wire obstacles.
- All mines are marked IAW the platoon SOP.
- Trip wires are traced to origin, slack wires are cut, and taut wires are marked IAW the SOP.
- The footpath is marked IAW the platoon SOP.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

**GO NO-GO**

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Once the obstacle has been breached, the breaching fire team leader and the automatic rifleman move to the far side of the obstacle and take up covered and concealed positions with the rifleman and grenadier. The team leader signals to the squad leader when they are in position and ready to support.</li> <li>e. Signals the supporting fire team leader to move his fire team up through the breach and move through the breach.</li> <li>f. Ensures the grenadier and rifleman of the supporting fire team remain on the near side of the breach to guide the rest of the platoon through.</li> <li>g. Ensures the supporting fire team moves through the breach and takes up covered and concealed positions on the far side.</li> <li>h. Reports to the platoon leader and consolidates as needed.</li> <li>*12. The platoon leader leads the assault squad through the breach in the obstacle and positions them beyond the breach to support the movement of the remainder of the platoon or assaults the enemy position covering the obstacle.</li> <li>13. The breach squad widens the breach.             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moves back through the breach and widens the lanes to the size directed by the platoon leader.</li> <li>b. Marks the boundaries of the lanes.</li> <li>c. Rejoins the platoon.</li> </ul> </li> <li>*14. The platoon leader reports the situation to the company commander and directs the base-of-fire element to move up and through the obstacle. The platoon leader leaves guides to guide the company through the breach point.</li> <li>15. The company follows up the success of the platoon as it conducts the breach and continues the assault against the enemy positions.</li> <li>*A leader task step.</li> </ul>		
---	--	--

**TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK**

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

See Appendix A for task numbers and titles that correlate to the numbers listed below by STP and skill level.

**Common Tasks**

## Skill Level 1

20, 21, 22, 24, 25, 36, 37, 38, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 47, 48, 49, 50, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 58, 59, 60, 61, 64, 65, 66, 67, 68, 71, 72, 73, 93, 95, 97

## Skill Level 2

6, 7, 8, 9, 25

## Skill Level 3

12

## Skill Level 4

NONE

**MOS 11B Tasks**

## Skill Level 1

6, 9, 14, 17, 21, 26, 38, 41, 42, 43, 44, 48

## Skill Level 2

5, 6, 7, 8, 14, 15, 16, 19

## Skill Level 3

4, 5

## Skill Level 4

4, 10

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS****TASK: DEFEND OBSTACLE**

**CONDITIONS:** The OPFOR is ordered to defend a wire obstacle reinforced with mines. The OPFOR may defend the obstacle with ground action or indirect fire. The OPFOR may operate separately or as part of a larger force.



**STANDARDS:**

1. The OPFOR disrupts the breaching operation.
  - a. Prevents the platoon from breaching the obstacle.

**OR**
  - b. Prevents the platoon from moving all personnel through the breach.

**OR**
  - c. Delays the completion of the breach for more than 45 minutes.
2. The OPFOR inflicts enough casualties to make the platoon combat ineffective.

**ELEMENT:** PLATOON/SQUAD

**TASK:** DEFEND AGAINST AIR ATTACK (7-3/4-1301)  
(FM 7-8, AR 40-5, FM 21-10, FM 44-8)

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

TRAINING STATUS T P U (circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is tactically deployed separately or as part of a larger unit. Hostile aircraft have been operating in the area. The platoon must provide its own security. Any member alerts the platoon of approaching aircraft or aircraft fires on the unit. Some iterations should be performed in MOPP4. Civilians, government organizations, NGOs, PVOs, and the international press are present on the battlefield. The US forces are operating under a restrictive ROE.

**TASK STANDARDS:** All personnel start and stop fire on order, or start fire within three seconds of being fired on and stop on order. All personnel use the engagement technique ordered by the leader. The platoon destroys hostile aircraft or disrupts the attack. The platoon continues follow-on operations. The US forces comply with the ROE. Collateral damage is limited.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

<p>1. The platoon takes action against hostile aircraft firing on the unit.</p> <p>a. (Any member) Alerts the platoon of approaching aircraft.</p> <p>b. If fired on by the aircraft, without order or signal, immediately returns fire, using the appropriate engagement technique.</p> <p>c. If not fired on, leaders order personnel to freeze.</p> <p>Platoon members:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use all available cover and concealment.</li> <li>• Use dispersion techniques.</li> <li>• Prepare to engage enemy aircraft on order.</li> </ul> <p>d. Tracks aircraft.</p> <p>*2. The platoon leader identifies aircraft as enemy.</p> <p>a. Selects an engagement technique based on the type of aircraft and direction of attack.</p>		
---	--	--

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
<p>b. Orders the platoon to fire using the selected engagement technique, if the aircraft is to be engaged.</p> <p>+3. On order, platoon members fire at enemy aircraft (cyclic rate of fire), using directed engagement technique.</p> <p>*4. The platoon leader orders platoon members to cease fire.</p> <p>*5. The platoon leader reports enemy aircraft (type, location, course) to the company CP.</p> <p>6. The platoon consolidates and reorganizes based on T&amp;EO 7-3/4-1607, Perform Consolidation and Reorganization.</p> <p>7. The platoon continues the mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Resumes the proper formation, if moving.</li> </ul> <p>*A leader task step. +A critical task step.</p>		

**TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK**

<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
<b>TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED</b>							
<b>TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"</b>							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

See Appendix A for task numbers and titles that correlate to the numbers listed below by STP and skill level.

**Common Tasks**

- Skill Level 1  
24, 25, 41, 55, 68, 72, 96, 97
- Skill Level 2  
9, 25, 26
- Skill Level 3  
NONE

Skill Level 4  
NONE

**MOS 11B Tasks**

Skill Level 1  
14, 17, 21, 41, 42, 43

Skill Level 2  
14, 16

Skill Level 3  
NONE

Skill Level 4  
NONE

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** PERFORM AIR ATTACK

**CONDITIONS:** The OPFOR fixed- or rotary-wing aircraft detect enemy forces and are ordered to engage the enemy.

**STANDARDS:**

1. The OPFOR surprises the platoon with an air attack.
2. The OPFOR inflicts casualties on the platoon.
3. The OPFOR does not lose any aircraft to ground fire.

**ELEMENT:** PLATOON/SQUAD

**TASK:** PERFORM COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT OPERATIONS  
(7-3/4-1501) (FM 7-8, FM 21-10)

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

TRAINING STATUS T P U (circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon must conduct extended tactical operations. The platoon is operating separately or as part of a larger force. The platoon must provide its own security when operating separately. Some iterations should be performed in MOPP4. Civilians, government organizations, NGOs, PVOs, and the international press are present on the battlefield. The US forces are operating under a restrictive ROE.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon leader reports personnel, equipment, and supply status IAW the platoon SOP. The platoon mission is not hindered by lack of supplies or ammunition. Maintenance problems with weapons, communications, or other equipment does not prevent the platoon from accomplishing its mission. The US forces comply with the ROE. Collateral damage is limited.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

- \*1. The platoon leader anticipates resupply needs and ensures resupply and maintenance requests are submitted early so that unit resupply and maintenance do not affect the mission.
  - a. Reports equipment status and losses IAW the platoon SOP.
  - b. Reports supply status IAW the platoon SOP.
  - c. Submits reports following the major changes in the status that impair mission accomplishment or IAW the platoon SOP.
- \*2. The platoon leader plans for sustainment of combat operations.
  - a. Determines ammunition requirements and other supply needs.
  - b. Issues guidance on the soldier's load and ensures loads are equally distributed.
    - Combat load.
    - Sustainment load.

GO	NO-GO

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

c. Determines the transportation needed to support the operation then requests it.

\*3. The platoon sergeant ensures required basic load, supplies, and platoon operational equipment are on hand.

a. Consolidates requests from squad leaders.

b. Submits ammunition and resupply requests early for resupply.

c. Supervises ammunition stockage, when used.

d. Coordinates with the 1SG, supply sergeant, and XO for support.

e. Distributes supplies according to the plan.

f. Requests fortification materials for obstacle construction during defensive operations.

\*4. The leaders submit resupply requests.

a. Request resupply based on actual losses and expenditures, and forecasted requirements.

b. Request enough replacement personnel, water, rations, lubricants, ammunition, and repair parts to meet expected needs until the next resupply.

c. Submit requests soon enough so as not to impair current or future operations.

d. Make requests to the company XO or first sergeant using line numbers to save time.

e. Ensure requests are encoded when operating radios on a nonsecure net.

5. The platoon coordinates resupply.

a. Performs resupply as quickly as possible in covered and concealed positions.

b. Distributes supplies throughout the platoon, based on current and anticipated operations and needs.

c. Uses supplies that have been stocked at firing positions first.

d. Uses one of three resupply techniques (in-position, service station, or pre-position) based on METT-T.

e. Prepares a resupply point, when appropriate, according to resupply transport.

f. Ensures security is maintained during resupply operations.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Continuous manning of crew-served weapons and OPs.</li> <li>• Prepares to respond in case the enemy attacks.</li> <li>g. Uses backhauling to remove casualties, damaged equipment, and excess ammunition and other items.</li> <li>6. The platoon conducts aerial resupply.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducts a reconnaissance of the selected LZ or DZ to confirm that it meets the factors of METT-T.</li> <li>b. Organizes the platoon to receive aerial resupply.</li> <li>c. Designates a security element.</li> <li>d. Designates a recovery and distribution element.</li> <li>e. Secures the LZ (security element).</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Searches the area to ensure it is free of the enemy.</li> <li>• Establishes mutually supporting positions that provide observation, cover, concealment, fields of fire, and cover the most likely mounted and dismounted avenues of approach to the LZ or DZ.</li> <li>• Makes sure the positions are far enough out to provide early warning of enemy actions.</li> <li>• Employs hasty obstacles, as required (for example, Claymore mines, roadblocks).</li> <li>f. Identifies the operational area to the squad leader in charge of the recovery and distribution element.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>g. Identifies the load impact or aircraft landing point.</li> <li>h. Identifies a distribution point for supplies.</li> <li>i. Prepares the LZ or DZ (recovery and distribution squad), once the security element has secured the LZ or DZ.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Removes the obstacles, if possible, and marks the obstacles it cannot remove.</li> <li>• Removes debris that may interfere with the resupply aircraft.</li> <li>• Marks the load impact area or aircraft landing point in a manner identified by the platoon leader (for example, smoke, lights, VS 17 panels, field-expedient markers).</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Divides the air-dropped load (if required) and moves it to the distribution point.</li> <li>• Unloads the aircraft, divides the load (if required), and moves it to the distribution point.</li> <li>• Conceals the LZ or DZ by removing any indication of its use, such as aircraft tracks, and recover markers, equipment, and any other items that may identify its use for resupply.</li> <li>j. Controls (platoon sergeant) the break down of supplies IAW the allocation plan at the distribution point. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Supplies are distributed tactically to individuals.</li> <li>• Security is maintained throughout the operation.</li> </ul> </li> <li>k. Continues the mission.</li> <li>7. The platoon performs wheeled vehicle resupply. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selects a covered and concealed unloading site, with suitable routes leading into and out of the site.</li> <li>b. Resupplies without restricting its security, communications, movement, delivery of direct fire, or ability to provide indirect fire support.</li> </ul> </li> <li>8. The platoon plans and conducts tactical feeding. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintains local security, noise and light discipline, and concealment IAW T&amp;EO 7-3/4-1409, Maintain Operations Security.</li> <li>b. Burns or buries garbage, waste, and trash; or carries it when other means of disposal are not appropriate.</li> </ul> </li> <li>9. The platoon performs maintenance functions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Follows the company maintenance SOP. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Maintains weapons and other equipment IAW related TM.</li> <li>• Performs maintenance during specified maintenance periods.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Inspects and supervises (leaders) the maintenance performed by their subordinates.</li> <li>c. Establishes priority for cleaning and maintenance of weapons, then radios, and it is situationally dependent. Weapons priority will normally be antiarmor, crew-served, and individual.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		



**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

- d. Turns in damaged communications equipment to company communications chief.
- e. Turns in weapons and other equipment to the company supply sergeant during resupply operations, or platoon or company collection points during combat.
- f. Performs emergency repairs as far forward as possible to ensure continued operation and availability of equipment.
- g. (XO and 1SG) Coordinates and supervises maintenance support.
  - Evacuates damaged weapons to the battalion trains.
  - Arranges for float for higher echelon support.
- \*10. The platoon leader submits requests for transportation support to company CP.
  - Transports rucksacks and excess equipment by vehicles whenever possible.
- 11. The platoon performs personnel service support functions.
  - a. (Leaders) Uses battle rosters to keep up-to-date records of their personnel.
  - b. Reports unit strength on a secure net or landline from the platoon battle roster.
  - c. (Platoon sergeant) Coordinates services for the platoon to include mail, finance, awards, religious activities, legal assistance, and R&R.
  - d. Reports casualties IAW platoon SOP.
  - e. Handles EPWs and captured equipment IAW T&EO 7-3/4-1503, Process Enemy Prisoners of War/Captured Materiel.
  - f. Integrates new replacements into the platoon.
- 12. The platoon performs health services support functions.
  - a. Performs casualty prevention measures.
    - Establishes and implements sleep plans.
    - Counters the effect of stress and continuous operations.

GO	NO-GO

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

- | TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• (Leader) Ensures the uniform is consistent with the weather conditions and the mission.</li> <li>• (Leader) Considers soldier's load and vehicular means to transport rucksacks and excess equipment.</li> <li>• (Aidman) Routinely checks the physical well-being of the soldiers.</li> <li>• (Soldier) Conducts personal hygiene.</li> <li>• (Soldier) Attempts to bathe and change undergarments every 48 hours to avoid rashes, if continuously wearing chemical protective overgarments.</li> </ul> <p>b. Performs field sanitation operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Leaders ensure the soldiers follow field sanitation procedures.</li> <li>• The platoon organizes a platoon field sanitation team IAW AR 40-5.</li> <li>• Soldiers drink only potable water as identified by the field sanitation team.</li> <li>• The platoon maintains its prescribed load of water purification materials IAW the platoon SOP.</li> <li>• The platoon purifies potable water by using iodine tablets or by boiling (IAW FM 21-10).</li> <li>• The platoon builds latrines and urinals at least 100 feet from water sources and 100 meters from mess areas. Hand-washing facilities are provided with a soakage pit beneath.</li> <li>• The platoon protects all food from extreme temperatures, moisture, and pests.</li> <li>• The platoon cleans and disinfects mess kits before and after use.</li> <li>• The platoon takes measures to reduce exposure to insects and rodents.</li> <li>• Personnel wash hands before eating or preparing food.</li> </ul> |    |       |

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

c. Performs treatment and evacuation of casualties IAW T&EO 7-3/4-1504, Treat and Evacuate Casualties.

--	--

\*A leader task step.

**TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK**

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

See Appendix A for task numbers and titles that correlate to the numbers listed below by STP and skill level.

**Common Tasks**

Skill Level 1

2, 4, 14, 34, 35, 46, 51, 71, 74

Skill Level 2

11, 24, 25

Skill Level 3

12

Skill Level 4

4

**MOS 11B Tasks**

Skill Level 1

16, 24, 36, 46, 52, 56

Skill Level 2

1, 2, 3

Skill Level 3

2

Skill Level 4

7, 13

## **OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

### **TASK: DISRUPT COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT OPERATIONS**

**CONDITIONS:** The OPFOR platoon/squad is ordered to disrupt enemy CSS operations with ground action, indirect fire, or CAS. The OPFOR may act separately or as part of a larger force.

### **STANDARDS:**

1. The OPFOR surprises the platoon performing sustainment operations.
2. The OPFOR prevents the platoon from rearming, refueling, and resupplying.
3. The OPFOR prevents the platoon from eating and resting.

**ELEMENT:** PLATOON/SQUAD

**TASK:** PROCESS ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR/CAPTURED MATERIEL (7-3/4-1503) (FM 7-8, FM 19-40)

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

TRAINING STATUS T P U (circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon has been conducting tactical operations separately or as part of a larger force. Enemy personnel have been captured. Some iterations should be performed in MOPP4. Civilians, government organizations, NGOs, PVOs, and the international press are present on the battlefield. The US forces are operating under a restrictive ROE.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The EPWs are processed IAW the five S's so that the EPWs are not allowed to disrupt or halt the unit's mission and are treated humanely according to their rights under international law. The EPWs are evacuated to the EPW holding area in the time specified in the OPORD. The US forces comply with the ROE. Collateral damage is limited.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES** GO NO-GO

<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The platoon SEARCHES captured enemy personnel.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Removes all weapons and documents.</li> <li>b. Gives prisoners a receipt for personal property taken.</li> <li>c. Tags EPWs and items with date, time, place (grid coordinate), circumstances of capture, and capturing unit.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The platoon SEGREGATES enemy prisoners.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Segregates all EPWs by sex, officers (field grade, company grade), NCOs, enlisted personnel, civilians, and politicians.</li> <li>b. Ensures groups remain segregated during movement to the rear.</li> <li>c. Restricts enemy prisoners from areas where they can obtain information about the platoon's mission, strength, and future operations.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The platoon SILENCES enemy prisoners.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prevents EPW leaders from giving orders.</li> <li>b. Prevents them from planning an escape and from cautioning each other on security.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		
--	--	--

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

<p>c. Reports anything an EPW says or tries to say to another EPW.</p> <p>d. Does not talk in front of EPWs except to issue orders or discipline.</p> <p>*4. The platoon leader or platoon sergeant notifies the 1SG or XO that EPWs have been captured.</p> <p>5. The platoon SPEEDS enemy personnel to the rear.</p> <p>a. Moves the EPWs to the company prisoner collection point.</p> <p>b. Turns EPWs over to medical personnel for evacuation that are too seriously wounded to be evacuated by normal means (provides guards as necessary).</p> <p>6. The platoon SAFEGUARDS enemy personnel.</p> <p>a. Removes EPWs from the dangers of the battlefield.</p> <p>b. Ensures EPWs arrive safely at the collection point.</p> <p>c. Prevents any EPWs from escaping.</p> <p>d. Prevents anyone from abusing EPWs.</p> <p>e. Treats EPWs humanely.</p> <p>*A leader task step.</p>				
--	--	--	--	--

**TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK**

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

See Appendix A for task numbers and titles that correlate to the numbers listed below by STP and skill level.

**Common Tasks**

Skill Level 1

24, 29, 30, 71, 94, 97

Skill Level 2

11

Skill Level 3

NONE

Skill Level 4

NONE

**MOS 11B Tasks**

Skill Level 1

44

Skill Level 2

1, 2

Skill Level 3

NONE

Skill Level 4

NONE

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK: RESIST CAPTURE**

**CONDITIONS:** The OPFOR squad, operating separately, is captured. The OPFOR squad has standard tactical equipment, documents, and personal items.

**STANDARDS:**

1. The OPFOR escapes from enemy capture.
2. The OPFOR refrains from divulging information.
3. The OPFOR resists, whenever possible.
4. The OPFOR obtains enemy information in case of escape.

**ELEMENT:** PLATOON/SQUAD

**TASK:** TREAT AND EVACUATE CASUALTIES (7-3/4-1504)  
(FM 7-8, FM 8-10-6)

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

TRAINING STATUS T P U (circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is in continuous operation in a tactical environment and is operating separately or as part of the company. The platoon has sustained casualties. The platoon has an aidman attached and at least one combat lifesaver for each squad. Some iterations should be performed in MOPP4. Civilians, government organizations, NGOs, PVOs, and the international press are present on the battlefield. The US forces are operating under a restrictive ROE.

**STANDARDS:** The platoon provides or assists in medical treatment and evacuation of casualties. The US forces comply with the ROE. Collateral damage is limited.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The platoon performs medical treatment.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identifies serious casualties requiring evacuation.</li> <li>b. Administers first aid to casualties.</li> <li>c. Stabilizes the casualties.</li> <li>d. Administers the proper lifesaving measures.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The combat lifesaver supports medical treatment of casualties upon completion of the combat mission.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provides initial treatment until medical personnel can treat casualties.</li> <li>b. Separates KIAs, litter urgent, and litter priority.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The platoon reports the casualties as the tactical situation permits.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reports as soon as time permits.</li> <li>b. Completes DD Form 1380 (US Field Medical Card), which includes initial diagnosis and medication given.</li> <li>c. Completes DA Form 1156 (Casualty Feeder Report) for killed or wounded personnel.</li> <li>d. Completes DA Form 1155 (Witness Statement on Individual) for captured or missing personnel.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		
---	--	--



**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

- | TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>4. The platoon evacuates casualties to the platoon casualty collection point.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Extracts casualties from danger without further injury.</li> <li>Uses one- and two-man carries and litters.</li> <li>Retains classified documents (SOI, maps, orders, overlays) and mission-essential equipment (night vision devices, crew-served weapon) previously controlled by the casualty.</li> </ol> <p>5. The platoon evacuates the casualties to the company casualty collection point.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Positions casualties on vehicle(s), if available.</li> <li>Uses the instructions in the OPORD or the platoon SOP.</li> </ol> <p>6. The platoon requests helicopter evacuation of casualties based on the tactical situation.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Submits a nine-line MEDEVAC request.</li> <li>Selects and marks the best available covered and concealed LZ.</li> <li>Moves casualties by the best available means to the LZ and continues treatment.</li> <li>Assists the flight or ambulance crew with the casualties.</li> <li>Maintains security of the LZ to include coordinating any suppressive fires required.</li> </ol> <p>7. The platoon evacuates contaminated casualties.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Initiates decontamination before loading.</li> <li>Covers casualties if decontamination is impossible to lessen the spread of contamination en route.</li> <li>Ensures casualties are not evacuated to an uncontaminated facility or with uncontaminated casualties.</li> <li>Decontaminates vehicles and equipment as soon as possible.</li> </ol> <p>8. The platoon evacuates EPW casualties.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Evacuates by the same standards as US casualties.</li> <li>Maintains security of EPW casualties.</li> <li>Searches EPWs for weapons and ordnance before evacuation.</li> </ol> |    |       |

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

d. Prevents EPWs from having access to weapons during evacuation.		
9. The platoon evacuates the KIA.		
a. Moves to company collection point when the situation permits.		
b. Transports separately from wounded, if possible.		

**TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK**

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

See Appendix A for task numbers and titles that correlate to the numbers listed below by STP and skill level.

**Common Tasks**

Skill Level 1

5, 75, 76, 77, 78, 79, 80, 81, 82, 83, 84, 85, 86, 87, 88, 89, 90, 91, 92, 93, 94

Skill Level 2

11, 24, 25

Skill Level 3

NONE

Skill Level 4

NONE

**MOS 11B Tasks**

Skill Level 1

52

Skill Level 2

1, 2

Skill Level 3

NONE

Skill Level 4

7

### OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

#### **TASK: COUNTERATTACK**

**CONDITIONS:** The OPFOR platoon/squad is ordered to counterattack a platoon-size enemy position. The OPFOR is operating separately or as part of a larger unit. The OPFOR has indirect fire available.

#### **STANDARDS:**

1. The OPFOR surprises the main body.
2. The OPFOR forces the platoon to withdraw.
3. The OPFOR prevents consolidation and reorganization and evacuation of wounded.

**ELEMENT:** PLATOON/SQUAD

**TASK:** DEVELOP AND COMMUNICATE A PLAN (7-3/4-1605)  
(FM 7-8, FM 7-10, FM 71-1, FM 100-5, FM 101-5)

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

TRAINING STATUS T P U (circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is performing tactical operations. A new mission is received requiring the platoon to prepare a WO, OPORD, or FRAGO. Combat may involve offensive, defensive, or retrograde operations. Continuous operations (day and night) are envisioned. Some iterations should be performed in MOPP4. Civilians, government organizations, NGOs, PVOs, and the international press are present on the battlefield. The US forces are operating under a restrictive ROE.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon develops a plan following the eight troop-leading procedures. The plan follows the company commander's intent, makes the best use of time, is issued to subordinate leaders using less than one-third of the time available, is clearly understood by subordinate leaders, and accomplishes the assigned mission. The US forces comply with the ROE. Collateral damage is limited.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES** GO NO-GO

<p>*1. The platoon leader receives a WO from the company.</p> <p>*2. The platoon leader conducts an initial METT-T analysis to determine the requirements for the WO.</p> <p>*3. The platoon leader issues the WO as soon as possible to the platoon orders group (no specific format, issues known information as it becomes available).</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. States the situation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enemy.</li> <li>• Friendly.</li> <li>• Attachments/detachments.</li> </ul> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">b. States the mission.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">c. Issues the general instructions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Special teams.</li> <li>• Uniform and equipment common to all.</li> <li>• Special weapons, ammunition, equipment.</li> </ul>		
--	--	--

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Tentative time schedule to include:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Earliest time of movement.</li> <li>— Time and place of OPORD.</li> <li>— Probable execution time.</li> <li>— Inspection times and items to be inspected.</li> <li>— Rehearsal times and actions to be rehearsed.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Additional instructions as needed or by SOP.</li> </ul> <p>d. Issues special instructions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To subordinate leaders.</li> <li>• To persons helping prepare OPORD.</li> <li>• As needed by SOP.</li> <li>• Acknowledgement of receipt.</li> </ul> <p>*4. Subordinate leaders issue and execute WOs IAW the platoon SOP and initiate troop-leading procedures.</p> <p>*5. The platoon leader and FO receive the OPORD from the company commander.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Clarify any questions.</li> <li>b. Coordinate with HQ section personnel.</li> </ul> <p>*6. The platoon leader performs a mission analysis.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identifies the commander's concept and intent (company and battalion).</li> <li>b. Identifies specified and implied tasks.</li> <li>c. Identifies mission-essential tasks.</li> <li>d. Identifies limitations.</li> <li>e. Performs reverse planning process.</li> </ul> <p>*7. The platoon leader produces a restated mission statement that contains the platoon's mission-essential tasks, and the purpose for which they were assigned.</p> <p>*8. The platoon leader updates the initial WO, as necessary.</p> <p>*9. The platoon leader analyzes the situation using the remaining factors of METT-T.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Analyzes the enemy.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Composition.</li> <li>• Disposition.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Recent activities.</li> <li>• Reinforcement capabilities.</li> <li>• Possible courses of action.</li> <li>• Weaknesses.</li> </ul> <p>b. Analyzes the terrain (OAKOC).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Obstacles.</li> <li>• Avenues of approach.</li> <li>• Key terrain.</li> <li>• Observation and fields of fire.</li> <li>• Cover and concealment. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Weather effects on the terrain, equipment, and personnel of both forces.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>c. Analyzes the troops (considerations).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Current location.</li> <li>• Disposition.</li> <li>• Supply status.</li> <li>• Personnel strength.</li> <li>• Current task organization.</li> <li>• Capabilities of attachments.</li> </ul> <p>d. Analyzes the time.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Updates the time schedule.</li> <li>• Considers the times specified in order.</li> <li>• Evaluates the time and space considerations.</li> </ul> <p>*10. The platoon leader develops the courses of action.</p> <p>a. Determines the most critical facts and deductions for the mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Produces mission-specific criteria, which any course of action must satisfy.</li> <li>• Produces assumptions about the situation on which the analysis is based.</li> <li>• Identifies potential decisive point by integrating terrain and enemy analysis.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Produces at least two general courses of action that can accomplish the mission but are different enough to allow useful analysis.</p> <p>c. Determines the decisive point.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Determines the points and times to focus combat power:</li> <li>• Determines the results that must be achieved to accomplish the mission.</li> </ul> <p>d. Identifies the main and supporting effort.</p> <p>e. Determines the purpose of the main and supporting efforts. (The main effort is directly linked to the platoon's purpose.)</p> <p>f. Identifies essential tasks for each unit to achieve its assigned purpose.</p> <p>*11. The platoon leader analyzes the courses of action.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determines the advantages, disadvantages, and risks of each course of action.</li> <li>b. Determines the key leaders in each course of action.</li> <li>c. Determines key weapons to be used.</li> <li>d. Determines critical events.</li> <li>e. Determines the most dangerous contingencies.</li> </ul> <p>*12. The platoon leader compares the courses of action. He must be able to state which course of action best satisfies each significant factor.</p> <p>*13. The platoon leader decides on a course of action. He must be able to state which significant factor(s) became decisive in selecting a course of action.</p> <p>*14. The platoon leader completes the tentative plan (to include both fire and movement control measures).</p> <p>*15. The platoon leader initiates movement, as required. (The platoon leader may initiate movement as early as immediately following the WO, if the situation dictates.)</p> <p>*16. The platoon leader conducts the reconnaissance to determine the location, strength, disposition, activity of the enemy, and accurate information on the terrain (OAKOC).</p>		

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

- | TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <p>a. Determines intelligence needs.</p> <p>b. Assigns reconnaissance tasks. The commander may use the leader's reconnaissance, patrols, or elements in contact to obtain the required information. (See T&amp;EOs 7-3-1004, Reconnoiter Zone; 7-3/4-1003, Reconnoiter Area; 7-3-1005, Reconnoiter Route.)</p> <p>c. Requests information update from the company commander.</p> <p>*17. The platoon leader completes the plan based on METT-T considerations, intelligence from the reconnaissance, and other sources (in OPORD format).</p> <p>a. Establishes task organization.</p> <p>b. States the situation:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enemy: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Disposition, composition, and strength.</li> <li>— Capabilities.</li> <li>— Most probable course of action.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Friendly: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Higher unit's mission.</li> <li>— Left unit's mission.</li> <li>— Right unit's mission.</li> <li>— Forward unit's mission.</li> <li>— Unit in reserve or unit following.</li> <li>— Units in support or reinforcing higher headquarters.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Attachments and detachments.</li> </ul> <p>c. States the mission. This should be a clear, concise statement of the purpose (as it relates to the main effort) to be accomplished by the command with the accompanying mission-essential task (that is, seize or destroy) to further clarify the outcome.</p> <p>d. Plans the execution:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Concept of the operation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Tie purpose to battalion purpose.</li> <li>— Designate a decisive point.</li> <li>— Form of maneuver or defensive technique.</li> <li>— Significant factors.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |    |       |



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Maneuver.</li> <li>• Fires.</li> <li>• Counterair operations.</li> <li>• Intelligence.</li> <li>• Electronic warfare.</li> <li>• Engineering.</li> <li>• Additional subparagraphs as required.</li> <li>• Tasks to maneuver units.</li> <li>• Tasks to CS units.</li> <li>• Coordinating instructions.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Timing paragraph.</li> <li>— Movement paragraph.</li> <li>— PIR/IR reporting tasks.</li> <li>— MOPP level.</li> <li>— Personnel safety and OEG.</li> <li>— Engagement and disengagement criteria and instructions.</li> <li>— Fire distribution and control measures.</li> <li>— Consolidation and reorganization instructions.</li> <li>— Report requirements.</li> <li>— Terrorism/counterterrorism instructions.</li> <li>— Rules of engagement.</li> <li>— Specified tasks that pertain to more than one subordinate unit.</li> </ul> </li> <li>e. Plans service and support.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• General.                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Outline for the general plan for CSS.</li> <li>— Current and proposed trains location.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Materiel and services.                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Supply.</li> <li>— Transportation.</li> <li>— Services.</li> <li>— Labor.</li> <li>— Maintenance.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Medical evacuation.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Platoon casualty collection point.</li> <li>— Company casualty collection point.</li> <li>— CAS marking.</li> <li>• Personnel. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— EPW evacuation.</li> <li>— EPW collection point.</li> <li>— Religious services.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Civil-military cooperation.</li> <li>• Miscellaneous (may include): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Soldier's load.</li> <li>— Instructions for caching rucksacks, supplies, or other equipment.</li> <li>— Instructions for equipment destruction.</li> </ul> </li> <li>f. Plans command and signal. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Command. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Location of higher commander and CP.</li> <li>— Location of unit commander and CP.</li> <li>— Location of platoon sergeant.</li> <li>— Succession of command.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Signal. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— SOI index in effect.</li> <li>— State of listening silence.</li> <li>— Methods of communications in priority.</li> <li>— Code words and signals.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Acknowledgement. The recipient of the order is requested to acknowledge receipt and understanding.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>*18. The platoon leader issues the order with the appropriate annexes to the subordinate leaders.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures the order is given at a location that reduces travel time, allows observation of the zone or sector, and promotes OPSEC. (Depending on the METT-T factors, observation of the zone or sector may not be possible.)</li> <li>b. Provides ample subordinate leader planning and preparation time by using only one-third of the available time.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Clarifies any questions.</p> <p>*19. The platoon leader communicates the OPORD.</p> <p>a. Ensures all key leaders for the mission task organization attend the OPORD and are prepared to take notes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Platoon sergeant.</li> <li>• Squad leaders.</li> <li>• Forward observer.</li> <li>• Platoon aidman.</li> <li>• Any attachment leaders.</li> </ul> <p>b. Develops a terrain model to assist in clarifying details of the plan. The terrain model shows the area of operations and additional sketches for actions on the objective or decisive battle areas. The model also shows fire support targets, fire control measures, obstacles, and enemy positions and routes. Examples of terrain models are—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Large-scale sketch on paper or chalk drawing on to the side of a vehicle or poncho.</li> <li>• Sand table.</li> <li>• Large-scale sand tables that allow key players to “walk through” the maneuver phase.</li> </ul> <p>c. Ensures there is no repetition of instructions that were briefed in a previous paragraph unless it is vital to clarify a task.</p> <p>d. Conducts briefbacks with subordinates immediately after the order to ensure they understand the instructions.</p> <p>e. Ensures subordinate leaders perform lateral coordination before leaving the orders site.</p> <p>f. Conducts a briefback of subordinate plans. (This should be conducted once the subordinate leader has developed his plan.)</p> <p>*A leader task step.</p>		

**TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK**

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

See Appendix A for task numbers and titles that correlate to the numbers listed below by STP and skill level.

**Common Tasks**

Skill Level 1

24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 31, 33, 72, 93, 95, 97

Skill Level 2

9, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 25

Skill Level 3

12

Skill Level 4

4

**MOS 11B Tasks**

Skill Level 1

NONE

Skill Level 2

17, 18

Skill Level 3

2, 3, 5

Skill Level 4

NONE

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS****TASK: COUNTER COMBAT PREPARATIONS**

**CONDITIONS:** The OPFOR platoon/squad is ordered to disrupt enemy preparations for combat by locating and engaging the enemy. The OPFOR is operating separately or as part of a larger unit. The OPFOR has indirect fire available.

**STANDARDS:**

1. The OPFOR prevents the platoon from learning the strength, location, disposition, and intentions of its forces through OPSEC, counterreconnaissance, and deception.
2. The OPFOR disrupts platoon communications through EW and interception of messengers.
3. The OPFOR disrupts platoon resupply and maintenance through probes and ambushes.
4. The OPFOR prevents the platoon from completing the preparations by disrupting his timetable.

**ELEMENT: PLATOON/SQUAD**

**TASK: PREPARE FOR COMBAT (7-3/4-1606) (FM 7-8, FM 7-7J, FM 100-5)**

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)  
 TRAINING STATUS T P U (circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is ordered to conduct combat operations. The platoon has received a company WO, OPORD, or FRAGO. Some iterations should be performed in MOPP4. Civilians, government organizations, NGOs, PVOs, and the international press are present on the battlefield. The US forces are operating under a restrictive ROE.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon is prepared to move into combat by the time specified in the OPORD with all (TOE) weapons and equipment, and the complete basic load of supplies specified by the leader. The US forces comply with the ROE. Collateral damage is limited.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

<p>*1. The platoon leader receives the mission from the company commander.</p> <p>*2. The platoon leader conducts Steps 2 through 7 of the troop-leading procedures. (See T&amp;EO 7-3/4-1605, Develop and Communicate a Plan.)</p> <p>3. The platoon members concurrently perform personnel and equipment checks under the supervision of their leaders.</p> <p>a. Perform maintenance, functional and operational checks IAW applicable manuals and individual tasks.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Weapons.</li> <li>• Night observation devices.</li> <li>• Communications equipment.</li> <li>• NBC equipment.</li> <li>• Any special equipment.</li> </ul> <p>b. Conduct a weapon's test-fire, if the situation permits.</p> <p>c. Boresight and zero weapons as required.</p>		
---	--	--

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

**GO NO-GO**

\*4. The platoon leader issues the order to his subordinates providing them with two-thirds of the available time to develop the plans, brief personnel, and conduct rehearsals.

\*5. The platoon sergeant requests CS assets.

\*6. The platoon leader or his authorized representatives (platoon sergeant, FO, squad leader, RATELO) coordinate plans and actions with higher, adjacent, and supporting units.

- Fire plans.
- Scheme of maneuver.
- Current intelligence.
- Control measures.
- Communications and signals.
- Time schedules.
- Support requirements.

\*7. The platoon leader (platoon sergeant, squad leader) receives attachments.

a. Ensures attachments are briefed on the platoon mission and the platoon leader's intent, the specific tasks, pertinent platoon SOPs, overall plan, recent enemy activities, and recent platoon activities.

b. Ensures attachments are checked (platoon leader or platoon sergeant) for mission readiness.

c. Ensures the soldiers are linked up with a subordinate leader within the platoon.

\*8. The platoon leader supervises mission preparation and ensures compliance with the priorities of work.

a. Conducts briefbacks with subordinate leaders and addresses the following:

- Mission of company/intent two levels up.
- Platoon task and purpose.
- Higher scheme of maneuver.
- General situation.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

- | TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>b. Directs subordinate leaders to conduct briefbacks of their plan to ensure his intent is understood.</p> <p>c. Ensures key platoon actions are rehearsed as the time and situation permits.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• May begin rehearsals of battle drills and other SOP items before receipt of the OPORD.</li> <li>• Rehearse mission-specific tasks once the order has been issued.</li> <li>• First priority for rehearsals is actions on the objective. (The platoon leader must identify all tasks required for actions on the objective and prioritize them.)</li> </ul> <p>d. Directs the elements to prepare all field-expedient equipment needed for their tasks.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Explosive and breach devices.</li> <li>• Deception devices.</li> <li>• Friendly force identification devices.</li> <li>• Early warning and signal devices.</li> </ul> <p>e. Ensures key leaders inspect, conduct briefbacks, rehearse, and continue coordination.</p> <p>*9. The platoon leader plans sustainment of combat operations.</p> <p>a. Determines anticipated ammunition, supply, and service requirements with input from the platoon sergeant, squad leaders, and attachment leaders.</p> <p>b. Issues guidance on soldier's loads. The loads are redistributed accordingly.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Combat load (fighting load, approach march load).</li> <li>• Sustainment load. Equipment required for sustained operations is stored by the company at the BSA, then brought forward, as needed.</li> </ul> <p>c. Coordinates with the platoon sergeant to determine the transportation needed to support the operation, and requests it.</p> |    |       |



**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

- d. Directs the platoon sergeant to coordinate with the company supply sergeant, XO, or first sergeant for supply techniques to support the tactical plan. The selected techniques must provide adequate supplies when and where they are needed, and not compromise the platoon's security.
  - e. Ensures the platoon sergeant requests, receives, and distributes special equipment and supplies that the platoon leader and other leaders have determined are needed.
  - f. Establishes and enforces a rest plan for all platoon members (particularly key personnel and leaders) based on the platoon SOP, mission analysis, and current orders.
    - Ensures coverage of leadership positions, key unit functions, OPs, and manning of key weapons are continuous.
    - Ensures the performance and judgment of leaders and key personnel are not degraded by fatigue.
  - 10. The platoon continues reconnaissance/patrols before the operation.
  - \*11. The platoon leader monitors the actions of higher, adjacent, and supporting units.
  - \*12. The platoon leader issues orders or modifies original plan, as needed.
- \*A leader task step.

--	--

**TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK**

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							

---

## SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

See Appendix A for task numbers and titles that correlate to the numbers listed below by STP and skill level.

### Common Tasks

Skill Level 1

2, 4, 12, 14, 17, 20, 21, 24, 34, 35, 46, 51, 60, 74, 93, 97

Skill Level 2

1, 3, 4, 9, 25

Skill Level 3

12

Skill Level 4

4

### MOS 11B Tasks

Skill Level 1

16, 24, 29, 36, 41, 42, 43, 44, 46, 56

Skill Level 2

1, 2, 3, 14, 17, 18

Skill Level 3

2, 3, 5

Skill Level 4

9

## OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

### TASK: COUNTER COMBAT PREPARATIONS

**CONDITIONS:** The OPFOR platoon/squad is ordered to disrupt enemy preparation for combat by locating and engaging the enemy. The OPFOR is operating separately or as part of a larger unit. The OPFOR has indirect fire available.

### STANDARDS:

1. The OPFOR prevents the platoon from learning the strength, location, disposition, and intentions of the OPFOR through OPSEC, counterreconnaissance, and deception.
2. The OPFOR disrupts 20 percent of the platoon's communications through EW and interception of messengers.
3. The OPFOR delays platoon resupply and maintenance through probes and ambushes, preventing the platoon from being prepared by the time specified.

**ELEMENT: PLATOON/SQUAD**

**TASK: PERFORM CONSOLIDATION AND REORGANIZATION**  
 (7-3/4-1607) (FM 7-8)

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

TRAINING STATUS T P U (circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon has assaulted and seized an objective or driven back an enemy attack on its position. The platoon is operating separately or as part of a larger unit. The platoon must provide its own security. Enemy forces have withdrawn to hasty defensive positions, but has the capability to counterattack. Remaining enemy forces on the objective are scattered and disorganized. Both friendly and enemy units have indirect fire and CAS available. The enemy can attack with a company. Some iterations should be performed in MOPP4. Civilians, government organizations, NGOs, PVOs, and the international press are present on the battlefield. The US forces are operating under a restrictive ROE.

**TASK STANDARDS:** All remaining enemy resistance is destroyed or captured. The platoon establishes security and prevents surprise of the main body within three minutes of receiving the leader's order to consolidate. Consolidation and reorganization are completed within 15 minutes, and the platoon is prepared to continue operations. The US forces comply with the ROE. Collateral damage is limited.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
*+1. To consolidate, the platoon leader positions or repositions the OP forward to provide security. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures the members are alert for a possible counterattack.</li> <li>b. Ensures the platoon main body is not engaged without warning.</li> </ul> 2. The platoon occupies or reoccupies hasty fighting positions near the objective and establishes all-round security. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Evaluates terrain thoroughly.</li> <li>b. Positions the squads using the clock or the terrain feature technique.</li> </ul>		

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

GO NO-GO

\*+3. The leaders adjust positions and position crew-served weapons to cover likely avenues of approach and to ensure mutual support between squads and adjacent units.

4. The platoon searches the area to be sure it is free of the enemy.

\*5. The platoon leader assigns or reassigns all squads temporary sectors of fire.

6. The platoon prepares, replaces, or repairs fighting positions and obstacles, as needed.

\*+7. To reorganize, the platoon leader reestablishes the chain of command by filling key leader positions.

\*+8. The platoon leader reestablishes communication nets.

a. Ensures the platoon CP can communicate with all squads and company headquarters.

b. Ensures the platoon FO can communicate with the fire support assets.

9. The platoon mans key weapons, as required by METT-T.

\*+10. The leaders supervise redistribution of ammunition and equipment.

\*11. The squad leaders provide ammunition, casualty, and equipment (ACE) reports to the platoon leader.

\*12. The platoon sergeant coordinates for resupply and supervises the evacuation of casualties and EPW plan.

\*+13. The platoon leader consolidates the ACE reports and provides a platoon ACE report to the company commander.

\*+14. The platoon leader collects and disseminates information about the completed operation to squad leaders and reports any intelligence information of immediate value to the company commander.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>+15. The platoon clears the objective of casualties and EPWs IAW T&amp;EOs 7-3/4-1504, Treat and Evacuate Casualties; and 7-3/4-1503, Process Enemy Prisoners of War/Captured Materiel.</p> <p>16. In the defense, the platoon makes repairs and other adjustments.</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">a. Repairs damaged obstacles and replaces mines and booby traps.</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">b. Relocates selected weapons to alternate positions if leaders believe that the enemy may have pinpointed them during the attack.</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">c. Adjusts other positions to maintain mutual support.</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">d. Reoccupies and repairs and improves positions, and prepares for renewed enemy attack.</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">e. Quickly reestablishes OPs and resumes patrolling as directed.</p>		

\*A leader task step.

+A critical task step.

**TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK**

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

See Appendix A for task numbers and titles that correlate to the numbers listed below by STP and skill level.

**Common Tasks**

Skill Level 1

24, 25, 66, 68, 71, 72, 73, 92, 93, 94, 95, 96, 97

Skill Level 2

7, 8, 9, 11, 24, 26

Skill Level 3

8, 9, 10, 12

Skill Level 4

2, 3

**MOS 11B Tasks**

Skill Level 1

44, 52

Skill Level 2

8, 17

Skill Level 3

1

Skill Level 4

9

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK: COUNTERATTACK**

**CONDITIONS:** The OPFOR platoon/squad is ordered to counterattack a platoon-size enemy position. The OPFOR is operating separately or as part of a larger unit.

**STANDARDS:**

1. The OPFOR surprises the main body.
2. The OPFOR counterattacks and forces the platoon to withdraw.
3. The OPFOR prevents platoon consolidation, evacuation, and resupply.



## CHAPTER 6

**EXTERNAL EVALUATION****Section I. INTRODUCTION****6-1. GENERAL**

An external evaluation measures the platoon's ability to perform its critical wartime operations. This chapter is a guide for preparing an external platoon evaluation. Units should use these same concepts to develop external evaluations for squads, crews, sections, or teams. Units may modify the evaluation, based on METT-T and the commander's guidance. The platoon evaluation is performance-oriented. Each platoon is evaluated by its parent brigade. The platoon is evaluated using the standards of the selected T&EOs in Chapter 5. This 48-hour evaluation assesses the platoon's tactical proficiency against a realistic opposing force. The evaluation is multiechelon in that each squad is evaluated as well as the platoon headquarters.

**6-2. PURPOSE**

Using the selected T&EOs, the senior evaluator and his assistants observe and record the performance of the leadership and the teamwork of the unit. An analysis of this data provides feedback on the strengths and weaknesses of the platoon and forms a basis for training and resource allocation.

**Section II. MANAGEMENT OF THE EVALUATION****6-3. GENERAL**

This section provides general guidance and procedures for planning and scheduling the platoon evaluation. The evaluation is for local administration. Units must adapt their organization, planning, and scheduling phases to local conditions.

**6-4. PLAN THE EVALUATION**

The battalion commander selects the tasks from Chapter 5 based on the platoon's mission-essential task list. Chapters 2 and 3 provide a guide for selecting the T&EOs. Other factors to consider are as follows:

- a. There is no limit on the number of missions and T&EO tasks to be evaluated, but no more than three missions should be evaluated. Consideration in task selection, from both the execution and evaluation standpoint, should be given to the degree of difficulty of each task.



b. The length of the evaluation, like the number of the tasks, can affect the quality of the evaluation. Usually, the evaluation should be no longer than 48 hours, since skills often erode rapidly beyond that point.

#### 6-5. MANAGEMENT OF TIME AND PERSONNEL

Table 6-1 recommends a start-finish frequency that reduces the evaluation period to a seven-day maximum (for all platoons). Sections IV and V outline the selection criteria for evaluator and OPFOR personnel, respectively.

a. **Opposing Force.** The platoon is evaluated on collective tasks as selected by the battalion commander. As few as 6 or as many as 96 OPFOR may be needed, depending on the missions and tasks selected for evaluation (assuming 3:1 or 1:3 evaluated platoon to OPFOR strength ratios). These are only guidelines for the size of the OPFOR—the size is METT-T dependent. Following the time sequence in Table 6-1, one set of OPFOR, in a stationary mode, supports the entire evaluation. This allows a minimum of 12 hours between each action.

b. **Evaluators.** The evaluators (Section IV) stay with the evaluated platoon before, during, and after (for the after-action review) the mission. If the time sequence in Table 6-1 is used, seven teams of evaluators are required. The first evaluating team starts with the first platoon at 0600 on the first day and ends at 0600 on the third day (assuming 48 hours to run the first platoon). The first evaluating team has to be ready to start again with the next platoon at 1800 hours on the same day. Other evaluating teams will have more time for evaluation and rest before starting the next platoon.

PLATOON NUMBER	START TIME	FINISH TIME
1	0600 Day 1	0600 Day 3
2	1800 Day 1	1800 Day 3
3	0600 Day 2	0600 Day 4
4	1800 Day 2	1800 Day 4
5	0600 Day 3	0600 Day 5
6	1800 Day 3	1800 Day 5
7	0600 Day 4	0600 Day 6
8	1800 Day 4	1800 Day 6
9	0600 Day 5	0600 Day 7

Table 6-1. Start-finish time for platoon evaluation.

**NOTE:** Platoon training in this time sequence degrades to some extent the “standardized” capabilities of the evaluation. Some platoons perform a certain task during daylight, others at night. As an alternative, all platoons can start at the same time of day, but this extends the overall evaluation by four days. When evaluating one platoon or several platoons concurrently—

1. The ideal schedule is that one platoon completes the evaluation before another platoon starts. Although it is time-consuming, this schedule ensures similar conditions for all platoons and requires the least material and personnel resources.
2. Several platoons can be evaluated concurrently by using different sites or staggering the start times at the same site. Evaluation conditions change because the terrain changes. The resources required are a multiple of the number of evaluated platoons.

### **Section III. PREPARATION OF THE EVALUATION**

#### **6-6. GENERAL**

For an evaluation to be a valid measure of the platoon’s abilities, the evaluation headquarters must standardize procedures and plan carefully to provide the platoons with the material and assets they need.

#### **6-7. SPECIFIC PREPARATION REQUIREMENTS**

These preparation requirements include preparing the evaluators, leaders, units, and soldiers; preparing the site; and arranging for resources.

a. **Prepare the evaluation instruments.** The example evaluation scenario outlined in Section VIII contains tasks grouped as necessary to execute the evaluation. Additional tasks can be added or deleted to complement the general scenario.

(1) Identify the major operations to evaluate. Under each major operation, identify the squad and platoon tasks.

(2) List the selected operations and tasks in the order that they will occur in the scenario. Remember, some operations and tasks will be evaluated more than once for each STX in the scenario.

(3) Organize the selected tasks (STXs) into evaluator packets for each evaluator and echelon of the evaluated unit. Information about each item in the evaluator packets is in Section IV.

(4) Duplicate each of the evaluator packets for each element being evaluated.

b. **Forecast and requisition resources.** Depending on the number of platoons to be evaluated, headquarters forecasts and requisitions training ammunition, batteries, MILES equipment, and other resources. (See Table 6-2.)

NOTE: Several vehicles or squads (simulating a stationary unit) and personnel (guides) will be required to evaluate the task, Perform Passage of Lines. This is in addition to the support requirements listed in Table 6-2.

AMMUNITION	DODAC	BASIC LOAD	
5.56-mm (blank)	1305A080	150 rounds each rifle	
5.56-mm (blank)	1305A075	400/M249 *600/coaxial machine guns	
Caliber .50	1305A598	*200 rounds per M2 machine gun	
Hand grenade, ( practice)	1330G818	2 per rifleman	
Hand grenade fuze (practice)	1330G878	2 per rifleman	
ATWESS cartridges	1370L367	4 per Viper/Law, 3 per Dragon, *7 per Bradley	
OTHER ITEMS	NUMBER		
Batteries			
BA 200 (6-volt) (9-volt)	2 each per vehicle per day		
BA 3090 (9-volt)	3 each per soldier per day		
MILES EQUIPMENT	PLATOON	CONTROLLERS	OPFOR
APC	*4		2 to 14
Caliber .50 system	*4		2 to 14
M19 blank firing adapter (caliber .50)	*4		2 to 14
M16 system	32		6 to 90
M249 SAW MILES transmitter	6		2 to 18
Controller guns and keys		5	
Small-arms alignment fixture		1	
Dragon/Javelin	3		1 to 9
Viper/AT4	6		2 to 18
*These requirements are added when units use mechanized platoons for OPFOR or in support of training.			

**Table 6-2. Consolidated support requirements.**

c. **Prepare the unit.** The evaluated units must have adequate resources and time to train, evaluate, and retrain collective and individual skills before the evaluation.

(1) Trainers must stress safety at all times. Leaders must instill an awareness of individual safety in all subordinate leaders and soldiers. Soldiers must be constantly alert for and avoid dangerous situations.

(2) Trainers brief the platoon on the ROE. (See ARTEPs 7-20-MTP and 71-2-MTP.)

(3) Trainers brief the platoon on the evaluation control system, its function, and the use of the results. (See Section VI.)

(4) Trainers brief the platoon on the evaluator scoring system. (See Section IV.)

d. **Inspect individual and unit equipment.** The chain of command must check all weapons, radios, and special equipment for serviceability. The unit must zero its MILES equipment. Evaluators check the MILES belts with a controller gun.

e. **Select and prepare the evaluation site.** This involves the following considerations:

(1) **Size.** The training area should have at least 10 to 15 km by 5 to 10 km to accomplish the objectives. If evaluating multiple units at the same time, the trainer must ensure that training areas do not overlap.

(2) **Type of terrain.** Terrain should offer multiple covered and concealed approaches to the objectives. Terrain must not limit the leader to an obvious solution.

(3) **OPFOR locations.** The trainer selects OPFOR locations based on a sound, tactical appreciation of the terrain available, and OPFOR doctrine.

(4) **Administrative site—evaluation headquarters.** The trainer selects an administrative site to stockpile training ammunition and other equipment. It can also serve as a location to debrief evaluators and unit members and as a central location for data collection. The battalion TOC can perform this function.

NOTE: Having units that are knowledgeable of the equipment and in the use of MILES will save time in this phase. (See TC 25-6, TC 25-6-1, TC 25-6-2, TC 25-6-3, and TC 25-6-4.)

#### **Section IV. EVALUATOR REQUIREMENTS, TRAINING, AND SCORING SYSTEM**

##### **6-8. GENERAL**

Evaluators must know the evaluated unit's mission, organization, equipment, and employment. Evaluators are at least equal in rank of the

unit or subordinate element commander. They should have experience in that specific or similar TOE position.

#### **6-9. EVALUATOR REQUIREMENTS**

The minimum requirements for the evaluating team are as follows:

- a. One captain with platoon leader experience (senior evaluator).
- b. One first lieutenant with platoon leader experience (platoon evaluator).
- c. One sergeant first class with platoon sergeant experience (platoon sergeant evaluator).
- d. Three sergeants and or staff sergeants with infantry squad platoon leader experience (squad leader evaluator).
- e. A recorder at the evaluation control headquarters to receive "kill" information, results, and time data from the evaluators.
- f. The OPFOR leaders also provide input for the platoon evaluators.

#### **6-10. EVALUATOR TRAINING**

Evaluator training is essential to standardize the evaluation. Evaluators should receive about six hours of classroom instruction. (This requires one officer with knowledge and experience of evaluating and one classroom.) The evaluators then conduct a reconnaissance of the field evaluation area, war-game the refined scenario, and rehearse the evaluation procedures and exercise control system. They must know the T&EO and scoring criteria in their respective areas, and the desired evaluation process to include the control procedures, the use of MILES, and the ROE.

a. **Evaluation design.** Each STX evaluates specific missions or tasks. Evaluators make every effort to support that evaluation. By the same token, evaluators consider those conditions that obstruct an assessment of the unit's performance.

b. **MILES.** Each evaluator, regardless of position, must know the platoon's weapons and the MILES equipment. Before each STX, the evaluator must ensure that all MILES equipment is functional.

c. **Evaluation scoring system.** The evaluation scoring system ensures consistent and standardized scoring and data collection. It includes the following elements:

(1) Rules of engagement. (See Appendix A of ARTEPs 7-20-MTP and 71-2-MTP.)

(2) Duties and responsibilities. Each evaluator has specific duties and responsibilities. (See Section VI, paragraph 6-18e.)

(3) Communications system. Evaluators need a single-net radio for control of the exercise. Using the evaluated platoon's radios is a hazard, as

well as a hindrance, to that unit. The control center must also have communications with the OPFOR to assist in coordination.

(4) Evaluation data collection. Each evaluator must know the data collection plan and his specific responsibilities. Failure to collect data results in inaccurate assessments of a platoon's proficiency.

## 6-11. EVALUATOR SCORING SYSTEM

The senior evaluator is responsible for preparing the evaluator scoring system and assessing task accomplishment. This evaluation report reflects the overall platoon proficiency. Once complete, the senior evaluator gives all material to the battalion S3 or the battalion commander.

a. **Training and evaluation outline.** The use of the T&EO as an evaluating tool is critical in assessing unit performance. The complete T&EO is copied from Chapter 5 and T, P, or U is used (GO or NO-GO is used for each T&EO subtask). The standards of the T&EO provide information to determine strengths and weaknesses as related to the T&EO task. Failure to perform to all standards of the T&EO indicates the need to retrain that task until all standards can be met. (See Chapter 5.)

b. **Unit proficiency work sheet.** The senior evaluator uses the completed T&EOs to prepare the unit proficiency work sheet. (See Figure 6-1, page 6-8.) The example work sheet includes a task list within a given operation as well as an evaluation of the subunit evaluations and remarks. The unit proficiency work sheet provides the commander with the status of training.

c. **Task summary sheet.** The senior evaluator prepares the task summary sheet (Figure 6-2, page 6-9.), using the completed unit proficiency work sheets and T&EOs as the base. A separate task summary sheet is prepared for each mission evaluated. It identifies the mission and tasks performed as well as the evaluation grade (T, P, U) on each task. The task summary sheet reveals a precise evaluation of the unit and eliminates the ambiguity often caused by the use of generalized narrative strength or weakness statements. Deviations from the scenario and comments by the senior evaluator may be placed as an enclosure to the task summary sheet.

d. **Unit data report.** This report presents demographic information that might affect a unit's performance (for example, new leaders, low strength). (See Figure 6-3, page 6-10.)

e. **Environmental data report.** This report presents weather information so that a comparison can be made of missions conducted under different environmental conditions. (See Figure 6-4, page 6-11.)

NOTE: The unit data report and environmental data report should accompany the unit proficiency work sheet for all tasks.



TASK SUMMARY SHEET				
MISSION : <u>ATTACK</u>				
TASK TITLES	T&EO NUMBER	EVALUATION		
		T	P	U
1. Occupy Assembly Area	7-3/4-1136		✓	
2. Develop and Communicate a Plan	7-3/4-1605		✓	
3. Prepare for Combat	7-3/4-1606		✓	
4. Move Tactically	7-3/4-1134	✓		
5. Reconnoiter Area	7-3/4-1003		✓	
6. Execute Assault	7-3/4-1103		✓	
7. Perform Consolidation and Reorganization	7-3/4-1607			✓
8. Prepare for Combat	7-3/4-1606		✓	
9. Move Tactically	7-3/4-1134	✓		

TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK			
		MISSION SUMMARY	
		T	P U
TOTAL TASKS AND STANDARDS EVALUATED	9	2	6 1
TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES RATING		GO	NO - GO
		✓	
Evaluator's Signature	<i>R. Bill M. [Signature]</i>		

NOTE: Evaluators prepare a separate task summary sheet for each mission evaluated. Evaluator's comments may be placed on an enclosure to the task summary sheet.

Figure 6-2. Example task summary sheet.




UNIT DATA REPORT		
1. UNIT DESIGNATION <u>1st Plt, A Co, 2-505th PIR</u>		
2. UNIT LEADERS: (Circle most correct answer.)		
	RANK	TIME IN UNIT (MONTHS)
Platoon Leader	<input checked="" type="radio"/> 1LT <input type="radio"/> 2LT/SFC	1-3 <input checked="" type="radio"/> 6-12 <input type="radio"/> 12-18 <input type="radio"/> 19 or more
Platoon Sergeant	<input checked="" type="radio"/> SFC <input type="radio"/> SSG	1-3 <input type="radio"/> 3-6 <input type="radio"/> 6-12 <input type="radio"/> 12-18 <input checked="" type="radio"/> 19 or more
1st Squad Leader	<input checked="" type="radio"/> SSG <input type="radio"/> SGT/SP4	1-3 <input type="radio"/> 3-6 <input type="radio"/> 6-12 <input checked="" type="radio"/> 12-18 <input type="radio"/> 19 or more
2d Squad Leader	<input type="radio"/> SSG <input checked="" type="radio"/> SGT <input type="radio"/> SP4	1-3 <input type="radio"/> 3-6 <input checked="" type="radio"/> 6-12 <input type="radio"/> 12-18 <input type="radio"/> 19 or more
3d Squad Leader	<input checked="" type="radio"/> SSG <input type="radio"/> SGT/SP4	1-3 <input type="radio"/> 3-6 <input type="radio"/> 6-12 <input type="radio"/> 12-18 <input checked="" type="radio"/> 19 or more
3. UNIT STRENGTH (Excluding leaders): <u>24</u>		
4. EQUIPMENT SHORTAGES (Major items) (List below):		
WEAPONS:		
LIMITED VISIBILITY: <u>1 AN/PVS-5 NVG in maintenance</u>		
RADIOS:		
NAVIGATION EQUIPMENT:		
5. COMMENTS:		
<p><u>-Have 4 new Soldiers since last field training.</u></p> <p><u>-2d Squad Leader on emergency leave.</u></p>		
Evaluator's Signature/Date		 <u>24 Mar 94</u>

Figure 6-3. Example unit data report.



- f. **Casualty report.** The casualty report presents information that reflects one aspect of a unit's degree of success during engagements with the OPFOR. (See Figure 6-5.)
- g. **OPORD and FRAGO.** The senior evaluator uses the OPORD to begin the evaluation scenario. He uses the FRAGO to continue the exercise. (See Section VIII.)

CASUALTY REPORT PLATOON EVALUATION						
UNIT: <i>1st Plt, A Co, 2-505th PIR</i>						
MISSION/TASK NUMBER OR TITLE	FRIENDLY			OPFOR		
	WIA	KIA	VEH	WIA	KIA	VEH
1. <i>Occupy Assembly Area</i>	-	-	-	-	-	-
2. <i>Develop and Communicate a Plan</i>	-	-	-	-	-	-
3. <i>Move Tactically</i>	-	-	-	-	-	-
4. <i>Recon Area</i>	-	-	-	-	-	-
5. <i>Execute Assault</i>	3	1	-	3	4	1
6. <i>Perform Consolidation/Reorganization</i>	1	-	-	1	1	-
7. <i>Prepare for Combat</i>	-	-	-	-	-	-
8. <i>Move Tactically</i>	-	-	-	-	-	-
9.						
10.						
11.						
12.						
13.						
14.						
15.						
COMMENTS:						
25 MAR 94 Evaluator's Signature/Date <i>R. L. McNeil</i>						

Figure 6-5. Example casualty report.

## Section V. OPPOSING FORCE SELECTION AND TRAINING

### 6-12. GENERAL

The selection and training of the OPFOR is crucial to the success of a standardized evaluation. The OPFOR provides one of the control measures that influences the conditions under which the evaluation is administered. Each platoon should face an opponent as consistent as possible in strength, weapons, uniforms, equipment, and OPFOR tactical skill. In addition, the OPFOR with a communications link assists the evaluators by providing subjective and objective feedback.

### 6-13. SELECTION

Any qualified skill level 1 or 2 soldier can serve as OPFOR. The OPFOR should be a cohesive unit (up to platoon strength) under the control of their regular leader or commander. The OPFOR should also be evaluated IAW its task, conditions, and standards for each T&EO.

### 6-14. TRAINING

The OPFOR must receive thorough training in five major areas:

- a. Threat small-unit tactics.
- b. Rules of engagement. (See Appendix A of ARTEPs 7-20-MTP or 71-2-MTP.)
- c. How to install and operate the MILES devices for their weapons.
- d. Threat weapons and equipment (or replicas) whenever possible.
- e. Training scenario. For each scenario, they must know their mission, evaluation objective and standard, scenario, and all OPFOR control measures.

### 6-15. OPPOSING FORCE STRENGTH

OPFOR strength depends on the unit and its missions and tasks to be evaluated.

a. **Offense.** The platoon should outnumber the OPFOR 3 to 1 if a platoon attack is to have a good chance of success. The OPFOR should not be so weak that they are quickly overcome. The OPFOR should have weapons capable of defeating any of the platoon's assets. The OPFOR should be strong enough to challenge the platoon; but, a challenge that the platoon can overcome if they employ proper tactics.

b. **Defense.** The OPFOR at a minimum should have a 3 to 1 superiority when attacking the platoon. Anything less will not effectively challenge the platoon. The OPFOR should have weapons and equipment representative of the threat they are portraying and conduct their attack according to threat doctrine.

## Section VI. CONDUCT OF THE EVALUATION

### 6-16. GENERAL

The evaluation consists of preevaluation, evaluation, and postevaluation activities, each requiring preparation and coordination.

### 6-17. PREEVALUATION ACTIVITIES

The evaluators must make a reconnaissance of the evaluation area to ensure that they know the unit boundary, the location of OPFOR, and the most likely avenues of approach throughout the area of operations. While the platoon is conducting its preevaluation activities (for example, installing and troubleshooting MILES equipment, conducting inspections), the OPFOR is also preparing their plans and positions. In the example scenario, the senior evaluator issues the platoon a company WO and marching order to move to an assembly area. When the platoon occupies the assembly area, the company OPORD is issued. The platoon leader issues his OPORD and allots time for issuing squad orders.

### 6-18. EVALUATION ACTIVITIES

The battalion conducting the external evaluation has the option of evaluating one platoon at a time (consecutively) or a number of platoons concurrently.

a. **Role of the commander.** The role of the company commander varies with the method of evaluation. Ideally, he is with the senior evaluator and provides a command radio link with his platoons. If the need arises, the platoon evaluator or senior evaluator (in the role of company commander) may provide the command net link, freeing the company commander to evaluate other platoons.

b. **Radio requirements.** In addition to the company command net and the platoon command net, the senior evaluator controls the exercise through his net. Fire support requirements go through the fire direction control net (see Section IX). CSS requirements go through the administrative/logistics net. The evaluation control headquarters is a stationary or mobile command post to exercise control and to portray realistic time-distance factors between the company CP and the platoon.

c. **Beginning the first STX.** Once the senior evaluator or company commander issues the company OPORD, the platoon leader executes the missions and tasks in the first STX of the scenario and adheres to time constraints. From this point on, all successive STXs begin with a company team FRAGO or OPORD.

d. **Ending the STX.** The senior evaluator should end an STX when the platoon completes the mission and tasks in a specific STX, or suffers casualties and or damage to the extent that the platoon is combat ineffective. The evaluator must record the reasons for the termination in the margin of the evaluator's T&EO work sheet and report the action to the evaluation control headquarters. In the example evaluation scenario (Section VIII), the completion of each mission and task is "prepare for continuing operations; perform sustaining operations." During this period, the senior evaluator or commander may issue the company FRAGO or OPORD for the next STX. In addition, if there are casualties and damaged or destroyed equipment, the senior evaluator directs the platoon to remain in position while "replacements" (personnel and equipment designated as killed or destroyed) are sent forward to reconstitute the unit. The evaluators perform the following actions:

(1) Inspect all MILES equipment, record kill codes, and then reset. Replace any damaged or inoperative MILES equipment.

(2) Report performance information from the T&EOs to the recorder in the evaluation control headquarters.

(3) Conduct an AAR (Section VII) at the end of each STX. The senior evaluator or commander directs the platoon to continue its operations with a company FRAGO or OPORD for the next STX.

e. **Evaluators' duties and responsibilities.** The evaluators perform the following duties:

(1) Complete each T&EO worksheet.

(2) Collect data for the reports, supplied in the evaluator packets.

(3) Ensure that all MILES equipment is functional.

(4) Report kills (vehicles, soldiers).

(5) Report weapons firing. Together with reporting kills, this is the best method for determining direct-fire effectiveness. For example, an overwatching platoon is not providing effective direct-fire support if that fire has no effect on the OPFOR.

(6) Enforce the ROE.

(7) Observe critical tactical events. Evaluators record any action that might have an effect on later performance or mission outcome. All reports should have the event time to help recreate the action during the AAR.

(8) Record routes of travel and platoon locations.

(9) Use a tape recorder to record communications, if available. This allows units to listen to the command and control activities.

(10) ENFORCE SAFETY.

(11) Control the platoon evaluation in two ways: first, through the control measures in paragraphs 3 and 5 of the OPORD or FRAGO, and

second, through the company commander or the senior evaluator on the company command net. The platoon evaluators do not control, but merely accompany the unit as observers. Only the senior evaluator has direct contact with the platoon leader; all other evaluators do not speak to, aid, give advice, point out positions, or in any way influence the platoon's performance except in a safety emergency. Evaluators are neutral and must remain so throughout the evaluation.

#### **6-19. POSTEVALUATION ACTIVITIES**

At the end of the evaluation, the platoon moves to an assembly area and takes the following actions:

- a. The senior evaluator debriefs subordinate evaluators and compiles all data (evaluator packets).
- b. The senior evaluator, using the evaluator scoring system, completes the unit proficiency work sheets and the task summary sheets to reflect overall unit performance.
- c. All completed evaluator's packets go through control headquarters for recording and analysis.
- d. The senior evaluator conducts an AAR of the platoon's performance.
- e. Each evaluator conducts an AAR of his element's performance.

### **Section VII. AFTER-ACTION REVIEW**

#### **6-20. GENERAL**

At the end of the evaluation, feedback to the platoon increases and reinforces learning. An AAR is not a critique (a recounting of the tasks the unit did well or did poorly). In an AAR, the leaders and soldiers of the evaluated unit are active participants in the process.

- a. Because all members participate, each member becomes a source of feedback information. This provides a richer "data base" from which key points can be drawn. For example, a leader's assessment of the situation and the basis for his decisions are known only to him. The AAR leader tries to get this information so that it becomes an important part of the discussion and forms the context for discussing alternative courses of action.
- b. Figure 6-6 is an example format that evaluators may use as a working paper for making detailed observations during an exercise.

DETAILED OBSERVATION	
*TRAINING EXERCISE TITLE AND ARTEP MISSION/OPFOR ACTION:	
DESCRIPTION:	<i>StX #1, Attack</i> <i>Task: Perform Consolidation and Reorganization</i>
TIME:	<i>2130</i>
OBSERVATIONS (player action):	<i>Several leader and critical tasks were not performed to standard.</i>
COMMENTS/CONCLUSIONS:	<i>An immediate OPFOR counterattack caught the platoon unprepared. Platoon leadership took too long to implement consolidation/reorganization.</i>
RECOMMENDATIONS:	<i>Begin consolidation and reorganization immediately. Ensure all leaders know their tasks.</i>
COMMENTS FOR THE AAR:	<i>- As stated above.</i>
*Evaluators use this format to record comments for each event.	

Figure 6-6. Example of AAR working paper.

## 6-21. PREPARATION

AAR preparation involves six steps.

a. **Review training objectives, orders, and doctrine.** Training objectives, or T&EOs, focus the discussion of the exercise results. The FRAGOs and OPORDs in the exercise implement these objectives. The evaluator should know the objectives, FRAGOs, and OPORDs so that he can note orders given by the leaders of the evaluated unit and subunits that either implement these objectives or deviate from them.



b. **Observe the exercise.** This is an active process, and the emphasis is on monitoring the actions that make the difference between unit success and failure. The evaluator is where he can observe critical events. Examples of critical events include—

- (1) Order briefings.
- (2) React to contact.
- (3) Major command and control activities (for example, OPORDs, FRAGOs, orientation, control and communications during movement).
- (4) Acquisition of important intelligence.
- (5) Deceptive maneuvers.
- (6) Occupation or control of major terrain features.
- (7) Neutralization or destruction of major OPFOR capabilities, elements, or weapons.

c. **Select the site and assemble the participants.** If possible, the AAR is held where the majority of the action occurred (normally, where the OPFOR was positioned). Most often the OPFOR or unit objective locations are suitable for assembling the players and conducting the AAR.

d. **Debrief the evaluators.** While the units are moving to the AAR site, the evaluators brief the senior evaluator. This includes a detailed description of the exercise's major tactical events in chronological order.

e. **Organize and rehearse.** After the senior evaluator understands what happened during the exercise, he should review the critical events and rank them in terms of their relevance to the training objectives and their contribution to the exercise outcome. Once the notes are ready, he prepares the training aids. Rehearsals are a must to conduct a good AAR.

## 6-22. CONDUCT OF THE AFTER-ACTION REVIEW

(See TC 25-20, Chapter 4.) The AARs ensure the active participation of all members of the unit, build esprit, and aid in learning. Trainers gather and organize the entire unit, restate the mission and commander's intent, then discuss each event and engagement (using maps, map boards, terrain boards, sand tables, and or other training aids). The OPFOR personnel should describe friendly actions from their perspective, both good and bad. Trainers summarize the major points and recommend subsequent training to correct weaknesses and sustain strengths. The following is an example AAR summary checklist:

- a. Organize the participants.
- b. Restate the mission and commander's intent.
- c. OPFOR mission and intent.
- d. Guide a discussion of major tactical events in the order of occurrence.

- (1) What happened.
  - (2) How it happened.
  - (3) Why it happened.
- e. Discuss alternate courses of action.
  - f. Discuss leader errors but avoid emphasis on negativism.
  - g. Use terrain boards, maps, map boards, schematics, and sand tables to assist.
  - h. Summarize teaching points in terms of training objectives.

## **Section VIII. EVALUATION SCENARIO DEVELOPMENT**

### **6-23. GENERAL**

The implementing headquarters develop realistic time frames for each major operation or task. They base the time on the intensity and speed of the battlefield and the size of the evaluation site. (For an example of a platoon evaluation scenario, see Figure 6-7, page 6-20.) The STXs may be arranged in any order as long as they follow a tactical scenario. (For an example of a platoon scenario, see Figure 6-8, page 6-21.)

### **6-24. REACTION-TYPE MISSIONS**

At least one or more of the STX(s) may contain a "reaction-type" mission. This mission is used to evaluate the platoon leader's ability to exercise tactical initiative and sound judgment. For example, the platoon leader may be given a mission to move rapidly to a key road intersection and to establish a hasty defense within a specified time. (For an example of a battalion OPORD, see Figure 6-9, page 6-22.) This reaction-type mission requires the platoon leader to plan and issue a FRAGO while on the move and to execute it immediately on reaching the objective area.

### **6-25. TERRAIN**

The field evaluation site should be large enough to allow the platoon to demonstrate appropriate movement techniques before contact. The maximum effective range of OPFOR MILES must be considered.

EXAMPLE EVALUATION SCENARIO (PLATOON EVALUATION)—TIME ALLOCATION		
EVENT ACTION	ESTIMATED TIME	PROPOSED TIME FRAME
<b>STX 1</b>		
1. Conduct preevaluation activities (for example; install, align, and troubleshoot MILES equipment; conduct inspections; draw equipment).	Before start time	
2. Occupy Assembly Area.	1 hour DAY 1	1700
3. Receive Company OPORD .	1 hour	1800
4. Prepare for Combat .	4 hours	1900
5. Perform Passage of Lines.	2 hours	2300
6. Move Tactically.	3 hours DAY 2	0100
7. Cross Water Obstacle .	1 hour	0400
8. Assault.	1 hour	0500
9. Consolidate and Reorganize Intermediate AAR	1 hour	0600
<b>STX 2</b>		
10. Receive Company FRAGO	2 hours	0700
11. Perform Helicopter Movement	2 hours	0900
12. Occupy Objective Rally Point	1 hour	1100
13. Perform Area Ambush Intermediate AAR	10 hours	1200
14. Receive Company FRAGO Review	2 hours	2200
15. Move Tactically	1 hour	2400
16. Cross Danger Area	1 hour DAY 3	0100
17. Occupy Patrol Base	3 hour	0200
Move to AAR Site	1 hours	0500
18. After-Action Review	2 hours	0600
19. End of Exercise		0800
<b>Total Time 39 hours</b>		

Figure 6-7. Example platoon evaluation scenario.

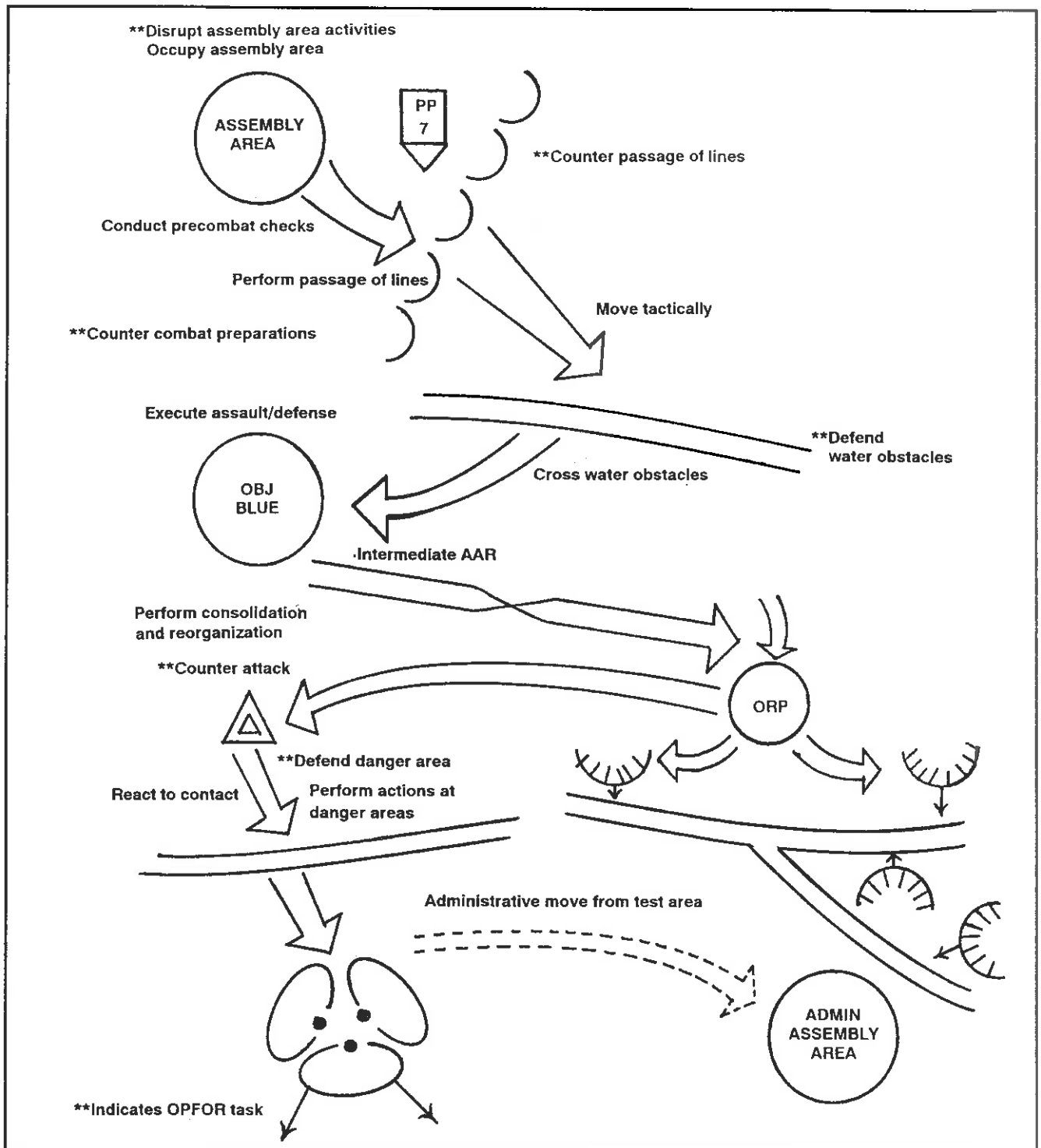


Figure 6-8. Example platoon scenario.



(Classification)

## 2. MISSION

Company ( ) seizes Objective BLUE (grid) at (date/time) hours in order to prevent the enemy from engaging Company ( ) (main attack) from Objective BLUE.

## 3. EXECUTION

a. **Concept of Operation.** ANNEX B (Operations Overlay). (This should include those items in Task 7-3/4-1605, Develop and Communicate a Plan, paragraph 17. These should be written out when possible and not just placed on an overlay.)

(1) Maneuver. ( ) Platoon establishes a defense in its zone, NLT (date/time) hours, to destroy small enemy elements moving or exfiltrating to the (direction), from the vicinity of Objective BLUE. This defense supports the attack on Objective BLUE by completing destruction of any enemy that may escape. (Evaluated) Platoon conducts the company main attack at (hours) to seize Objective BLUE to destroy the enemy or force them to withdraw into ( ) Platoon's defense. ( ) Platoon supports the attack of the (Evaluated) Platoon on Objective BLUE to suppress enemy fires and isolate the objective. On seizure of Objective BLUE, (Evaluated) Platoon and ( ) Platoon will defend in sector to destroy the enemy elements withdrawing to avoid ( ) Company's attack.

(2) Fire support.

(a) Priority of fires.

- Initially to (Evaluated) Platoon.
- Upon seizure of Objective BLUE, priority shifts to (Defensive) Platoon.

(b) Priority targets.

- 60-mm priority target initially AA4031.
- On initiation of assault on Objective BLUE, priority shifts to target AA4027 to isolate the objective.
- Upon seizure of Objective BLUE, priority shifts to target AA4025.

b. **Tasks to maneuver units.**

(1) ( ) Platoon. Destroy enemy elements moving to the (direction), NLT (date/time).

(Classification)

Figure 6-9. Example of a company OPORD(continued).

(Classification)

- (2) (Evaluated) Platoon. Consolidate and defend in sector to destroy enemy elements following the seizure of Objective BLUE.
- (3) (—) Platoon.
  - (a) Be prepared to assault Objective BLUE, on order.
  - (b) Consolidate and defend in sector to destroy enemy elements following the seizure of Objective BLUE.

**c. Tasks to combat support units.**

(1) 60-mm Section. GS, initially in the vicinity of CP 7, priority of fires to the (Evaluated) Platoon. Move with the (Supporting) Platoon. On order, priority of fires to the (Defensive) Platoon.

(2) Antiarmor Section. Attached to the (Supporting) Platoon.

**d. Coordinating Instructions:**

- (1) (Defensive) Platoon reports defense established and locations.
- (2) Platoon reports the seizure of all objectives.
- (3) Platoon reports the consolidation and establishment of the defense.
- (4) Order of march from the assembly area to the objective: defense platoon, evaluated

**4. SERVICE SUPPORT**

a. **General.** Company trains collocated with the battalion combat trains in the vicinity of (grid). Supply distribution at the company CP.

**b. Materiel and Services.**

- (1) Class I: Ration cycle MRE-MRE-MRE.
- (2) Class V: Pick up basic load at company CP, NLT (date/time).
- (3) Medical: Company casualty collection point is \_\_\_\_\_.
- (4) EPW: EPW collection point is \_\_\_\_\_.

(Classification)

Figure 6-9. Example of a company OPORD(continued).





mark the impact of the round with artillery simulators and assess casualties. Table 6-3, describes the bursting radius and sheaf sizes of various indirect-fire weapons.

<b>BURSTING RADIUS AND SHEAF SIZES OF INDIRECT-FIRE WEAPONS</b>		
<b>WEAPON</b>	<b>BURST RADIUS METERS</b>	<b>SHEAF SIZE METERS</b>
60-mm mortar	28	90 x 30
81-mm mortar	35	140 x 35
105-mm howitzer	30	200 x 150
155-mm howitzer	40	300 x 200

**Table 6-3. Bursting radius.**

#### **6-28. REALISM**

Fire support to the evaluated platoon should be the same as can be expected in combat. Because of the OPFOR tendency to mass artillery and control fire at higher echelons, OPFOR platoons have problems calling for and adjusting fire. OPFOR companies can expect support from the battalion's mortar sections when they are not firing for the regimental artillery commander.

#### **6-29. SIMULATION WITHOUT OPFOR**

Reaction to indirect fire is an important consideration on the platoon evaluation. The task, React to Indirect Fire assesses the platoon's ability in this area and can be simulated without an OPFOR call for fire. The platoon evaluator simply ignites artillery simulators and observes the platoon's reaction.

## APPENDIX A

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

STP 21-1-SMCT, Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks,  
Skill Level 1 (1 October 1990)

**SKILL LEVEL 1**

1. 031-503-1004 Put on, Wear, Remove, and Store Your M17-Series Protective Mask With Hood
2. 031-503-1005 Maintain Your M17-Series Protective Mask With Hood
3. 031-503-1012 Put on, Wear, Remove, and Store Your M24 or M25 Series Protective Mask With Hood
4. 031-503-1011 Maintain Your M24 or M25-Series Protective Mask With Hood
5. 031-503-1007 Decontaminate Your Skin and Personal Equipment
6. 031-503-1015 Put on and Wear MOPP Gear
7. 031-503-1019 Recognize and React to Chemical or Biological Hazard
8. 031-503-1018 React to Nuclear Hazard
9. 031-503-1014 Use M8 Detector Paper to Identify Chemical Agent
10. 031-503-1020 Use M9 Detector Paper to Detect Chemical Agent
11. 031-503-1023 Exchange MOPP Gear
12. 031-503-1024 Replace Canister on Your M40-Series Protective Mask
13. 031-503-1025 Put on, Wear, Remove, and Store Your M40 Protective Mask With Hood
14. 031-503-1026 Maintain Your M40-Series Protective Mask With Hood
15. 031-503-1030 Prepare the Chemical Agent Monitor for Operation
16. 031-503-1031 Put the Chemical Agent Monitor Into Operation

17. 031-503-1032 Prepare the Chemical Agent Monitor for Movement or Storage
18. 031-503-1006 Drink From Canteen While Wearing Your Protective Mask
19. 031-503-1008 Use the Latrine While Wearing MOPP4
20. 051-191-1361 Camouflage Yourself and Your Individual Equipment
21. 051-191-1362 Camouflage Equipment
22. 051-192-1022 Locate Mines by Probing
23. 051-202-1363 Camouflage Your Defensive Position
24. 071-331-0803 Report Enemy Information
25. 071-326-0512 Estimate Range
26. 071-329-1000 Identify Topographic Symbols on a Military Map
27. 071-329-1001 Identify Terrain Features on a Map
28. 071-329-1012 Orient a Map to the Ground by Map-Terrain Association
29. 071-329-1002 Determine the Grid Coordinates of a Point on a Military Map
30. 071-329-1005 Determine a Location on the Ground by Terrain Association
31. 071-329-1003 Determine a Magnetic Azimuth Using a Lensatic Compass
32. 071-329-1018 Determine Direction Using Field-Expedient Methods
33. 071-329-1008 Measure Distance on a Map
34. 071-311-2025 Maintain an M16A1 or M16A2 Rifle
35. 071-311-2026 Perform a Function Check on an M16A1 or M16A2 Rifle
36. 071-311-2027 Load an M16A1 or M16A2 Rifle
37. 071-311-2028 Unload an M16A1 or M16A2 Rifle
38. 071-311-2029 Correct Malfunctions of an M16A1 or M16A2 Rifle
39. 071-311-2004 Zero an M16A1 Rifle

- 
40. 071-311-2030 Zero an M16A2 Rifle
  41. 071-311-2007 Engage Targets With an M16A1 or M16A2 Rifle
  42. 071-054-0001 Prepare an M136 Launcher for Firing
  43. 071-054-0002 Restore an M136 Launcher to Carrying Configuration
  44. 071-054-0003 Perform Misfire Procedures on an M136 Launcher
  45. 071-054-0004 Engage Targets with an M136 Launcher
  46. 071-311-2126 Perform a Function Check on an M203 Grenade Launcher
  47. 071-311-2127 Load an M203 Grenade Launcher
  48. 071-311-2128 Unload an M203 Grenade Launcher
  49. 071-311-2129 Correct Malfunctions of an M203 Grenade Launcher
  50. 071-311-2130 Engage Targets With an M203 Grenade Launcher
  51. 071-312-3026 Perform a Function Check on an M60 Machine Gun
  52. 071-312-3027 Load an M60 Machine Gun
  53. 071-312-3028 Unload an M60 Machine Gun
  54. 071-312-3029 Correct Malfunctions of an M60 Machine Gun
  55. 071-312-3031 Engage Targets With an M60 Machine Gun
  56. 071-318-2210 Prepare an M72A2/A3 Light Antitank Weapon for Firing
  57. 071-318-2211 Restore an M72A2/A3 Light Antitank Weapon to Carrying Configuration
  58. 071-318-2202 Engage Targets with an M72A2/A3 Light Antitank Weapon
  59. 071-318-2203 Perform Misfire Procedures on an M72A2/A3 Light Antitank Weapon
  60. 071-325-4401 Perform Safety Checks on Hand Grenades
  61. 071-325-4407 Employ Hand Grenades
  62. 071-325-4425 Employ an M18A1 Claymore Mine
  63. 071-325-4426 Recover an M18A1 Claymore Mine

64. 071-326-0502 Move Under Direct Fire
65. 071-326-0503 Move Over, Through, or Around Obstacles (Except Minefields)
66. 071-326-0510 React to Indirect Fire While Dismounted
67. 071-326-0511 React to Flares
68. 071-326-0513 Select Temporary Fighting Positions
69. 071-331-0852 Clear a Field of Fire
70. 071-326-5703 Construct an Individual Fighting Position
71. 071-331-0815 Practice Noise, Light, and Litter Discipline
72. 071-331-0804 Perform Surveillance Without the Aid of Electronic Devices
73. 071-331-0801 Use Challenge and Password
74. 081-831-1043 Practice Preventive Medicine
75. 081-831-1000 Evaluate a Casualty
76. 081-831-1030 Administer Nerve Agent Antidote to Self (Self-Aid)
77. 081-831-1031 Administer First Aid to a Nerve Agent Casualty (Buddy-Aid)
78. 081-831-1003 Clear an Object from the Throat of a Conscious Casualty
79. 081-831-1042 Perform Mouth-to-Mouth Resuscitation
80. 081-831-1016 Put on a Field or Pressure Dressing
81. 081-831-1017 Put on a Tourniquet
82. 081-831-1025 Apply a Dressing to an Open Abdominal Wound
83. 081-831-1026 Apply a Dressing to an Open Chest Wound
84. 081-831-1033 Apply a Dressing to an Open Head Wound
85. 081-831-1005 Prevent Shock
86. 081-831-1034 Splint a Suspected Fracture
87. 081-831-1007 Give First Aid for Burns
88. 081-831-1008 Give First Aid for Heat Injuries
89. 081-831-1009 Give First Aid for Frostbite

- 
90. 081-831-1040 Transport a Casualty Using a One-Man Carry
  91. 081-831-1041 Transport a Casualty Using a Two-Man Carry or an Improvised Litter
  92. 101-515-1900 Perform Search, Recovery, Evacuation and/or Burial of Remains
  93. 113-571-1016 Send a Radio Message
  94. 181-906-1505 Conduct Combat Operations According to the Law of War
  95. 441-091-1101 Perform Search and Scan Procedures
  96. 441-091-1102 Engage Hostile Aircraft with Small Arms
  97. 878-920-1002 Recognize Friendly and Threat Armored Vehicles and Aircraft
  98. 071-329-1006 Navigate from One Point on the Ground to Another Point While Dismounted
  99. 031-503-1028 Put on, Wear, Remove, and Store Your M42 Protective Mask with Hood
  100. 031-503-1029 Maintain Your M42 Protective Mask with Hood
  101. 031-507-2006 Conduct Hasty Decontamination
  102. 051-192-1003 Install the M16A1 Antipersonnel Mine
  103. 051-192-1021 Locate Mines by Visual Means
  104. 051-192-1104 Remove the M16A1 Antipersonnel Mine
  105. 051-192-1117 Install the M21 Antitank Mine
  106. 051-192-1118 Remove the M21 Antitank Mine
  107. 051-195-1004 Install Pickets, Make Barbed Wire Ties and Install Concertina
  108. 071-002-0002 Perform a Function Check on a Caliber .45 Pistol
  109. 071-002-0003 Correct Malfunctions of a Caliber .45 Pistol
  110. 071-002-0004 Load a Caliber .45 Pistol
  111. 071-004-0002 Perform a Function Check on an M49 Pistol
  112. 071-004-0004 Unload an M9 Pistol
  113. 071-004-0005 Correct Malfunctions of an M9 Pistol

114. 071-004-0006 Engage Targets with an M9 Pistol
115. 071-008-0001 Mount a Night Vision Sight AN/PVS-4 on an M16A1 or M16A2 Rifle
116. 071-008-0002 Dismount a Night Vision Sight AN/PVS-4 from an M16A1 or M16A2 Rifle
117. 071-010-0001 Zero a Night Vision Sight AN/PVS-4 to an M249 Machine Gun
118. 071-010-0002 Mount a Night Vision Sight AN/PVS-4 on an M249 Machine Gun
119. 071-010-0003 Dismount a Night vision Sight AN/PVS-4 from an M249 Machine Gun
120. 071-010-0007 Engage Targets with an M249 Machine Gun Using a Night Vision Sight AN/PVS-4
121. 071-020-0001 Mount a Night Vision Sight AN/PVS-4 on an M60 Machine Gun
122. 071-020-0002 Dismount a Night Vision Sight AN/PVS-4 from an M60 Machine Gun
123. 071-020-0006 Mount an M60 Machine Gun on an M122 Tripod
124. 071-020-0007 Dismount an M60 Machine Gun from an M122 Tripod
125. 071-022-0010 Mount a Caliber .50 M2 Machine Gun on an M3 Tripod
126. 071-022-0011 Dismount a Caliber .50 M2 Machine Gun from an M3 Tripod
127. 071-022-0012 Mount a Caliber .50 M2 Machine Gun on a Vehicle
128. 071-022-0013 Dismount a Caliber .50 M2 Machine Gun from a Vehicle
129. 071-022-0014 Construct a Fighting Position for a Caliber .50 M2 Machine Gun
130. 071-030-0007 Perform a Function Check on an MK19 Machine Gun
131. 071-030-0009 Mount an MK19 Machine Gun on a Vehicle
132. 071-030-0010 Dismount an MK19 Machine Gun from a Vehicle

- 
133. 071-030-0011 Mount an MK19 Machine Gun on an M3 Tripod
  134. 071-030-0012 Dismount an MK19 Machine from an M3 Tripod
  135. 071-030-0013 Construct a Fighting Position for an MK19 Machine Gun
  136. 071-032-0001 Mount a Night Vision Sight AN/PVS-4 on an M203 Grenade Launcher
  137. 071-032-0002 Dismount a Night Vision Sight AN/PVS-4 from an M203 Grenade Launcher
  138. 071-034-0001 Load an M243 or M259 Smoke Grenade Launcher
  139. 071-034-0002 Unload an M243 or M259 Smoke Grenade Launcher
  140. 071-034-0003 Perform Misfire Procedures on an M243 or M259 Smoke Grenade Launcher
  141. 071-034-0004 Fire an M243 or M259 Smoke Grenade Launcher
  142. 071-034-0007 Maintain an M243 or M259 Smoke Grenade Launcher
  143. 071-070-0001 Maintain an M202A1 Multishot Rocket Launcher
  144. 071-070-0002 Perform a Function Check on an M202A1 Multishot Rocket Launcher
  145. 071-070-0003 Load an M202A1 Multishot Rocket Launcher
  146. 071-070-0004 Unload an M202A1 Multishot Rocket Launcher
  147. 071-070-0005 Perform Misfire Procedures on an M202A1 Multishot Rocket Launcher
  148. 071-070-0006 Prepare an M202A1 Multishot Rocket Launcher for Firing
  149. 071-070-0007 Restore an M202A1 Multishot Rocket Launcher to Carrying Configuration
  150. 071-070-0008 Engage Targets with an M202A1 Multishot Rocket Launcher
  151. 071-200-0002 Tow a Tracked Vehicle
  152. 071-212-0001 Maintain the Air Cleaner on an M113-Series Vehicle
  153. 071-212-0002 Maintain the Electrical system on an M113-Series Vehicle



- 154. 071-212-0003 Maintain the Brake System on an M113-Series Vehicle
- 155. 071-212-0004 Maintain the Cooling System on an M113-Series Vehicle
- 156. 071-212-0005 Maintain the Engine on an M113-Series Vehicle
- 157. 071-212-0006 Maintain the Fuel System on an M113-Series Vehicle
- 158. 071-212-0007 Maintain the Steering System on an on an M113-Series Vehicle
- 159. 071-212-0008 Maintain the Transmission System on an M113-Series Vehicle
- 160. 071-212-0009 Maintain the Personnel Heater on an M113-Series Vehicle
- 161. 071-212-0010 Maintain the Fire Suppression System on an M113-Series Vehicle
- 162. 071-212-0011 Maintain the Exhaust System on an M113-Series Vehicle
- 163. 071-212-0012 Maintain the Bilge System on an M113-Series Vehicle
- 164. 071-212-0013 Maintain the Hydraulic System on an M113-Series Vehicle
- 165. 071-212-0014 Maintain the Track and Suspension System on an M113-Series Vehicle
- 166. 071-212-0015 Maintain the Hull on an M113-Series Vehicle
- 167. 071-212-0016 Prepare an M113-Series Vehicle for Water Operation
- 168. 071-212-0017 Maintain the Gas Particulate System on an M113-Series Vehicle
- 169. 071-212-0018 Operate the Gas Particulate System on an M113-Series Vehicle
- 170. 071-212-0019 Operate the M19 on an M113-Series Vehicle
- 171. 071-212-0020 Start an M113-Series Vehicle Using Auxiliary Power

- 
172. 071-212-0021 Drive an M113-Series Vehicle
  173. 071-311-3002 Engage Targets with a Caliber .45 Pistol
  174. 071-312-4026 Perform a Function Check on an M249 Machine Gun
  175. 071-312-4028 Unload an M249 Machine Gun
  176. 071-312-4029 Correct Malfunctions of an M249 Machine Gun
  177. 071-312-4032 Prepare a Range Card for an M249 Machine Gun
  178. 071-315-0031 Maintain Night Vision Goggles AN/PVS-5
  179. 071-315-0090 Maintain a Thermal Viewer AN/PAS-7
  180. 071-326-0541 Perform Movement Techniques During MOUT
  181. 071-326-0542 Enter a Building During MOUT
  182. 071-326-0550 Prepare Positions for Individual and Crew-Served Weapons During MOUT
  183. 071-326-0557 Select Hasty Firing Positions During MOUT
  184. 071-326-0600 Use Visual Signalling Techniques While Dismounted
  185. 071-329-1009 Convert Azimuths
  186. 071-329-1011 Orient a Map Using a Lensatic Compass
  187. 071-331-0001 Perform as a Member of a Patrol
  188. 071-410-0001 Perform Self-Extraction from a Minefield
  189. 071-510-0002 Compute Back Azimuths
  190. 071-600-0001 Destroy Supplies and Equipment
  191. 071-710-0001 Maintain a Night Vision Sight AN/PVS-4
  192. 071-710-0008 Operate a Night Vision Sight AN/PVS-7
  193. 071-710-0009 Maintain a Night Vision Sight AN/PVS-7
  194. 071-730-0001 Emplace Pyrotechnic Early Warning Devices
  195. 071-730-0002 Recover Pyrotechnic Early Warning Devices
  196. 071-810-0003 Construct a Field-Expedient Antenna
  197. 071-810-0004 Maintain Intercommunications Set AN/VIC-1 on a Tracked Vehicle (Includes FM Radio)
  198. 071-820-0001 Operate Telephone Set TA-1/PT

199. 071-820-0002 Install Telephone Set TA-1/PT
200. 071-820-0003 Install Communications Wire Lines
201. 071-820-0004 Recover Communications Wire Lines
202. 113-622-2011 Operate Intercommunications Set AN/VIC-1 on a Tracked Vehicle (Includes FM Radio)
203. 113-571-1004 Operate in Radio Nets
204. 113-572-4008 Transmit a Voice United States Message Text Format (USMTF) Message
205. 113-572-5005 Receive a Voice United States Message Text Format (USMTF) Message
206. 113-572-6006 Read a United States Message Text Format (USMTF) Message
207. 113-573-4003 Encode and Decode Messages Using KTC 600\* Tactical Operations Code
208. 113-573-4006 Use the KTC 1400\* Numerical Cipher/Authentication System
209. 113-573-6001 Recognize Electronic Countermeasures (EMC) and Implement Electronic Counter Countermeasures (ECCM)
210. 113-573-7017 Prepare/Submit Operator's (MIJI) Report
211. 113-573-8006 Use an Automated Signal Operation Instruction (SOI)
212. 113-587-1064 Prepare SINCGARS (Manpack) for Operation
213. 113-587-2059 Operate Radio Set AN/PRC-77 with TSEC/KY-57
214. 113-587-2061 Operate Radio Set AN/VRC-64 or AN/GRC-160 with TSEC/KY-57
215. 113-587-2064 Operate Radio Set AN/VRC-12 Series with TSEC/KY-57
216. 113-587-2070 Operate Secure SINCGARS Single Channel (SC)
217. 113-587-2071 Operate Secure SINCGARS Frequency Hopping (FH) (Net Members)
218. 113-587-2072 Operate Secure SINGARS Frequency Hopping (FH) Net Control Station (NCS)

- 
219. 113-587-2075 Operate Secure SINCGARS Data Operations
  220. 113-587-2076 Operate Secure SINCGARS Using Control Monitor (CM)
  221. 113-587-2077 Operate SINCGARS Remote Control Unit (RCU)
  222. 113-588-4025 Repair Telephone Cable WD-1( )/TT or WF-16/U
  223. 113-594-2005 Install and Operate Switchboard, Telephone, Manual SB-993/GT
  224. 113-594-2014 Operate Switchboard, Telephone, Manual SB-22/PT
  225. 113-600-1023 Install Tactical Telephones
  226. 113-600-3015 Perform Operators PMCS on Tactical Telephone Sets
  227. 191-377-5250 Handle Enemy Personnel and Equipment
  228. 551-721-1342 Maintain the Cooling System on an M998-Series Vehicle
  229. 551-721-1343 Maintain the Fuel System on an M998-Series Vehicle
  230. 551-721-1344 Maintain the Transmission System on an M998-Series Vehicle
  231. 551-721-1345 Start an M998-Series Vehicle Using Auxiliary Power
  232. 551-721-1346 Drive an M998-Series Vehicle
  233. 551-721-1347 Maintain the Air Cleaner System on an M998-Series Vehicle
  234. 551-721-1348 Maintain the Steering System on an M998-Series Vehicle
  235. 551-721-1349 Maintain the Engine on an M998-Series Vehicle
  236. 551-721-1350 Maintain the Brake System on an M998-Series Vehicle
  237. 551-721-1351 Maintain the Battery System on an M998-Series Vehicle

STP 21-24-SMCT, Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks,  
Skill Levels 2-4 (1 Oct 92)

SKILL LEVEL 2

1. 031-503-2020 Use and Perform Operator Maintenance on the IM93 or IM147 Dosimeter and PP1578-Series Charger
2. 031-503-3001 Use M256 or M256A1 Chemical Agent Detector Kit
3. 031-503-2001 Use M256 or M256A1 Chemical Agent Detector Kit
4. 031-503-3012 Supervise the Fitting of Protective Masks
5. 031-503-3013 Use and Perform Operator Maintenance on the IM174-Series Radiacmeter
6. 031-503-4004 Prepare and Submit NBC 4 Reports
7. 051-193-1013 Neutralize Booby Traps
8. 061-283-1002 Locate a Target by Grid Coordinates
9. 061-283-6003 Adjust Indirect Fire
10. 071-326-0600 Use Visual Signaling Techniques While Dismounted
11. 071-326-5704 Supervise Construction of a Fighting Position
12. 071-331-0802 Process Enemy Personnel and Equipment
13. 071-730-0001 Emplace Pyrotechnic Early Warning Devices
14. 071-730-0002 Recover Pyrotechnic Early Warning Devices
15. 071-326-0515 Select a Movement Route Using a Map
16. 071-329-1006 Navigate From One Point on the Ground to Another Point While Dismounted
17. 071-329-1009 Convert Azimuths
18. 071-329-1011 Orient a Map Using a Lensatic Compass
19. 071-329-1019 Use a Map Overlay
20. 071-329-1004 Determine the Elevation of a Point on the Ground Using a Map
21. 071-329-1014 Locate an Unknown Point on a Map and on the Ground by Intersection

- 
22. 071-329-1015 Locate an Unknown Point on a Map and on the Ground by Resection
  23. 071-510-0001 Determine Azimuths Using a Protractor
  24. 071-510-0002 Compute Back Azimuths
  25. 081-831-0101 Request Medical Evacuation
  26. 113-573-8006 Use an Automated Communications- Electronic Operations Instruction (CEOI)
  27. 441-091-1040 Visually Identify Threat Aircraft
  28. 031-503-2004 Prepare and Submit NBC 4 Reports
  29. 031-503-2012 Supervise the Fitting of Protective Masks
  30. 031-503-2013 Use and Perform Operator Maintenance on the IM174-Series Radiacmeter
  31. 031-503-2022 Use and Maintain the AN/VDR-2 Radiac Set
  32. 051-192-1119 Install US Antihandling Devices on AT Mines
  33. 051-192-1120 Remove US Antihandling Devices on AT Mines
  34. 051-193-1002 Construct a Nonelectric Initiating/ Detonating Assembly
  35. 051-193-1003 Prime Explosives Nonelectrically
  36. 051-193-1004 Construct an Electric Initiating/ Detonating Assembly
  37. 051-193-1005 Prime Explosives Electrically
  38. 051-193-1007 Prime Explosives with Detonating Cord
  39. 051-193-1011 Install Dual Firing Systems
  40. 051-193-2030 Clear a Misfire
  41. 061-283-1004 Locate a Target by Shift from a Known Point
  42. 071-022-0004 Unload a Caliber .50 M2 Machine Gun
  43. 071-022-0005 Correct Malfunctions of a Caliber .50 M2 Machine Gun
  44. 071-022-0008 Mount a Night Vision Sight AN/TVS-5 on a Caliber .50 M2 Machine Gun

45. 071-022-0009 Dismount a Night Vision AN/TVS-5 from a Caliber .50 M2 Machine Gun
46. 071-022-0015 Prepare a Range Card for a Caliber .50 M2 Machine Gun
47. 071-030-0002 Prepare a Range Card for an MK19 Machine Gun
48. 071-030-0003 Zero an MK19 Machine Gun
49. 071-030-0004 Engage Targets with an MK19 Machine Gun
50. 071-030-0005 Load an MK19 Machine Gun
51. 071-030-0006 Unload an MK19 Machine Gun
52. 071-030-0008 Correct Malfunctions of an MK19 Machine Gun
53. 071-030-0016 Mount a Night Vision Sight AN/TVS-5 on an MK19 Machine Gun
54. 071-030-0017 Dismount a Night Vision Sight AN/TVS-5 from an MK19 Machine Gun
55. 071-030-0018 Zero a Night Vision Sight AN/TVS-5 to an MK19 Machine Gun
56. 071-030-0019 Engage Targets with an MK19 Machine Gun Using a Night Vision Sight AN/TVS-5
57. 071-313-3452 Zero a Caliber .50 M2 Machine Gun
58. 071-317-3324 Select a Fighting Position for an M47 Medium Antitank Weapon
59. 071-315-0056 Engage Targets with a Caliber .50 M2 Machine Gun Using a Night Vision Sight AN/TVS-5
60. 071-315-2317 Zero a Night Vision Sight AN/TVS-5 to a Caliber .50 M2 Machine Gun
61. 071-326-5920 Conduct Movement Techniques by a Fire Team
62. 071-334-4001 Guide a Helicopter to a Landing Point
63. 071-332-5051 Post a Daily Staff Journal
64. 071-410-0016 Conduct Occupation of an Overwatch Position
65. 071-600-0005 Enforce Preventive Medicine
66. 071-710-0004 Control Use of Night Vision Devices

- 
67. 071-720-0009 Conduct a Local Security Patrol
  68. 071-730-0003 Install a Platoon Early Warning System AN/TRS-2
  69. 071-930-0004 Prepare an MCS for Operations
  70. 071-930-0005 Prepare an MCS for Displacement
  71. 071-930-0006 Maintain an MCS
  72. 101-515-1900 Perform Search, Recovery, Evacuation and/or Burial of Remains
  73. 113-572-6005 Write a United States Message Text Form at (USMTF) Message
  74. 121-030-3534 Report Casualties
  75. 301-348-6001 Protect Classified Information and Material
  76. 441-091-1040 Visually Identify Threat Aircraft

#### SKILL LEVEL 3

1. 031-503-3009 Lead MOPP Gear Exchange
2. 031-503-3002 Conduct Unmasking Procedures
3. 031-503-3004 Supervise the Crossing of a Contaminated Area
4. 031-503-3005 Prepare and Submit NBC 1 Reports
5. 031-503-3007 Direct Preparation for NBC Attack
6. 031-503-3008 Implement Mission-Oriented Protective Posture
7. 031-503-3006 Supervise Radiation Monitoring
8. 071-430-0003 Consolidate a Squad Following Enemy Contact While in the Defense
9. 071-430-0004 Reorganize a Squad Following Enemy Contact While in the Defense
10. 071-326-5705 Establish an Observation Point
11. 071-430-0002 Conduct a Defense by a Squad
12. 071-331-0820 Analyze Terrain
13. 051-195-3005 Direct Construction of Non-Explosive Antivehicular Obstacles



14. 071-326-0608 Use Visual Signalling Techniques While Mounted
15. 071-326-3001 Direct a Driver Over a Terrain Route
16. 071-326-3002 React to Indirect Fire While Mounted
17. 071-326-3006 Conduct the Maneuver of a Mechanized (M113) Squad
18. 071-326-5502 Issue a Fragmentary Order
19. 071-326-5503 Issue a Warning Order
20. 071-326-5610 Conduct Movement Techniques by a Squad
21. 071-331-0015 Conduct a Point Ambush by a Squad
22. 071-400-0001 Adjust Aerial Fire Support
23. 071-410-0002 React to Direct Fire While Mounted
24. 071-410-0015 Direct Dismount from an M113 Vehicle
25. 071-420-0003 Consolidate a Squad Following Enemy Contact While in the Offense
26. 071-420-0004 Reorganize a Squad Following Enemy Contact While in the Offense
27. 071-440-0003 Conduct an Attack on a Building by a Squad During MOUT
28. 071-440-0006 Conduct a Defense by a Squad During MOUT
29. 071-450-0014 Conduct a Point Antiarmor Ambush by a Squad
30. 071-450-0017 Conduct a Raid
31. 071-450-0038 Construct Field-Expedient Flame Weapons
32. 071-720-0006 Conduct Operation of a Patrol Base
33. 071-730-0006 Enforce Operations Security
34. 071-730-0007 Conduct Employment of Field-Expedient and Pyrotechnic Early Warning Devices
35. 071-730-0010 Establish a Roadblock
36. 071-810-0001 Maintain an AN/PRC-126 Radio
37. 071-810-0002 Operate an AN/PRC-126 Radio
38. 441-091-3001 Direct Unit Air Defense

## SKILL LEVEL 4

1. 031-503-4003 Control Unit Radiation Exposure
2. 071-430-0007 Consolidate a Platoon Following Enemy Contact While in the Defense
3. 071-430-0008 Reorganize a Platoon Following Enemy Contact While in the Defense
4. 071-326-5775 Coordinate With an Adjacent Platoon
5. 071-430-0006 Conduct a Defense by a Platoon
6. 071-098-0004 Conduct the Breach of a Minefield
7. 071-400-0003 Prepare Personnel and Equipment for Air Assault
8. 071-326-3013 Conduct a Tactical Road March
9. 071-410-0003 Conduct Movement Techniques by a Mechanized (M113) Platoon While Mounted
10. 071-410-0004 Conduct Movement Techniques by a Mechanized (M113) Platoon While Dismounted
11. 071-410-0013 Prepare a Situation Report
12. 071-420-0001 Consolidate a Platoon Following Enemy Contact While in the Offense
13. 071-420-0002 Reorganize a Platoon Following Enemy Contact While in the Offense
14. 071-420-0006 Conduct the Maneuver of a Mechanized (M113) Platoon
15. 071-420-0021 Conduct a Movement to Contact by a Platoon
16. 071-420-0022 Conduct a Mounted Assault by a Platoon
17. 071-420-0023 Conduct an Attack by a Platoon
18. 071-326-5832 Conduct a Disengagement by a Platoon While Under Enemy Pressure
19. 071-440-0009 Conduct a Defense by a Platoon During MOUT
20. 071-440-0012 Conduct an Attack by a Platoon During MOUT
21. 071-450-0027 Conduct a Relief
22. 071-450-0030 Conduct a Passage of Lines

23. 071-450-0035 Conduct an Area Ambush by a Platoon
24. 071-450-0036 Conduct an Antiarmor Area Ambush by a Platoon
25. 071-450-0037 Direct Employment of Smoke
26. 101-521-4051 Request Supplies and Logistical Services
27. 301-337-6001 Process Captured Materiel
28. 071-620-0001 Plan for Decontamination Operations
29. 071-710-0006 Plan Use of Night Vision Devices
30. 071-326-5805 Conduct a Route Reconnaissance Mission
31. 071-730-0004 Plan Installation of a Platoon Early Warning System AN/TRS-2
32. 071-332-5000 Prepare an Operation Overlay
33. 071-332-5021 Prepare a Situation Map
34. 071-332-5031 Prepare a Road Movement Table
35. 071-900-0001 Prepare an Operation Plan
36. 071-900-0003 Prepare a Battalion Operation Order
37. 071-900-0004 Establish a Tactical Operations Center
38. 071-900-0005 Conduct Displacement of a Tactical Operations Center
39. 551-721-3359 Prepare a Strip Map
40. 071-332-5034 Extract Information from a Route Reconnaissance Report
41. 071-332-5002 Prepare a Battalion Fragmentary Order
42. 071-332-5004 Prepare a Battalion Warning Order
43. 071-332-5020 Post an S3 Workbook
44. 071-332-5022 Prepare a Battalion Situation Report (SITREP)
45. 071-940-0002 Conduct Resupply of a Platoon

---

STP 7-11BCHM14-SM-TG, Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide,  
MOS 11B, 11C, 11H, and 11M Infantry,  
Skill Levels 1/2/3/4 (30 September 1988)

MOS 11B

SKILL LEVEL 1

1. 031-507-1021 Mark NBC Contaminated Area
2. 031-507-1022 Decontaminate Equipment Using M13  
Decontaminating Apparatus, Portable
3. 031-503-1002 Decontaminate Equipment Using the ABC M11  
Decontaminating Apparatus
4. 051-192-1002 Install/Remove the M16A1 Antipersonnel Mine
5. 051-192-1008 Install/Remove the M21 Antitank Mine
6. 051-192-1021 Locate Mines by Visual Means
7. 071-098-0001 Recover a Mechanical Ambush
8. 071-098-0002 Install a Mechanical Ambush
9. 071-410-0001 Perform Self-Extraction From a Minefield
10. 071-002-0001 Maintain a Caliber .45 Pistol
11. 071-002-0005 Unload a Caliber .45 Pistol
12. 071-004-0001 Maintain an M9 Pistol
13. 071-004-0003 Load an M9 Pistol
14. 071-010-0006 Engage Targets With an M249 Machine Gun
15. 071-312-4004 Lay an M249 Machine Gun Using Field Expedients
16. 071-312-4025 Maintain an M249 Machine Gun
17. 071-312-4027 Load an M249 Machine Gun
18. 071-312-4030 Zero an M249 Machine Gun
19. 071-311-2006 Construct Field-Expedient Firing Aids for an  
M16A1 or M16A2 Rifle
20. 071-315-2307 Zero a Night Vision Sight AN/PVS-4 to an M16A1  
or M16A2 Rifle
21. 071-315-2308 Engage Targets With an M16A1 or M16A2 Rifle  
Using a Night Vision Sight AN/PVS-4

22. 071-032-0006 Construct Field-Expedient Firing Aids for an M203 Grenade Launcher
23. 071-311-2103 Zero an M203 Grenade Launcher
24. 071-311-2125 Maintain an M203 Grenade Launcher
25. 071-315-2351 Zero a Night Vision Sight AN/PVS-4 to an M203 Grenade Launcher
26. 071-315-2352 Engage Targets With an M203 Grenade Launcher Using a Night Vision Sight AN/PVS-4
27. 071-052-0003 Construct a Fighting Position for an M47 Medium Antitank Weapon
28. 071-052-0004 Restore an M47 Medium Antitank Weapon to Carrying Configuration
29. 071-052-0005 Operate a Night Vision Sight AN/TAS-5
30. 071-052-0006 Engage Targets With an M47 Medium Antitank Weapon
31. 071-317-3302 Prepare an M47 Medium Antitank Weapon for Firing
32. 071-317-3306 Perform Misfire Procedures on an M47 Medium Antitank Weapon
33. 071-312-3003 Lay an M60 Machine Gun Using Field Expedients
34. 071-312-3004 Construct a Fighting Position for an M60 Machine Gun
35. 071-312-3007 Prepare a Range Card for an M60 Machine Gun
36. 071-312-3025 Maintain an M60 Machine Gun
37. 071-312-3030 Zero an M60 Machine Gun
38. 071-315-0008 Engage Targets With an M60 Machine Gun Using a Night Vision Sight AN/PVS-4
39. 071-315-2313 Zero a Night Vision Sight AN/PVS-4 to an M60 Machine Gun
40. 071-022-0001 Maintain a Caliber .50 Machine Gun
41. 071-315-0003 Operate a Night Vision Sight AN/PVS-4
42. 071-315-0030 Operate Night Vision Goggles AN/PVS-5

- 
43. 071-315-0091 Operate a Thermal Viewer AN/PAS-7
  44. 071-331-0808 Identify Threat Weapons
  45. 071-730-0008 Emplace Field-Expedient Early Warning Devices
  46. 071-328-5303 Practice Preventive Medicine
  47. 071-317-0000 Prepare an Antiarmor Range Card
  48. 071-326-0501 Move as a Member of a Fire Team
  49. 071-326-0541 Perform Movement Techniques During MOUT
  50. 071-326-0550 Prepare Positions for Individual and Crew-Served Weapons During MOUT
  51. 071-326-0557 Select Hasty Firing Positions During MOUT
  52. 071-334-4001 Guide a Helicopter to a Landing Point
  53. 071-326-0608 Use Visual Signalling Techniques While Mounted
  54. 113-588-1088 Install/Recover Communications Wire Lines
  55. 113-588-1087 Install Hot Loop
  56. 113-588-3008 Repair Field Wire
  57. 113-600-2007 Operate Telephone Set TA-312/PT

#### SKILL LEVEL 2

1. 113-573-4003 Encode and Decode Messages Using KTC 600(\*) Tactical Operations Code
2. 113-573-4006 Use the KTC 1400(\*) Numerical Cipher/Authentication System
3. 031-503-2008 Use and Maintain M8 or M8A1 Chemical Agent Alarm
4. 051-192-1014 Install/Remove US Antihandling Devices on AT Mines
5. 051-193-1003 Prime Explosives Nonelectrically
6. 051-193-2030 Clear a Misfire
7. 051-193-1025 Neutralize Mines
8. 061-283-1004 Locate a Target by Shift From a Known Point

9. 071-022-0003 Operate a Caliber .50 M2 Machine Gun
10. 071-313-3454 Engage Targets With a Caliber .50 M2 Machine Gun
11. 071-313-3455 Set Headspace and Timing on a Caliber .50 M2 Machine Gun
12. 071-331-1000 Prepare the Platoon Early Warning System AN/TRS-2 for Operation
13. 071-331-1002 Monitor the Platoon Early Warning System AN/TRS-2
14. 071-710-0004 Supervise Use of Night Vision Devices
15. 071-326-5606 Select an Overwatch Position
16. 071-410-0019 Control Organic Fires
17. 071-326-5502 Issue a Fragmentary Order
18. 071-326-5503 Issue a Warning Order
19. 071-326-5605 Control Movement of a Fire Team
20. 071-329-1030 Navigate from One Point on the Ground to Another Point While Mounted

SKILL LEVEL 3

1. 071-317-3324 Select a Fighting Position for an M47 Medium Antitank Weapon
2. 071-326-3049 Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures for an Operation
3. 071-326-5505 Issue an Oral Operation Order
4. 071-326-5611 Conduct the Maneuver of a Squad
5. 071-410-0010 Conduct a Leader's Reconnaissance
6. 071-730-0005 Plan Employment of Field-Expedient and Pyrotechnic Early Warning Devices
7. 071-331-1003 Installation Planning and Installation of a Platoon Early Warning System AN/TRS-2

**SKILL LEVEL 4**

1. 031-503-4002 Plan and Supervise Positioning M8 or M8A1 Alarm
2. 051-192-3032 Direct Installation/Removal of a Hasty Protective Minefield
3. 071-620-0002 Employ NBC Defense Teams
4. 071-326-5630 Conduct Movement Techniques by a Platoon
5. 071-326-5761 Designate Primary, Alternate, and Supplementary Fighting Positions for Key Weapons
6. 071-326-5770 Prepare a Platoon Sector Sketch
7. 071-334-4002 Establish a Helicopter Landing Point
8. 071-410-0012 Supervise Occupation of an Assembly Area
9. 071-410-0020 Plan for Use of Supporting Fires
10. 071-420-0005 Conduct the Maneuver of a Platoon
11. 071-450-0005 Conduct a Screen by a Platoon
12. 071-720-0012 Conduct a Zone Reconnaissance by a Platoon
13. 071-720-0015 Conduct an Area Reconnaissance by a Platoon





---

**GLOSSARY**

<b>AAR</b>	after-action review
<b>ACE</b>	ammunition, casualty, and equipment
<b>ADA</b>	air defense artillery
<b>APC</b>	armored personnel carrier
<b>AR</b>	Army regulation
<b>ARTEP</b>	Army Training and Evaluation Program
<b>ATGM</b>	antitank guided missile
<b>ATWESS</b>	antitank weapon effect simulator system
<b>BOS</b>	battlefield operating system
<b>BP</b>	battle position
<b>BSA</b>	brigade support area
<b>C<sup>2</sup></b>	command and control
<b>CAS</b>	close air support
<b>CATS</b>	Combined Arms Training Strategy
<b>cdr</b>	commander
<b>COLT</b>	combat observation/lasing team
<b>CP</b>	command post
<b>CS</b>	combat support
<b>CSS</b>	combat service support
<b>CTA</b>	common table of allowance
<b>DA</b>	Department of the Army
<b>DD</b>	Department of Defense
<b>DODAC</b>	Department of Defense Ammunition Code
<b>DPICM</b>	dual-purpose improved conventional munition
<b>DZ</b>	drop zone
<b>EA</b>	engagement area
<b>EPW</b>	enemy prisoner of war
<b>EW</b>	electronic warfare
<b>FASCAM</b>	family of scatterable mines
<b>1LT</b>	first lieutenant
<b>1SG</b>	first sergeant
<b>FM</b>	field manual
<b>FO</b>	forward observer

## ARTEP 7-8-MTP

---

<b>FPF</b>	final protective fire
<b>FPL</b>	final protective line
<b>FRAGO</b>	fragmentary order
<b>FSO</b>	fire support officer
<b>FTX</b>	field training exercise
<b>GS</b>	general support
<b>GTA</b>	graphic training aid
<b>HE</b>	high explosive
hr	hour
<b>HQ</b>	headquarters
<b>IAW</b>	in accordance with
ind	individual
<b>INTSUM</b>	intelligence summary
<b>IR</b>	intelligence requirements
<b>ITEP</b>	individual training evaluation program
<b>KIA</b>	killed in action
km	kilometer
<b>LAW</b>	light antitank weapon
<b>LD</b>	line of departure
<b>LZ</b>	landing zone
<b>MEDEVAC</b>	medical evacuation
<b>METL</b>	mission-essential task list
<b>METT-T</b>	mission, enemy, terrain, troops and time available
<b>MG</b>	machine gun
<b>MILES</b>	multiple integrated laser engagement system
min	minute
mm	millimeter
<b>MOPP</b>	mission-oriented protection posture
<b>MOS</b>	military occupational specialty
<b>MOUT</b>	military operations on urban terrain
<b>MQS</b>	military qualification standards
<b>MRE</b>	meal, ready-to-eat
<b>MSD</b>	minimum safe distance
<b>MTOE</b>	modified table of organization and equipment
<b>MTP</b>	mission training plan

---

<b>NBC</b>	nuclear, biological, and chemical
<b>NCO</b>	noncommissioned officer
<b>NGO</b>	nongovernmental organization
<b>NLT</b>	not later than
<b>NUCWARN</b>	nuclear warning
<b>NVD</b>	night vision device
<b>OAKOC</b>	obstacles, avenues of approach, key terrain, observation and fields of fire, and cover and concealment
<b>obj</b>	objective
<b>OEG</b>	operational exposure guide
<b>OP</b>	observation post
<b>OPFOR</b>	opposing force
<b>OPORD</b>	operation order
<b>OPSEC</b>	operations security
<b>ORP</b>	objective rally point
<b>PDF</b>	principal direction of fire
<b>PIR</b>	priority intelligence requirements
<b>PMCS</b>	preventive maintenance checks and services
<b>POL</b>	petroleum, oils, and lubricants
<b>POV</b>	private organization
<b>PZ</b>	pickup zone
<b>R&amp;R</b>	rest and recuperation
<b>RATELO</b>	radiotelephone operator
<b>ROE</b>	rules of engagement
<b>RP</b>	release point
<b>SALUTE</b>	size, activity, location, unit, time, and equipment
<b>SDT</b>	self-development test
<b>2LT</b>	second lieutenant
<b>SFC</b>	sergeant first class
<b>SGT</b>	sergeant
<b>SITREP</b>	situation report
<b>SM</b>	soldier's manual
<b>SMCT</b>	soldier's manual of common task
<b>SOI</b>	signal operation instructions
<b>SOP</b>	standing operating procedures
<b>SP4</b>	specialist fourth class
<b>SSG</b>	staff sergeant
<b>STP</b>	soldier's training publication
<b>STRAC</b>	Standards in Training Commission

<b>STX</b>	situational training exercise
<b>T&amp;EO</b>	training and evaluation outline
<b>TC</b>	training circular
<b>TG</b>	trainer's guide
<b>TM</b>	technical manual
<b>TOC</b>	tactical operations center
<b>TOE</b>	table of organization and equipment
<b>TOT</b>	time on target
<b>TRP</b>	target reference point
<b>US</b>	United States
<b>veh</b>	vehicle
<b>WIA</b>	wounded in action
<b>WO</b>	warning order
<b>XO</b>	executive officer

**REFERENCES****DOCUMENTS NEEDED**

These documents must be available to the intended users of this publication.

- \*AR 40-5. Preventive Medicine. 15 October 1990.
- \*AR 350-41. Training in Units. 19 March 1993.
- \*AR 385-62. Regulations for Firing Guided Missiles and Heavy Rockets for Training, Target Practice and Combat. 5 January 1977.
- \*AR 385-63. Policies and Procedures for Firing Ammunition for Training, Target Practice and Combat. 15 October 1983.
- \*ARTEP 7-8-DRILL. Battle Drills for the Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad. 3 November 1993.
- \*ARTEP 7-10-MTP. Mission Training Plan for the Infantry Rifle Company. 3 October 1988.
- \*ARTEP 7-20-MTP. Mission Training Plan for the Infantry Battalion. 27 December 1988.
- \*ARTEP 71-2-MTP. Mission Training Plan for the Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force. 3 October 1988.
- \*CTA 50-900. Clothing and Individual Equipment. 1 August 1990.
- \*DA Form 1155. Witness Statement on Individual. June 1966.
- \*DA Form 1156. Casualty Feeder Report. June 1966.
- \*DA Form 1355-1-R. Hasty Protective Minefield Record (LRA). July 1975.
- \*DA Pamphlet 350-38. Training Standards in Weapon Training. February 1993.
- \*DD Form 1380. US Field Medical Card. 1 June 1962.
- \*FM 3-3. Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance. 16 November 1992.

\*These were also sources used to develop this publication.

- \*FM 3-4. NBC Protection. 29 May 1992.
- \*FM 3-5. NBC Decontamination. 23 July 1992.
- \*FM 5-34. Engineer Field Data. 14 September 1987.
- \*FM 3-100. NBC Defense Chemical Warfare, Smoke, and Flame Operations. 23 May 1991.
- \*FM 5-102. Countermobility. 14 March 1983.
- \*FM 7-7. The Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (APC). 15 March 1985.
- \*FM 7-7J. The Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (Bradley). 7 May 1993.
- \*FM 7-8. The Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad. 22 April 1992.
- \*FM 7-10. The Infantry Rifle Company. 14 December 1990.
- \*FM 7-20. The Infantry Battalion. 6 April 1992.
- \*FM 7-92. The Infantry Reconnaissance Platoon and Squad (Airborne, Air Assault, and Light Infantry). 23 December 1992.
- \*FM 7-98. Operations in a Low-Intensity Conflict. 19 October 1992.
- \*FM 8-10-6. Medical Evacuation in a Theater of Operations Tactical, Techniques, and Procedures. 31 October 1991.
- \*FM 19-15. Civil Disturbances. 25 November 1985.
- \*FM 19-40. Enemy Prisoners of War, Civilian Internees and Detained Persons. 27 February 1976.
- \*FM 21-10. Field Hygiene and Sanitation. 22 November 1988.
- \*FM 21-11. First Aid for Soldiers. 27 October 1988.
- \*FM 21-18. Foot Marches. 1 June 1990.
- \*FM 21-60. Visual Signals. 30 September 1987.

\*These were also sources used to develop this publication.

- 
- \*FM 23-9. M16A1 Rifle and Rifle Marksmanship.  
3 July 1989.
- \*FM 23-14.M249 Light Machine Gun in the Automatic Role.  
26 January 1994.
- \*FM 23-23. Antipersonnel Mine M18A1 and M18 (Claymore).  
6 January 1966.
- \*FM 23-25. Launcher and Cartridge, 84-mm, M136 (AT4),  
HEAT. 22 November 1988.
- \*FM 23-30. Grenades and Pyrotechnic Signals.  
27 December 1988.
- \*FM 23-31. 40-mm Grenade Launchers M203 and M79.  
1 May 1972.
- \*FM 23-33. 66-mm HEAT Rocket, M72A1, M72A2  
(Light Antitank Weapon). 20 April 1979.
- \*FM 23-67. Machinegun, 7.62-mm, M60. 29 February 1984.
- \*FM 25-4. How to Conduct Training Exercises.  
10 September 1984.
- \*FM 25-5. Training for Mobilization and War.  
25 January 1985.
- \*FM 25-100. Training the Force. 15 November 1988.
- \*FM 25-101. Battle Focused Training. 30 September 1990.
- \*FM 71-1. Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team.  
22 November 1988.
- \*FM 90-4. Air Assault Operations. 16 March 1987.
- \*FM 90-8. Counter guerrilla Operations. 29 August 1986.
- \*FM 90-10-1. An Infantryman's Guide to Combat in Built-up  
Areas. 12 May 1993.
- \*FM 100-5. Operations. 14 June 1993.
- \*FM 101-5.Staff Organization and Operations. 25 May 1984.
- \*FM 101-5-1. Operational Terms and Symbols.  
21 October 1985.

\*These were also sources used to develop this publication.



- \*STP 7-11II-MQS. Military Qualification Standards II, Infantry Branch (11), Company Grade Officer's Manual. 16 July 1991.
- \*STP 7-11BCHM14-SM-TG. Soldier's Manual, Skill Level 1/2/3/4, and Trainer's Guide, CMF 11. 30 September 1988.
- \*STP 21-II-MQS. Military Qualification Standards II, Manual of Common Tasks for (Lieutenants and Captains). 31 January 1991.
- \*STP 21-1-SMCT. Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks Skill Level 1. 1 October 1990.
- \*STP 21-24-SMCT. Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks (SMCT) Skill Levels 2-4. 1 October 1992.
- TC 25-6. Tactical Employment Simulation Training With MILES. 30 September 1982.
- TC 25-6-1. MILES Infantry Field Controller's Guide. 21 December 1984.
- TC 25-6-2. MILES Armor Field Controller's Guide. 21 December 1984.
- TC 25-6-3. MILES Aviation Field Controller's Guide. 23 August 1985.
- TC 25-6-4. MILES Air Defense Field Controller's Guide. 23 August 1985.
- \*TC 25-20. A Leader's Guide to After Action Reviews. 30 September 1993.

#### READINGS RECOMMENDED

These sources contain relevant supplemental information.

- DA Pamphlet 350-100. Extension Training Materials Consolidated MOS Catalog. 5 February 1990.
- FM 3-50. Smoke Operations. 4 December 1990.
- FM 5-100. Engineer Combat Operations. 22 November 1988.
- FM 5-103. Survivability. 10 June 1985.

\*These were also sources used to develop this publication.

- FM 5-250. Explosives and Demolitions. 15 June 1992.
- FM 12-6. Personnel Doctrine. 23 August 1989.
- FM 21-26. Map Reading and Land Navigation. 7 May 1993.
- FM 21-75. Combat Skills of the Soldier. 3 August 1984.
- FM 21-76. Survival. 5 June 1992.
- FM 22-9. Soldier Performance in Continuous Operations. 21 December 1991.
- FM 24-1. Signal Support in the AirLand Battle. 15 October 1990.
- FM 24-18. Tactical Single-Channel Radio Communications Techniques. 30 September 1987.
- FM 26-2. Management of Stress in Army Operations. 29 August 1986.
- FM 44-8. Small Unit Self-Defense Against Air Attack. 30 December 1981.
- FM 90-10 (HTF). Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain (MOUT) (How to Fight). 15 August 1979.
- FM 90-13. River Crossing Operations. 30 September 1992.
- FM 90-13-1. Combined Arms Breaching Operations. 28 February 1991.
- FM 101-10-1/1. Staff Officers' Field Manual-Organization, Technical and Logistical Data (Volume 1). 7 October 1987.



# MISSION TRAINING PLAN QUESTIONNAIRE

MTP NUMBER \_\_\_\_\_ DATE \_\_\_\_\_

MTP TITLE \_\_\_\_\_

Request your recommendations to improve this training publication. To make it easier for you to make recommendations, a standard questionnaire has been provided. Please answer all questions frankly and mail to: Commandant, US Army Infantry School, ATTN: ATSH-OTT-T, Fort Benning, GA 31905-5593.

### THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS PERTAIN TO YOU.

1. What is your position (for example, company commander, platoon sergeant)? \_\_\_\_\_
2. How long have you served in this position? \_\_\_\_\_
3. How long have you served in this unit? \_\_\_\_\_
4. What is your component? (*check one*)
  - A. Active Component .....
  - B. Reserve Component .....
5. Where is your unit? (*check one*)
  - A. CONUS .....
  - B. USAREUR .....
  - C. WESTCOM .....
  - D. Eighth USA .....
  - E. Other (specify) \_\_\_\_\_

**THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS ARE ABOUT  
THE MTP IN GENERAL.**

6. How do you feel this document has affected training in your unit when compared to other training products? (*check one*)
- A. Has made training worse .....
  - B. Has made training better .....
  - C. Has had no affect on training .....
  - D. Do not know or do not have an opinion .....
7. How easy is the document to use, compared to other training products? (*check one*)
- A. More difficult .....
  - B. Easier .....
  - C. About the same .....
  - D. Do not know or do not have an opinion .....
8. What part of the MTP document was least useful? (*check one*)
- A. Chapter 1, Unit Training .....
  - B. Chapter 2, Training Matrixes .....
  - C. Chapter 3, Operation Outlines .....
  - D. Chapter 4, Training Exercises .....
  - E. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines .....
  - F. Chapter 6, External Evaluations .....
  - G. Do not know or do not have an opinion .....
9. What part of the MTP document was most useful? (*check one*)
- A. Chapter 1, Unit Training .....
  - B. Chapter 2, Training Matrixes .....
  - C. Chapter 3, Operation Outlines .....

- D. Chapter 4, Training Exercises . . . . .
  - F. Chapter 6, External Evaluations . . . . .
  - G. Do not know or do not have an opinion . . . . .
10. What is the most difficult part of the MTP to understand? (*check one*)
- A. Chapter 1, Unit Training . . . . .
  - B. Chapter 2, Training Matrixes . . . . .
  - C. Chapter 3, Operation Outlines . . . . .
  - D. Chapter 4, Training Exercises . . . . .
  - E. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines . . . . .
  - F. Chapter 6, External Evaluations . . . . .
  - G. Do not know or do not have an opinion . . . . .
11. What is the easiest part of the MTP to understand? (*check one*)
- A. Chapter 1, Unit Training . . . . .
  - B. Chapter 2, Training Matrixes . . . . .
  - C. Chapter 3, Operation Outlines . . . . .
  - D. Chapter 4, Training Exercises . . . . .
  - E. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines . . . . .
  - F. Chapter 6, External Evaluations . . . . .
  - G. Do not know or do not have an opinion . . . . .

**THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS PERTAIN TO THE TRAINING EXERCISES AND STX.**

12. The exercises are designed to prepare the unit to accomplish its wartime mission. In your opinion, how well do they fulfill this purpose? (*check one*)
- A. They do not prepare the unit at all . . . . .

- B. They help, but only provide 20 percent or less of my unit's training requirements . . . . .
  - C. They help, but only provide 21 to 50 percent of my unit's training requirements . . . . .
  - D. They help, but only provide between 51 to 80 percent of my unit's training requirements . . . . .
  - E. They provide 81 percent or more of my unit's training requirements . . . . .
13. Would you recommend that any STX be added or deleted from the MTP? (*check one*)
- Yes . . . . .
  - No . . . . .
14. What was the greatest problem you experienced with the exercises? (*check one*)
- A. Too many pages . . . . .
  - B. Hard to read and understand . . . . .
  - C. Needs more illustrations . . . . .
  - D. Needs more information on how to set up the exercises . . . . .
  - E. Needs more information on leader training . . . . .
  - F. Needs more information on how to conduct the exercises . . . . .
  - G. Needs more information on support and resources . . . . .
  - H. Needs more information on normally attached elements . . . . .
  - I. Does not interface well with other training products such as battle drills . . . . .
  - J. Do not know or do not have an opinion . . . . .
-

15. What was the second greatest problem you experienced with the exercises?
- A. Too many pages . . . . .
  - B. Hard to read and understand . . . . .
  - C. Needs more illustrations . . . . .
  - D. Needs more information on how to set up the exercises . . . . .
  - E. Needs more information on leader training . . . . .
  - F. Needs more information on how to conduct the exercises . . . . .
  - G. Needs more information on support and resources . . . . .
  - H. Needs more information on normally attached elements . . . . .
  - I. Does not interface well with other training products such as battle drills . . . . .
  - J. Do not know or do not have an opinion . . . . .

16. How many STXs have you trained or participated in personally?\_\_\_\_\_

**THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS APPLY TO  
CHAPTERS 5 AND 6 OF THE MTP.**

17. What changes would you make to Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines?
- A. Leave it out altogether . . . . .
  - B. Clarify how to use this chapter with the training exercises . . . . .
  - C. Clarify how to use this chapter with the external evaluation . . . . .
  - D. The standards are too detailed . . . . .
  - E. The standards are not detailed enough . . . . .
  - F. The standards do not adequately address those elements that are normally attached in wartime . . . . .





# MISSION TRAINING PLAN QUESTIONNAIRE

MTP NUMBER \_\_\_\_\_ DATE \_\_\_\_\_

MTP TITLE \_\_\_\_\_

Request your recommendations to improve this training publication. To make it easier for you to make recommendations, a standard questionnaire has been provided. Please answer all questions frankly and mail to: Commandant, US Army Infantry School, ATTN: ATSH-OTT-T, Fort Benning, GA 31905-5593.

## THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS PERTAIN TO YOU.

1. What is your position (for example, company commander, platoon sergeant)? \_\_\_\_\_
2. How long have you served in this position? \_\_\_\_\_
3. How long have you served in this unit? \_\_\_\_\_
4. What is your component? (*check one*)
  - A. Active Component . . . . .
  - B. Reserve Component . . . . .
5. Where is your unit? (*check one*)
  - A. CONUS . . . . .
  - B. USAREUR . . . . .
  - C. WESTCOM . . . . .
  - D. Eighth USA . . . . .
  - E. Other (specify) \_\_\_\_\_

**THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS ARE ABOUT  
THE MTP IN GENERAL.**

6. How do you feel this document has affected training in your unit when compared to other training products? (*check one*)
- A. Has made training worse . . . . .
  - B. Has made training better . . . . .
  - C. Has had no affect on training . . . . .
  - D. Do not know or do not have an opinion . . . . .
7. How easy is the document to use, compared to other training products? (*check one*)
- A. More difficult . . . . .
  - B. Easier . . . . .
  - C. About the same . . . . .
  - D. Do not know or do not have an opinion . . . . .
8. What part of the MTP document was least useful? (*check one*)
- A. Chapter 1, Unit Training . . . . .
  - B. Chapter 2, Training Matrixes . . . . .
  - C. Chapter 3, Operation Outlines . . . . .
  - D. Chapter 4, Training Exercises . . . . .
  - E. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines . . . . .
  - F. Chapter 6, External Evaluations . . . . .
  - G. Do not know or do not have an opinion . . . . .
9. What part of the MTP document was most useful? (*check one*)
- A. Chapter 1, Unit Training . . . . .
  - B. Chapter 2, Training Matrixes . . . . .
  - C. Chapter 3, Operation Outlines . . . . .

- D. Chapter 4, Training Exercises . . . . .
- F. Chapter 6, External Evaluations . . . . .
- G. Do not know or do not have an opinion . . . . .

10. What is the most difficult part of the MTP to understand? (*check one*)

- A. Chapter 1, Unit Training . . . . .
- B. Chapter 2, Training Matrixes . . . . .
- C. Chapter 3, Operation Outlines . . . . .
- D. Chapter 4, Training Exercises . . . . .
- E. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines . . . . .
- F. Chapter 6, External Evaluations . . . . .
- G. Do not know or do not have an opinion . . . . .

11. What is the easiest part of the MTP to understand? (*check one*)

- A. Chapter 1, Unit Training . . . . .
- B. Chapter 2, Training Matrixes . . . . .
- C. Chapter 3, Operation Outlines . . . . .
- D. Chapter 4, Training Exercises . . . . .
- E. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines . . . . .
- F. Chapter 6, External Evaluations . . . . .
- G. Do not know or do not have an opinion . . . . .

**THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS PERTAIN TO THE TRAINING EXERCISES AND STX.**

12. The exercises are designed to prepare the unit to accomplish its wartime mission. In your opinion, how well do they fulfill this purpose? (*check one*)

- A. They do not prepare the unit at all . . . . .

- B. They help, but only provide 20 percent or less of my unit's training requirements . . . . .
  - C. They help, but only provide 21 to 50 percent of my unit's training requirements . . . . .
  - D. They help, but only provide between 51 to 80 percent of my unit's training requirements . . . . .
  - E. They provide 81 percent or more of my unit's training requirements . . . . .
13. Would you recommend that any STX be added or deleted from the MTP? (*check one*)
- Yes . . . . .
  - No . . . . .
14. What was the greatest problem you experienced with the exercises? (*check one*)
- A. Too many pages . . . . .
  - B. Hard to read and understand . . . . .
  - C. Needs more illustrations . . . . .
  - D. Needs more information on how to set up the exercises . . . . .
  - E. Needs more information on leader training . . . . .
  - F. Needs more information on how to conduct the exercises . . . . .
  - G. Needs more information on support and resources . . . . .
  - H. Needs more information on normally attached elements . . . . .
  - I. Does not interface well with other training products such as battle drills . . . . .
  - J. Do not know or do not have an opinion . . . . .
-

15. What was the second greatest problem you experienced with the exercises?
- A. Too many pages . . . . .
  - B. Hard to read and understand . . . . .
  - C. Needs more illustrations . . . . .
  - D. Needs more information on how to set up the exercises . . . . .
  - E. Needs more information on leader training . . . . .
  - F. Needs more information on how to conduct the exercises . . . . .
  - G. Needs more information on support and resources . . . . .
  - H. Needs more information on normally attached elements . . . . .
  - I. Does not interface well with other training products such as battle drills . . . . .
  - J. Do not know or do not have an opinion . . . . .

16. How many STXs have you trained or participated in personally? \_\_\_\_\_

**THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS APPLY TO  
CHAPTERS 5 AND 6 OF THE MTP.**

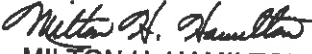
17. What changes would you make to Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines?
- A. Leave it out altogether . . . . .
  - B. Clarify how to use this chapter with the training exercises . . . . .
  - C. Clarify how to use this chapter with the external evaluation . . . . .
  - D. The standards are too detailed . . . . .
  - E. The standards are not detailed enough . . . . .
  - F. The standards do not adequately address those elements that are normally attached in wartime . . . . .



ARTEP 7-8-MTP  
29 SEPTEMBER 1994

By Order of the Secretary of the Army:

Official:

  
MILTON H. HAMILTON  
*Administrative Assistant to the  
Secretary of the Army*  
07257

GORDON R. SULLIVAN  
*General, United States Army  
Chief of Staff*

**DISTRIBUTION:**

Active Army, ARNG, and USAR: To be distributed in accordance with DA Form 12-12E, requirements for ARTEP 7-8-MTP, Mission Training Plan for the Infantry Rifle and Squad (Qty rqr block no. 0768).



1000